

A B D R U S C H I N

RESONANCES  
TO THE  
GRAIL MESSAGE

2







ABDRUSCHIN / RESONANCES II



NACHKLÄNGE ZUR GRALSBOTCHAFT  
ENGLISH EDITION

# RESONANCES

TO

THE GRAIL MESSAGE

BY

ABDRUSCHIN

BAND 2



*This work is composed of original writings published by Abdruschin as mimeographed lectures up to 1937. The original Resonances II was published posthumously.*

*Printed in the USA in 2017.*

*God's Love  
lies solely in the Laws  
that work unalterably  
from the beginning of the world  
till today  
and to the end of all days!*



## The Gate is opened!

What I proclaim to you today is tantamount to pushing open the gates for the World Judgment! The Lord spoke these words of momentous significance to humanity:

“Now is the time for the Word to be proclaimed openly and freely to all the world, in all parts of the earth, for the cosmic clock is about to strike the 12th hour!”

These words are so momentous, so filled with the Holiest Power of God, that they now remove all of the constraints which were to have held back the great Final Judgment until such time as the commandment was given by God the Lord, which I send into the world today!

It is meant for you, too, bearers of the Holy Cross! Your time has come! You shall stand *before* the Word, strong, intrepid and joyful. Thus it is willed by God, the Lord! You shall profess your affiliation freely and openly! You will thus bring good things to humanity; you will bring salvation, Light and Life. And God’s Omnipotence is with you! You are not to hide, you who have been lifted out of the old in order to build up the new here on earth, in accordance with the Will of God.

*You* are the people who God wants to have on His Earth! *To you* the Lord gives the right to enjoy the blessings in His Creation! Because you have recognized His Holy Word and strive to live in harmony with It with the total honesty of your volition.

The great Purification begins! Keep your eyes open and you will soon clearly recognize the strict and just hand of your Lord and God in the unfolding of all of the reciprocal actions!

Do not hide! The Lord wants *you* on His Earth, and all who, together with you, follow the Word of God. *You* are designated

to build up the Kingdom of God here on earth which is pleasing to Him! His blessing is upon you. His Laws keep watch! They support and protect *your* activity while they crush and destroy the deeds of all of the enemies of His Word in the furious acceleration of increased power, so as to free the earth and the entire world from all those creatures who are counted among Lucifer's followers, and who in their self-conceit pay no heed to the Holiness of God's Laws in Creation.

*You* will be invited to the table of the Lord for the meal which is provided by Creation.

Those, however, who wish to be and to remain enemies of His Word, or who still persist in their indolent delusion of human self-aggrandizement, will now be expelled from Creation as harmful guests, for Creation must vibrate in the laws of the Light, and can only safeguard its survival through this means!

Do not shy away any longer from speaking about the Word of my Message. God wants you to proclaim loudly what your spirit fulfilled! God wants you to *speak* now; His power, His protection will be with you!

Those who would attack or slander you on this account will now judge themselves; for they show themselves to be enemies of God who cannot bear the Word of Truth! They will be painfully impacted by Its Light if you speak of It with conviction. This arouses their anger, their hatred, thus triggering and directing the beam of severe reciprocal action directly against themselves.

Do not be worried. As soon as you stand firmly and have the courage to act confidently, if you are decisive and unambiguous in your speech, with all the politeness of a mature spirit, *then* you can be assured of every victory at any time, at any place! For *nothing* can be *against* you if *God Himself*, with His Omnipotence, is for you, because you act in accordance with His Will!

Think of the first Christians who at the time not only left friends and relatives behind for the Word, but paid heed neither to their position among their fellowmen nor to earthly

goods. Joyfully they professed the Word of the Son of God even though He was no longer among them on earth. They were not afraid of suffering harsh persecution by all the heathens, of suffering the greatest physical pain and of giving their lives when it meant standing up for their conviction in the Word!

It occurred later on *again*, when Christians persecuted their fellow Christians, tortured them under the cruelties of the Inquisition! Many a man has much to learn from such power of unconditional conviction!

Yet how much easier has it been made for you this time! People in those days were under the pressure of a Darkness which, still under the leadership of Lucifer, was able to wield its greatest power. Nevertheless, out of gratitude for being able to receive the *Word*, they did not heed the hatred of the dehumanized masses! They even went to their death for It while praising God!

*Today* Lucifer is already fettered! He can no longer harm you. His power is totally destroyed, his armies already annihilated. You are only confronting the last troops of his earthly followers. Their power, however, is already paralyzed because the Light is in Judgment above them. They will all collapse within themselves; they will have to destroy one another! Thus it is willed by God and thus it will happen!

It is therefore much easier for you to fight for the Word this time, than it was before. It is as nothing in comparison to the olden days.

Nonetheless, there are still many among you who seek to hide themselves fearfully with the knowledge of the Word, so as to avoid any inconvenience. They are even afraid of *questions* by others about their Cross or about the Message.

Now, however, is the hour where the Word *shall* be spoken of, freely and avowedly to all the world! For in the days of the Judgment all men shall recognize you. You will be beacons in humanity's darkest hours which are approaching, torches to all who in chaos and despair want to open their souls to the Holy Light!

Do not hide: for the fate of countless human beings thus lies in *your hands!* You are held responsible if, during the Judgment, you do not offer to genuine seekers the possibility of finding their way to the Light. You are not to solicit or go after people, but you must be at your post, recognizable to all from afar! For this I call you today!

If you make concessions to the enemies of the Holy Word, thus to the enemies of God, if you try to hide your conviction, are fearful or embarrassed, if perhaps you even deny It, you will lose, in accordance with immutable Law, will suffer harm; for you are then no longer worthy of being followers of the Holy Will of God! You have thereby joined the lukewarm ones who must be expelled along with all the damned ones, according to prophecy.

Now get ready, you who wish to belong to the Word! Give testimony about It wherever it is requested or appears to be appropriate!

Out of God's Love there issues a stream of Light and a wave of unspeakable power pours out of His Omnipotence over all bearers of the Cross of the Grail! Courage will rise in you which will surprise even you, and which, like a great flame, will flare radiantly up to Heaven!

What you offer to humanity with the Holy Word exceeds all the treasures of this world! Keep this in mind. According to God, you are the *givers*, the *bestowers* among your fellowmen, not the ones to be tolerated.

You are thus in the service of God, to whom belongs the entire world, to whom belongs everything that exists and who will tolerate among His property only men who listen to His Word and who live in a way that is pleasing to *Him*. For men too are His property!

It is only by His Grace that they can exist! Whoever will not submit in humility to the Will of the giver of this Grace will be rejected by the Lord and cut off from all of the blessings and joys of this earth.

The time is up and inexorably the last stroke of the cosmic

clock will soon reverberate through the worlds to announce that the twelfth hour is now fulfilled. That will be the end of all wrong human volition. A new time is dawning, in which the Will of the Almighty alone rules!

And yet this Will is not as humans have hitherto thought It to be, when in their arrogance they did not even shrink from the egregious presumption of wishing to force the nature of their own thinking onto their God, and indeed even to form this Will according to their own distorted concepts!

They only speak of *themselves* when they assert that it is God's Will! Only in order to thereby embellish their words and deeds! In retribution God's ray will now strike them at a moment when they fancy themselves to be at their pinnacle!

They will be cut off from the grace of being permitted consciousness within Creation by *that* Will which they so often, without justification, dared to invoke, without knowing It. They branded their own volition as the Will of God who will now judge them for this in the eternal Divine Justice!

Scoffers and persecutors of the Holy Word will be struck as by lightning in the fiery heat of which they must consume themselves in order to recognize, under agonies, that they have sinned against the Spirit, and can therefore find no mercy.

Scoffing and scorn will cease before long in the wails of the condemned.

Simply ask anyone who means to scornfully ridicule you because of the conviction you hold sacred, or because of the Cross which you bear, which you are *fully entitled* to bear with *pride*:

“Are you really so inimical to the Light and the Good that you cannot bear the sight of the Cross of Light?”

This question will reveal to you many a *wonder*, for it bears unimagined power. Prove yourselves worthy of the gift of your Creator when His power will penetrate your spirit at a time when you least expected it! Do not let this power pass you by unused, but drink it with all the longing of your soul so that you may remain chosen to be righteous guests of your God in

the great house of His Creation and do not have to be cast away together with those who have befouled the pure house by the works of their arrogance and conceit, their greed for power and their hatred!

You stand in the power of the Word! All bearers of the Holy Cross who do not regard it as an external sign and a badge, but regard it in purest faithfulness!

The time has come to proclaim the Word, to speak of the Word! Be God's swordsmen for the Truth and the Light! The Lord's power will be with you triumphantly!

  

---

## The Wound.

**I**t is time to speak about the wound that continually weakens the bearers of the Cross of Truth! You have thought about it, and mulled it over for a long time already, without recognizing it.

This applies not only to the Mountain, but also to the lowlands! I do not want people to be like churchgoers who smugly listen to and savor the Word in order to be gently uplifted by It, to relish It. Instead I want people who are capable of building It up within themselves in joyful activity, into a solid fortress, a pure temple of God!

Diligence is what I demand of everyone who is permitted to receive my Word if It is to benefit him!

If you were thus, you would no longer bear the wound that continuously weakens you. You would long ago have been cured of it. As it is, however, it still holds you down and has a paralyzing effect on all stirrings of the spirit!

I will tell you what it is: In spite of all of your knowledge, in spite of your best intentions, you still lack that completely infectious conviction of the final recognition of the great Light happening which you wish to serve!

*This* is the seemingly still incurable wound that Lucifer inflicted on mankind, the shackle that keeps you and humanity still tightly bound to the darkness with iron force; the open sore that will not close to form a firm defense against all evil, but continually offers a weak spot for the darkness to deliver strikes, capable of having an obstructive or even destructive effect on your Light volition.

Do you understand what the problem is? You lack the *conviction of God's Omnipotence* which is *with* you when you are active in the service of the Grail! Through lack of this

conviction you constrain the effects which should manifest triumphantly through you in all your deeds, even in your thoughts!

Wherever you are beaten back, where your activity and volition are not ablaze with unconditional victory, you alone *are* to blame because there you lacked the power of conviction with which you *must* be victorious!

*You serve God* with your volition, your activity, and *God is with you* if you stand solidly in His Will and do not let your own will stand in between!

If all the powers of this world unite against you, they cannot accomplish a thing as long as you follow the Will of God and do as He commands you! If earthly regulations appear to oppose what you are commanded to do, do not hesitate; go straight to your work with confidence, without fear and without doubt. All obstacles will dissolve into nothingness and the success you strive for will be yours, *in every case!* Absorb what lies in these words for they will be fulfilled.

Furthermore do not forget that *Omniscience*, which remains highly exalted above all human knowledge, guides and directs you toward the right goals and recognizes each final ramification of all current happenings!

So many of you have often had incredible earthly experiences. As we have seen in small things, which were however greater than you imagine, so it is with the most difficult and seemingly insurmountable things! Wherever an earthly power tries to forestall and oppose, you remember this: *Omnipotence* is with you which is far greater than any power and which nothing in all of Creation can oppose!

Man against God! How can there be any question remaining about the outcome and the end!

The consciousness of your firm conviction, however, is what you still lack. What prevents you from attaining it is your distorted intellect with which Lucifer fettered you. The intellect alone prevents you from fighting in the right sense, from being warriors for the Holy Will of God here on earth!

As soon as human regulations and opinions are in *opposition to you*, right away you cower timidly in the false conviction that you would not be capable of overcoming them. You become weak thereby, and do not brace yourself for battle!

However, every state which truly wishes to *build up* will *support* my Message and its movement; never suppress it; because it uplifts people and promotes the culture.

Just proceed with steady strides, undaunted in the holy conviction of an unshakable faith in the Omnipotence of God, which is with you, and everything that lies before you and tries to hinder you will dissolve of itself and will even supportively *help* you to succeed!

Once you have inwardly advanced this far *then* can you become real helpers for humanity in order to guide it upward to the Light through the Word.

However, *all* of you must be warriors for the Light, from the first to the last bearer of the Holy Cross! Yet, there is not one amongst you, not one in the full sense and with that strength that he could be and should be by now! Such has been the devastating and corrosive effect of your enslavement by the intellect since Jesus' time on earth!

You are not to become warriors who throw bombs and grenades and kill people. You are never to bring destruction to your fellow creatures, but you are to strike with the sword of conviction which is backed by God's Omnipotence and cannot be opposed or resisted! What I gave you and continue to give you, over and over, is unconditional victory!

You can conquer *everything* here on earth if you *want to* and if you *act* in this conviction. You are invincible and every word of yours will also become deed, as long as it is spoken in the right way, that is, in the consciousness of that high power working *with* you.

For that I gave you everything, but you do not make use of it because you are still bleeding from the wound that weakens you and prevents you from becoming warriors!

You fainthearted ones who have been given so much of

ineffable greatness, I know you and realize that once again you do not know how to make use of it, even after you have finally come to understand it, because once again you will immediately attempt to press it into smallness.

How great were the simple people who at the time of Christ thirsted to listen to His Word and decided to follow It, without cutting It up with the time and energy wasting cogitations of the distorted intellect! Even today you can take an example from those who could not be given the same high power directly that was given to you, who could not be arduously brought up toward a new becoming as was the case with you.

I have made it easy for you, which is why you take it so lightly and do not realize clearly the enormous gravity of each word.

Now, however, time presses as it moves forward, inexorably evolving. If you do not finally grasp the essence of the Word, then the sword which was handed to each one of you therewith will wound *you, yourself* if you do not wish to learn how to guide it. It will stir without your volition! Guide it well, or it will strike you. You cannot remain inactive. The power which I now send into Creation will not permit it.

It is Holy Law in the Grail that *he* will be stricken, will lose, will be harmed, who for even one moment hesitates in his conviction and his action, who does not force himself to set his sight on God and proceed with unshakable composure. I have often called your attention to this Law, because it always remains the basic foundation from which success and victory arise.

Do not make it easy for yourselves by thinking that surely Omnipotence will work through you wherever it must!

Omnipotence streams! In that you are quite right. It also works without you and guides everything to the end as determined by God at the exact time, without a single second of delay. Yet, unnecessary rubble would have to cover this path! That is why each path should first be smoothed by you. You are called to *co-operate* in the up-building of the earth, and to help

rescue humans who without *your* help would be doomed because they would not awaken on their own.

You are to assist in preparing all earthly paths so that help can be given in time and in a manner that is necessary for humanity. It is not always a matter of the Word and Its dissemination, but also of the purely earthly necessity of an up-building.

Whatever a called one contributes, *everything* has to be approached with the unshakable conviction of absolute victory, of complete success!

The power of the Light pushes obstacles aside as long as *you* unswervingly follow the path that is mapped out for you. As long as you yourselves do not shy away from apparent obstacles, they can never come into effect!

Due to the inner certainty of your conviction the Omnipotence of God can flow and force victory for you *everywhere*, in *everything* you undertake in the service of the Grail!

*That* is how it works. Through your actions you have to provide the channels that guide the thrust of this Omnipotence to specific points. And this can only be realized through the clear certainty of purest conviction. Then you will experience one miracle after another, one always greater than the other!

However, do not become careless, superficial or even presumptuous towards people, but always remain awake, in the spiritual as well in the earthly sense! Make a start in earnest and soon you will gain invincible confidence, so that people will acknowledge in astonishment and admiration that God is clearly and visibly with you!

However, you always attempt to use your old way of thinking which for you called ones must remain past and done with; because you have been lifted out of the old and have been equipped with supra-terrestrial Power. Let this power work at last!

Act with the genuine conviction that God's Omnipotence is with you and any tribulations will stay away from you. As long

as tribulations are able to reach you, it is your own faintheartedness which supported them!

Whoever exhibits faintheartedness has not grasped the greatness of the happening. He is not aware of the blessings he receives at each new hour, and he will never be able to become a true warrior for God here on earth.

Now do you know what makes a warrior for God? You are not to carry on unnecessary debates or commit crude deeds; instead you are to *do your work* in the purest confidence in the Omnipotence of your God. No matter the type of work, if in the service of the Holy Grail it will always only be constructive, never destructive. It will bring only blessings, never sorrow!

Your guidance is of such extraordinary nature that your human-earthly intellect will never be able to comprehend it. For this reason your *spirit* has to subordinate itself to the guidance! See to it that more *life*, greater *enthusiasm* arises within you and you will accomplish *everything* easily!

However, no one must become conceited in this; for only the intervention of the Light brings you victory! So long as your confidence in the Light is limitless! Whoever seeks to promote *himself* as the one bringing about success will immediately cause everything to stagnate; he will promote difficulties and will be denied victory.

At last *transmit* to seekers that which I have always given to you in such abundance, so that it now may fluently begin the necessary cycle, which will course like an avalanche through the souls and through the worlds! Have the *same* patience with them as you found in *me*. You make the same effort to understand your fellowmen as I had to make in paving a way for you to the Light Gardens of God which you, like all others, had lost completely, while going down wrongful paths instead.

Now you are to be the giving ones, the upward leading ones out of all suffering! But you cannot do so as long as you keep the bridges drawn up. Give of yourself to mankind as I gave of myself. Then you will be true warriors of God here on earth! Only then do you fulfill your task.

---

A cheerful greeting has awakened many a spirit, a smile relieved many a pain, and a sympathetic look has breathed self-confidence into many a weak soul!

How impoverished have you been in your spiritual abundance which you did not wish to use for others to delight in and feast on! The joy of others alone has an invigorating and refreshing effect on the spirit! *You* are the receivers whenever you cheerfully bring happiness to those whose spirits are yearning; when you encourage those who waver and strengthen those who are weak! *For this purpose* I gave you everything and urged you to make the most of your talents!

I know that for many of you all that was needed now was the Word to lift the last veils from your tentative volition so that everything that lay within you waiting to be awakened can rise to purposeful action!

Be warriors now and givers! The time is now!

From this hour on let *Life* arise in you! Banish all faintheartedness from your souls and work in the Power of the Lord!

Close the wound which you have borne even up to this hour, so that finally you can resist all doubting of the intellect. If you are not able to do this in the very near future, it will be too late for you!

Therefore, may the wound that you still bear *burn* painfully! Through pain, may it finally prepare you for the Holy battle on earth so that the spirit within you may arise and become ablaze at last!

---

## Omniscience.

With my Word I lead you back to God, from whom you allowed yourselves gradually to become estranged through all those who placed their human pseudo-knowledge above the Wisdom of God.

And those who are still profoundly convinced of the Omniscience of God, who wish to bow humbly before the great, loving guidance contained therein through the effects of the irrevocable Laws of this Creation, have a different concept of this Omniscience of God from what it is!

They picture the Wisdom of God as much too *human* and consequently much too small, compressed into boundaries that are much too narrow! With the best of volition they turn Omniscience into nothing but an earthly *should-know-everything*.

However, all their good thinking in this matter is too human. Forever and again they commit the one big mistake of seeking to picture God and the Divine as the *pinnacle* of *humanness*!

They do not go beyond the human way at all, rather they proceed upward only from the concept of their own nature, i.e. starting from the *human* basis, perfected to the highest, most ideal point of the same species. Even in their conception of God, they nonetheless do not leave their own level.

Even when they seek to raise their expectation to something which is utterly unfathomable to them, everything still remains in this one mental groove, and thus even with the volition to gain a sense of it, they will never find even a shadow of the conception of the true greatness of God.

It is no different with the conception of Divine Omniscience! In your most venturesome thinking you make nothing of it but a petty and earthly *all-knowing*! You imagine that Divine

Omniscience should “*know*” your *human* thinking and perceiving. This conception therefore demands or expects from Divine Wisdom an unlimited entrance into and adjustment to the most personal and smallest thinking of every individual here on earth and in all the worlds! A taking care of and understanding and, what is more: a worrying about each little human spirit!

*Such should-knowing is not wisdom!* Wisdom is much greater, standing far above this.

In wisdom lies *Providence!*

Providence, however, is not the same as foreseeing by the guidance, which is what people so often understand by the expression “wise providence”, or rather what so many imagine they understand by it. In this matter they also err, because in their human way of thinking they again *start from below*, and for every kind of greatness they imagine an *improvement* of everything they bear within themselves *as human beings!*

Even with the best attitude, they do not deviate from this habit. They never consider the fact that God and the Divine are of a completely *different species* from theirs, and that all thinking about this must result in nothing but errors if they use the human species as the basis for it!

Herein lies all that has been wrong until now, every conceptual error. One can quite correctly say that not a single one of the past concepts used in thinking, pondering and investigating about this has really been *right*; in their human narrow-mindedness they have never been able to come near to the actual truth!

Providence is *Divine* activity; it lies anchored in Divine Wisdom, in Omniscience. And this Omniscience has become deed in the Divine Laws of this Creation! It rests in them, as also does Providence, and takes effect upon the human beings.

Therefore do not think that God’s Omniscience should know your thoughts and how you are faring on earth. The working of God is entirely different, greater and more comprehensive. With His Will God spans everything, maintains everything,

and furthers everything from out of the Living Law which brings to each individual *that* which he deserves, i.e., that which he wove for himself.

Not one can thus escape the consequences of his deeds, be they evil or good! *It is in this* that God's Omniscience, which is bound to Justice and Love, manifests Itself! In the working of this Creation *everything* has been wisely provided for man! Also the fact that he must *judge* himself!

That which God's Judge brings in the Divine Judgment is the release of the sentences which men had to pass upon themselves according to the Law of God in wise Providence!

The Judge brings into this world the power of *release* which rests in Him. He is the Living Law, is God's All-Holy Will in person: *Immanuel!*

For years now, strangely enough, mankind has been talking about the *Cosmic Turning-Point* which is supposed to come, and in this they are right for once. But the Turning-Point has already come! Mankind stands amid the world-embracing happening which they are still awaiting, and they do not notice it because they *do not want to*.

As always they imagine it *differently* and do not wish to recognize how it *really* is. Through this, however, they miss the right time for the possibility of individual maturing for themselves, and they fail. They fall short as they always do, for never as yet have mankind fulfilled *that* which God can and must expect of them if He is to permit them to stay in this Creation any longer.

Now, however, God's forbearance has come to an end; for in men's actions there is such self-willed narrow-mindedness, which is repeated in the same way at *every* Light Happening, such childish willfulness and ridiculous conceit that their incorrigible spiritual indolence manifests all too clearly in this and leaves no hope for possible salvation.

For this reason it is God's Will that Creation now be purified from all such evil. And this All-Holy Will brings the purification in the closing of the cycle of all happenings, all actions!

The closing of the cycle is brought about through the Power of the Light which is now anchored on earth and in which everything must judge itself, must purify itself, or must perish and sink into the terrible disintegration.

It is natural, and conditioned by the Laws of Creation, that now, towards the end, all of the evil characteristics must bring forth their strongest blossoms and bear their most repulsive fruits, in order through this to live themselves to extinction through and in each other! Everything must come to the boiling point in the Power of the Light! However, this time only a *matured* mankind can emerge from the seething, those who are able and also willing to accept the new revelations from God gratefully and jubilantly, and to live accordingly so that they wander through Creation acting in the right way.

At each Turning-Point the Creator offered the maturing human spirits new revelations unknown to them until then, which were meant to serve as an extension of their knowledge so that through expanded recognition their spirits would become capable of rising upwards to the Luminous Heights, which once they left unconsciously as spirit germs.

However, there have always been just a few who proved themselves willing gratefully to accept accounts coming down from the Divine sphere, and who were thereby able to gain in value and spiritual strength as much as was necessary for humanity.

The majority of all mankind rejected these high gifts from God due to the constantly increasing limitation of their spiritual comprehension.

The periods for such Cosmic Turning-Points were always connected with the condition of Creation's state of maturity at the time. In its development according to the Holy Law of God the maturity of Creation was always exactly fulfilled, but due to their spiritual indolence the *human beings* in Creation often placed themselves in the way of these developments *as obstacles!*

During the dissemination among human beings of the

increasing recognition of all God's Activity in Creation, which was arranged in world epochs, they closed themselves to it almost every time.

Since human beings elevated themselves to be the starting-point of all existence, they did not wish to believe that something existed which they could not grasp with their earthly senses. They limited their knowledge to this alone, and therefore did not want to accept anything else, they, who are at the farthest fringes of Creation, most remote from genuine existence and real life, who wantonly fritter away the time of grace allowed them in order to mature through advancing recognition.

Now comes a new, great Turning-Point which also brings new knowledge! Although they themselves speak about this Turning-Point, again they only envisage it as the fulfillment of vain human wishes of their own. Not that *they* would have duties thereby. No, again they only wait for the Light to throw into their laps the improvement of earthly comforts! That is how the Turning-Point is supposed to be, for their thinking does not reach any further.

The new knowledge needed which is closely connected with this Turning-Point, and which enables man to ascend spiritually and thus at last also to transform the environment in the material spheres, does not interest them. Anything that did not yet exist they simply reject out of spiritual indolence.

The human spirit gives proof of how far removed from the volition to ascend he is when he thinks that it is of no consequence to him whether or not he knows of Imanuel since there had never been any mention of Him before. There is no other reason to close themselves off with their typical obstinacy from revelations of and about Him at the current Cosmic Turning Point, instead of accepting everything with joy and gratitude!

However, I say to you: God now *forces* the human beings to accept, for otherwise they can no longer ascend spiritually; for they *must* know about it!

It lies within the working of Omniscience that at very specific states of maturity in Creation ever new revelations about the working of God are given to the human spirits.

For this reason, *Created ones* were sent down to this earth already primeval ages ago, after the spirit-germs in their slow development had already developed the animal bodies chosen for this purpose into human body forms, a development which went hand in hand with the rising spiritual self-consciousness in the physical body. This was untold ages *before* the known ice age of this earth!

Since I have already given the knowledge about *Primordial Created Beings* there must also exist *Subsequent Created Beings* or *Created Beings*, because I have also talked of developed beings, and it is only this group to which the human beings on earth belong.

These *Created ones*, of whom I have not spoken so far, inhabit spheres in Creation which lie between those of the *Primordially Created ones* of *Primordial Creation* and the developed beings of *Subsequent Creation*.

In the beginning stages a *Created one* would occasionally incarnate in the maturing tribes of the evolving spirit germs here and there in order to guide and provide the connection to the next step in the necessary upward striving of the *Spiritual*. These were the great *Turning-Points there* in the times of the beginning.

Later on came the *Prophets* as *Divinely gifted ones*. *In this way* the *Infinite Love* worked from out of the *Light* to help and assist the human spirits with ever new revelations whenever *Creation* was in the appropriate state of maturity, until finally parts out of *God Himself* came down so that mankind might also receive the *Sacred Tidings* about the *Divine* and *Its Working*. This was so that mankind would not fall victim to disintegration in the stagnation of overripeness associated with a particular point which had been reached, which would have to happen according to the self-acting *Laws* in *Creation*, since continual upward striving is a basic condition for continued existence in *Creation*.

Thus the great Cosmic Turning-Point now in effect also entails the absolute necessity for an expansion of knowledge up to the existence of Imanuel, in whom the Turning Point is now being fulfilled!

Either the human spirit must raise himself upwards to the knowledge of this or it remains stationary. This latter condition is equivalent to the setting in of disintegration for him, as a result of his being useless because of the inactive overripeness of a stagnant human spirit that no longer knows how to apply the power of the Light accumulating within it in the right way. Thus that which can and would *help* the human spirit becomes its ruin, as is the case with all energy that is wrongly applied.

Therefore you must now know of Imanuel; because for you, this time has arrived!

He who still insists on disregarding these new Divine revelations may no longer remain in Creation, but he will be erased from the book of life. Thus is it willed by God! And His Holy Will is now being fulfilled on mankind from this hour on with a force becoming visible to all through the power of the Light, which no one can resist.

Through severe suffering people's souls will now be loosened and prepared to receive the Word I bring to them from out of God! And only the willing ones will emerge from all tribulations to a new existence.

*God* is Lord, *only He alone*, and whoever does not want to acknowledge Him humbly, just as He really *is*, and not as *you imagine Him* to be, has been judged!

Immanuel is as inseparably connected with God the Father as is Jesus, and this has to become knowledge for you in this time of the Cosmic Turning Point!

Thousands of tongues will now be loosened here on earth to proclaim Imanuel to all the peoples as He has already been proclaimed by hosts of angels throughout the whole of Creation; because it is the Will of God the Father.

I was allowed to unfold before you the picture of the weaving in Creation to which you belong, so that you will become seeing

and may consciously enjoy and use for your benefit the blessings contained in Creation for you; so that in future they may only *help* you to advance upwards, and will not have to punish you painfully or even reject you! Thank the Lord for remembering you with such Love as to allow me to tell you with my Message what will help you, and also what is dangerous for you.

Men you have now become seeing through this, you have become knowing, but you are twice as guilty if you want to follow wrongful paths!

I showed you *those* paths which lead to the Luminous Heights. Now *follow* them!

---

## The human word.

**A**s a great grace for your maturing in the world of gross matter, the ability to form words has been bestowed upon you human beings by the Creator!

You have never recognized the true value of this sublime gift, because you did not make the effort to do so, and treated it carelessly. Now you must suffer bitterly under all the consequences of your wrongdoing.

You stand in this affliction and do not yet know the *causes* which bring such suffering in their wake.

No one may trifle with gifts of the Almighty without harming himself; such is the Law which rests and works in Creation, and which can never be deceived.

And when you consider that this being able to speak, i.e. your ability to form words which anchor your volition into the world of gross matter through speaking, is quite a special, high gift from your Creator, then you will also know that obligations and an immense responsibility arise therefrom; for you are to work in Creation with and through the language!

The words you form, the sentences, shape your outward fate on this earth. They are like seeds in a garden which you build around you; for each human word belongs to that which is most lively among those things in this Creation which *you* can form for yourselves.

Today I tell you as a warning, to bear in mind: there is an activating quality in every word, because all words are firmly anchored in the Primordial Laws of Creation!

Every word formed by man has come into being under the pressure of higher Laws and, according to its application, must manifest formatively in a very definite way!

How it is *applied* is up to man according to his free volition;

however he is unable to control the effect, which is strictly and justly governed in conformity with the Holy Law by a power hitherto unknown to him.

Therefore in the final reckoning woe will now fall upon every human being who has abused the mysterious working of the word!

But where is *the* man who has *not* yet sinned in this respect! The whole earthly race has been deeply entangled in this guilt for thousands of years.

What harm has already been spread throughout this earth by the wrong application of this gift of being permitted to speak!

Poison was sown by all men through destructive, careless, and idle talk. The seed has duly sprung up, the plant has blossomed forth, and now bears the fruits which you must harvest, whether you like it or not; for all of them every one of them are the consequences of your actions that are now thrown into your lap!

That this poison *must* bring forth the most repulsive fruits will not surprise anyone who knows the Laws in Creation, which do not conform to the ideas of men, but serenely pursue their great course inexorably, without deviation, from the primordial beginning, and also unchanged unto all eternity.

Look around you, men, clearly and free from prejudice: You *must* easily recognize the self-acting Divine Laws of the Most Holy Will, because you do have before you the fruits of your sowing! Wherever you look today you will find high-sounding talk at the top and leading everything. In the ripening process, this seed *had* to blossom swiftly, to reveal its true core, and then collapse as useless thereby.

It *had* to ripen under the increased pressure from the Light, and must shoot up as if in a hothouse, so that, in its hollowness, losing any support, it will fall and bury all who with careless confidence or selfish hope imagined themselves safe under its protection.

The time of harvest has already begun! Therewith all the consequences of untruthful speech now fall back upon the

individual, as well as upon all the masses who encouraged such talk.

It is quite *natural*, and shows the strict consistency of the effects of the Divine Laws, that now at the end time the biggest talkers must gain the strongest influence and greatest power, as a culmination and fruit of this continual wrong use of the word, whose mysterious working foolish humanity could no longer know since they have long ago closed themselves off from the knowledge of it.

They did not listen to the warning voice of Jesus, the Son of God, who already at that time said:

“Let your communication be yea or nay; for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil!”

These words contain more than you imagined; for they hold upbuilding or decline for mankind!

Through your proclivity for much useless talk you have chosen *decline*, which has already come to you. And in the end, before the general collapse in the Judgment, it shows you quite clearly as a help towards the saving recognition, all the fruits which you have forced upon yourselves through the wrong application of the word.

The reciprocal power now raises the masters at your own sins to the top, in such a way that you are in danger of being crushed by them, so that through recognition you will at last free yourselves from them, or be destroyed by them.

That is at the same time justice and help, as only the Will of God in His Perfection can offer you!

Just look around you! You *must* recognize it, if only you want to. And for those who still hesitate to do so, the veil which they themselves hold before their eyes will yet be forcibly torn away from the fruits of their volition through suffering greater still than in the past, so that this earth may be cleansed from the pressure of your great guilt!

The entire mankind has actively participated in this, not individuals alone. It is the flourishing of all the wrongdoing over past centuries, which then had to ripen in these last fruits

for the Judgment, so as to perish in this ripeness.

The frivolous, senseless and thoughtless chatter which is always wrong and out of harmony with the Primordial Laws of Creation, had to culminate in the *universal* disease which is evident today, and must now in fever spasms, as in a storm, shake off the fruits... they drop into mankind's lap.

Hence no people should be pitied who must now groan and suffer under this; for these are the fruits of their *own* volition, which must be consumed even if they taste rotten and bitter and bring destruction to many, for only poison can be harvested from poisonous seed.

In my Message I have already said: where you sow thistles, no wheat can grow!

Thus, no upbuilding can ever arise out of hate speech, mockery and injury to your fellow-men; for every way and manner can only bring forth something *similar*, can only attract what is homogeneous! You must *never* forget this Law of Creation! It works *automatically*, and no human volition can ever act against it! Never, do you hear? Impress it upon yourselves, so that you may always heed it in your thinking, speaking and acting; for everything sprouts from this and your fate grows out of it! Therefore never hope for anything but for the fruit to be the same kind as the seed!

This after all is not so difficult, and yet it is just in this that you continually fail! Slander can produce only slander, hate only hate, and murder only murder. But nobility, peace, light and joy can in turn only arise from a *noble* way of thinking, never otherwise.

Liberation and redemption do not lie in the clamor of individuals and of the masses. A people that permits itself to be led by windbags must inevitably and rightfully fall into bad repute, into sorrow and death, into distress and misery; it is forcibly pushed into the mire.

And if hitherto the fruit and the harvest have so often not appeared in *one* earth-life, but only in later ones, this is now different; for the fulfillment of the Holy Will of God forces

*immediate* release of every happening on earth, and therewith also the resolution of all the fates of men and of the peoples! Final reckoning!

Therefore guard your word! Pay careful attention to your speech; for the human word is also deed which, however, can produce forms only in the plane of fine gross matter, which forms sink into and affect everything earthly.

But do not imagine that promises are fulfilled according to their wording and thus grow into deeds, unless at the same time the speaker bears the purest intentions in his soul; but the words form *that* which from out of the *innermost being of the speaker* simultaneously vibrates with them. Thus the same word can produce two kinds of results, and woe unto him when it did not truthfully vibrate in complete purity!

I lift the veil covering your ignorance which has prevailed up to now, so that you may henceforth consciously experience the evil consequences, and benefit from this experience for the future.

As a further help I therefore give you:

*Heed your word! Let your speech be simple and true!* In accordance with the Holy Will of God, it contains an ability to form in an upbuilding or in a devastating way, depending on the nature of the words and of the speaker.

Do not squander these sublime gifts which God so mercifully granted you, but seek to recognize them aright in their full value. Up till now the power of speech has been a curse to you through such people, who, as Lucifer's henchmen, have misused it under the evil influence of the distorted and one-sidedly cultivated intellect!

Therefore beware of people who talk much; for hand in hand with these goes disintegration. You, however, are to become *upbuilding ones* in this Creation, not blabbermouths!

Heed your word! Do not talk merely for the sake of talking. And speak only when, where and as it is necessary! The human word shall bear a reflection of the Word of God, which is Life and will eternally remain Life.

You know that all Creation swings in the Word of the Lord! Does this not make you think! Creation vibrates in Him, as you yourselves do, you who are indeed part of Creation; for it arose out of Him and is maintained through this Word.

It has been clearly proclaimed to mankind:

“In the beginning was the Word! And the Word was with God! *God* was the Word!”

Herein lies all knowledge for you, if only you would draw on it. But you skim over it and do not heed It. It tells you plainly: The Word came *out of* God! It was and is a part out of Him. And this Word of God, this living Creative Word of God the Father: It is *Immanuel!*

It is not named that, rather It is! In Him swings everything that is permitted to live, out of Him was formed the entire Creation; for He is at the same time:

Let there be light!

A faint reflection of the power of the *Living* Word of God, which contains all and embraces all that is outside of God, a faint reflection of this also lies in the *human word!*

It is true that the human word is only able to send out its effect into the planes of fine gross matter, but that is enough reciprocally to shape the destinies of men and of nations *here on earth!*

Remember this! He who talks much stands only on the ground of the distorted, one-sidedly cultivated intellect! The two always go hand in hand. This is how you can recognize it! They are words from the low earthly depth which are never able to build up. But in accordance with the Divine Law the word *is to* build up. Wherever it does not obey this command it can only bring about the opposite.

Therefore always heed your word! And *stand* by your word! You shall yet be taught the right way to do this in the building up of the Kingdom of God here on earth.

You must first learn to recognize the power of the words which you have hitherto so thoughtlessly and frivolously debased.

Just think of the most Holy Word that has been given to you, of the Word: GOD!

You speak of God very often, *too* often for *that* awe still to resound in It which would indicate the right *intuitive perception*: the awe which will allow you only to *whisper* the Sublime Word in reverential devotion, so as to shield It carefully from any kind of desecration.

But what have you men made of the most Sacred of all concepts in the Word! Instead of humbly and joyfully preparing your spirit for this most Sublime Expression, so that it may gratefully open itself to an unspeakable Radiation-Power of the Unsubstantiated Light-Sublimity of real Being, who first permits you, as well as all creatures, even to breathe, you have dared to drag It down to the low planes of your most trivial thinking, using It carelessly as an every-day word, which thereby had now to turn into mere empty sound, and thus cannot find entrance into your *spirit*.

It is therefore self-evident that the effect of this most Sublime of all words will be different from the effect it has on those who whisper It with the proper awe and recognition.

Therefore pay attention to *all* words; for they hold joy or sorrow for you, they build up or disintegrate, they bring clarity but they can also confuse, depending on the *manner in which* they are spoken and applied.

I will later also give you the recognition for *this*, so that you can *give thanks* with *every* word which the Creator still permits you to speak now! Then you shall also have earthly happiness, and peace will reign here on this hitherto troubled earth.

---

## New Year 1935.

A new year! At the turn of each year, people ask themselves, what will the New Year bring me? One person, when he hears the New Year's Eve bells, will ask quietly and earnestly by himself. Others do so apprehensively with woes in their hearts, while many joke frivolously and laugh exuberantly in merry company, or, in a state of intoxication, wantonly challenge fate in order to recklessly remove the veil, ready to meet defiantly what is in store for them.

A great many, however, harbor in their hearts grudges, envy and hate toward their fellow man, whom they begrudge anything good. Secretly they ponder mischief and destruction. Vengefully, they forge plans to be realized in the New Year.

Only few, very few people quietly fold their hands in humble prayer in order to approach God in spirit with a sense of gratitude for the merciful guidance throughout the old year! Gratitude for still having been able to experience suffering and joy which awakened their spirit or permitted it to mature further in recognition.

Such are the muddled waves of thought-forms at the start of the New Year. A mixture of poison and frivolity, superficiality, all sorts of desires, and greed for power using lies and deception... but one thing is missing: the pure yearning for true peace that is rooted in humility and reverence for God! Yearning for peace *for the sake of peace*. This yearning man no longer bears within himself; for he can no longer be without self-serving thoughts.

God's last call to mankind has gone unheeded again. Men go on living under the delusion that everything on earth should conform to *their* will, even the Lord, their God, to the extent that they even acknowledge Him.

Now the *New Year* has arrived, the year that will bring them the surprise as well as the experience that their will means nothing before the all-powerful Will of God which will force them to their knees, breaking any and all resistance. People will cease to willfully carry suffering out into the world; because they will have to defend themselves in desperation against the pressure of the returning streams of the fruits of their own wrongdoings.

The year that is starting today brings *gross-material* releases, which are visible to mankind, tangible and physical. No one can pass them by heedlessly any longer as has been done in the past in all spiritual happenings!

There will be great lamenting everywhere in all the lands, and the words which I have spoken warningly in recent years will be fulfilled!

They will be fulfilled! *Each and every Word!*

How often has mankind mocked and ridiculed me because I warningly spoke many a word that did not appear to be fulfilled immediately. Adherents turned lukewarm and started to doubt because of this, and some who were well-meaning advised me that it would be better not to speak of such things, as doing so would only diminish or even completely destroy the value of the teachings.

These clever people had no idea that I *had to* speak in this way, that it was fulfillment on my part and that I could not heed human opinion, no matter whether their thinking in this regard was hostile or friendly.

I could heed neither their mockery nor their hostilities, and had to endure everything and even calmly watch as many an adherent, who held great prospects for service to the Grail, turned away from me on this account. For I had to continue to speak in this way because it was fulfillment on my part, and it was for the purpose of this *fulfillment* that I came to earth!

People did not know nor did they believe that I *am* the living Law *myself* as well as the Living Word, the Word of God, which does not prophesize but is creative, primordially creative: *deed!*

And if the whole world had *continually* showered me with scorn and derision, and if all had turned away from me in doubt, I would *still* have spoken, without leaving out a single word, just as I did; because these words contained holy fulfillments!

What is humanity's derision to me, when I work in the Will of God, which I am! What do I care about doubting earthly pettiness, about indulgent sneers or even the hatred of earthly humans!

*I only know the mandate from my Father, and nothing else!* And this mandate will be fulfilled by me with or without acceptance by the people.

I have often said: *My Word is deed!* Yet no one ever developed the right concept of this. That was the fault of the people themselves. Whenever I spoke of the Judgment, they assumed that it was only a prophecy and waited for a speedy fulfillment as they trustingly listened to my words. Others, however, were only waiting to attack me when nothing was fulfilled in the timeframe that *they* had imagined.

Not *one* of these people knew that with my Word the happening was *initiated* immediately, that thereby it was born and had arisen in the mechanism of the cosmos! For it was not merely a human word but the *Word of God* which works *creatively* the moment it is spoken, and which, in its working, never ends until it is completely fulfilled!

While many people took my Words only as prophecy, these Words were already the first blows of God's Sword of Judgment against all humanity, which deems itself smarter and wiser than God Himself, and which wishes to live only according to its own will. The same humanity which had the audacity in every instance to ridicule and murder *all of* the helpers previously sent out by God's Holiest Love!

And while in their ignorance they derided me and my Word, that same Word was already running its courses, actively working through the whole of Creation, only in order finally, in the closing of the cycle, to return again to the earth where it

originated, either crushing and destroying or reviving and uplifting!

And this time of return has now come! The Word has already judged in all world parts and now strikes the gross materiality of this earth as well as all those souls who travel in gross material bodies. Forcefully it tears down all the walls which the souls have erected to protect themselves and to hide behind.

The New Year brings the return of my Word and thereby the Judgment! Consider carefully: not *one* of my Words has been lost! *Everything* is alive and is now closing in on mankind, fulfilling that which is contained in these Words.

It took the lawfully required time to run through all the worlds before returning now to its origin, the earth, in the closing of the cycle, bearing and bringing final fulfillment.

The final effects will now strike mankind until even the last of my Words has been completely fulfilled!

The reciprocal effects arrive faster and faster and will finally, without interruption, mass together into one great, final blow, because God's power has now been released on earth, in order to attract and resolve everything which, still vibrating, draws its circles.

In God's greatness everything is simple, if man only *wished* to understand it! In summary I will illustrate once more for you:

Over the course of the years I *had to speak* at specific times about all the happening which was to come so that it might be fulfilled. It was not meant as a warning to men, as they imagined it to be. Rather it was Deed, Fulfillment, which I brought therewith!

With every word, there simultaneously arose spiritually the specific deed. The power of the Words was carried out into the world in order to run the course of all of the Primordial Laws of Creation and finally to return to the earth at a very specific time. Whatever I have spoken *must* be fulfilled, exactly according to the Word, without any change in the meaning!

---

There can be neither deferments nor changes; because the Word from God is Life and Law! Self-acting in the Power of the Lord.

*For this reason* I already had to speak years ago, progressing along with the development, again and again firmly anchoring new things in this gross materiality through the Word. In all my lectures you only have to separate what I spoke *creatively* from what I spoke *instructively*; for you will easily discover that I have used two types of speech which you can recognize exactly if you make the necessary effort.

Thus my Word became deed and brought the Judgment in all the worlds, as it will now bring the Judgment to *you* on this earth!

You men know nothing of these things.

Only many years hence will you be able to better understand and sense the greatness which lies in all that has already happened and in what will now happen in the New Year!

Gratefully, indeed jubilantly, will you be praising God's Love; for all this is done *for you, mankind, for your deliverance* from the self-chosen quagmire!

Therefore greet the New Year in joyful earnestness and give thanks to God, in His unfathomable Mercy, for your liberation and redemption!

---

## Consider what is of benefit to you!

**W**hy, you men, do you always wish for something *different* spiritually from that which you really *need* and which will *benefit* you! This peculiar characteristic has the effect of a serious plague on all seekers.

It would be of little avail for me to ask you about it; for you cannot account for it to yourselves, even if you tried to think about it day and night.

Just observe yourselves in all calmness, consider the questions that come to life within you, follow your train of thought and where it leads, and you will soon recognize that for the greater part it always leads to such spheres as you will never reach because they lie above your origin, which you will therefore never be able to grasp. The ability to comprehend, however, is the basic condition for anything that is to *benefit* you!

You must realize this in all your thoughts and deeds and adjust yourselves accordingly. Then everything will become easier for you. Therefore you should only deal with that which you can really grasp, i.e., with that which is anchored within the scope of your human existence.

Although the sphere of your ability to be conscious as a human spirit is sharply limited with respect to the Luminous Heights, it is by no means small. It offers you room for all eternity and therewith fields of activity that are correspondingly great.

*Without* limits for you is only the possibility of your *development*, which manifests itself in the ever greater perfecting of your activity within these spheres. Therefore pay close attention to what I am revealing to you herewith:

The rise in perfection of your spiritual *activity* is limitless

and knows no end. You can become ever stronger in it, and as you become stronger the sphere of activity will always automatically expand, as a result of which you will find peace, joy, happiness and bliss.

The concept of bliss has also been falsely construed by all human beings up until now. Bliss lies solely in the radiant joy of blissful activity, and not in lazy idleness and indulgence or, in “*sweet idleness*”, an expression which cleverly covers up the falseness of the concept.

For this reason I often call the human Paradise the “Luminous Realm of Joyful Activity!”

The human spirit cannot obtain bliss *in any other way* but through joyful activity for the Light! Through this alone will the crown of eternal life finally be bestowed upon it, guaranteeing to the human spirit permission *eternally* to cooperate in the cycle of Creation without the danger of falling into disintegration as a useless building stone.

Despite the graciously granted opportunity of continually perfecting their spirit, human beings will never be able to overstep the bounds of their sphere of existence in Creation, nor to tear down the strictly established boundaries of human consciousness. By simply *not being able to do so* they also very naturally are *not allowed to do so*. This always manifests itself automatically and for this very reason has an insurmountable effect.

Increased perfection lies in the radiations of the spirit becoming ever more luminous, which is manifested correspondingly through increased strength of activity.

The increasing luminosity of the spirit in turn arises from the purification and cleansing of the soul, if in the volition for the good it strives upwards. One always develops out of the other in strict logical sequence.

If you concern yourselves *exclusively* and earnestly with what is good then all else follows of itself. Thus it is not all that difficult. You, however, in your volition ever again reach far beyond this, thus making the simplest things not only very

hard for yourselves but quite often even impossible from the start

Consider that with increasing perfection even the strongest radiation of your spirit can never change its *species* but only its *condition!*

Therefore it is never possible to overstep the scope of limited human consciousness, because the limits are defined through the species and not only through the condition. Within this great framework of species, however, the condition builds very specific small partial boundaries for itself, which can be crossed as the condition changes.

Gigantic expanses lie within this scope, worlds that are incalculable even for your spirit, in which you can dwell and work for all eternity without end.

If you occupy yourselves *with this* thoroughly and in depth, *then* you will be happy!

In my Message I gave you the exact knowledge of what relates to you and what is connected with you, how through your thoughts and actions you work therein and, what you *must* achieve therewith.

However, instead of devoting yourselves in the right sense and with all earnestness to what is offered to you, and thereby at last filling the post which each individual must occupy in this Creation, all your thoughts, your questions and also your desiring go ever again far beyond this, into regions which the human spirit can never consciously reach.

It is therefore impossible for man really to grasp anything of this. All the weaving, radiating, striving, in brief the entire life in these regions, will forever remain incomprehensible to man, far remote from him. Therefore it can be of no benefit to him when he racks his brain over it. He only wastes the time and strength granted him for his own necessary development and must finally perish as useless.

*Bestir* yourselves at last with all of your strength in *that* sphere which the Creator has given to *you*, in order for you to lead it into purest beauty, to make it into a Garden of God in

the likeness of Paradise. This garden is like a prayer of gratitude which has taken on form; it rises jubilantly to the steps of God's Throne, in order humbly to praise the Creator of all things, in humility and in deed, for His abundant Grace!

Men, how small you are and yet how immeasurably demanding and conceited. If only you would bestir yourselves a little in the *right* manner, so that you will swing *with* the Primordial Laws of Creation in undimmed harmony, rather than always acting obstructively in your ignorance as you have in the past, then richest blessings would bloom wherever you take action, no matter what you attempt to undertake.

It simply could not be otherwise. And with the same unswerving certainty, with which over a long period you have already been gliding towards your downfall, you would see yourselves uplifted by that same power leading to spiritual wealth and a trouble-free earthly life.

But first you must *know* your home in Creation, and everything that helps and furthers you. You must know how you yourselves have to walk and work in it before blossoming can begin.

Try first of all to adjust yourselves aright *in the earthly sense* to the vibrations of the Divine Laws, which you can never circumvent without gravely harming yourselves and your surroundings. Also base *your* laws upon these Divine Laws, let them arise from them, then you will quickly have the peace and happiness which further the up-building for which you long so much; for without this all effort is utterly in vain, and even the greatest skill of the best trained intellect is of no avail and results in failure.

It is up to *you*, to you alone, up to each individual, and not as you so much like to delude yourselves, always up to the others. Start first of all with yourselves, but this you do not want to do! For you imagine yourselves to be above this, or such a start appears too small and insignificant.

In reality, however, it is but the indolence of your spirit which is capable of keeping you back from this and to which

you have all enslaved yourselves for thousands of years. Your intellect, which bound the faculties of your spirit, can no longer help you now, when it is a matter henceforth either of bowing to the pure power of God or of perishing.

You must rouse your spirit, awaken it within you in order to recognize the Will of God and to hear what It demands of you; because to It alone man is subject since the very beginning and to no other, to It he must now render account for all His works in the part of Creation that was given to him on loan as his home.

And it will be your unfortunate proclivity always to reach out only for what is higher, of longing for what is alien to you, instead of enjoying your surroundings that will turn against you, giving testimony to one of your worst evils. The evil issued from the indolence of your spirit, which must not be confused with the intellect; for intellect is not spirit!

Indeed you have always done the same in your earthly ways. Instead of forming your environment more beautifully with all of your strength and joy, of making it more perfect and bringing it to full blossom, you often want *to get out* of it, because that seems more comfortable for you and promises quicker success. You wish to separate yourselves from it, in order to find the desired improvement, because you expect immediate improvement and beautification in anything different!

First of all try to *utilize properly* that which is *given* to you! You will discover miracles upon miracles.

However, in order to make use of something in the right way you must also thoroughly *know* it beforehand. And this is where you are completely lacking. You were always too indolent to recognize the Will of your God, which becomes clearly and distinctly visible to you from out of Creation.

Ever again, I must touch on the old wound which you human beings bear, from which I have already often torn off all the covers, which you, however, ever again seek to carefully replace. The wound that forms the origin of all evil, under which

you must now suffer until you either free yourselves from it, or completely collapse, is and remains, the voluntary indolence of your spirit!

Many among these earthmen will no longer be capable of freeing themselves from the deadening clutches of this evil; for they have hesitated too long to bestir themselves to do so.

It is natural that the cleverness of the intellect tries to cover up all spiritual slumber, because with the awakening of your spirit, the domination of the intellect is also quickly ended.

Only indolence of the spirit has too little appreciation for what it is given; it does not take the trouble to discover its beauty and to make it ever more perfect, but imagines that it can find improvement in *change* alone and it seeks happiness in everything that seems *different*.

Man does not consider that a change first necessitates an uprooting, and then places the uprooted one on *alien* soil with which he does not yet know what to do. For this reason he very easily makes big mistakes which bring unsuspected harmful consequences. He who places his hopes in *change*, and does not really know what to do with what is *given* to him, lacks the serious volition as well as the ability, he stands on the precarious ground of a soldier of fortune from the very beginning!

First recognize yourselves aright and utilize that which God offers for your use. Use it in such a way that it *will be able to* blossom forth; then the earth and the entire sphere of Creation left to the human spirit for his activity *must* and *will* become a *Paradise* where only joy and peace dwell; for the Law of Creation will then work *for* you with the same certainty as it must now work against your activities. And it is immovable, stronger than the will of men; for it rests in the Ray of the Primordial Light!

The hour is not far off when men *must* recognize that it will not be at all difficult to live differently than hitherto, to get along with their fellow-men in *peace*!

Man will become seeing, because all possibility for his

hitherto prevailing *wrong* doing and thinking will now be taken away from him by God.

He must then acknowledge with shame how ridiculously he has behaved in his hurried activity which is so unimportant for *real* life, and how *dangerous* he has been to the entire part of Creation which was graciously entrusted to him for his use and enjoyment.

In the future he will live only to the *joy* of his fellow-men, just as they will to his joy, and he will not always enviously desire what he does not yet possess. The ability will awaken to develop the beauty of his personal environment to the most glorious blossom, to fashion it in complete accordance with his nature as soon as he brings it into the great blissful swinging of the simple Primordial Laws of Creation, such as I was able to teach him with the Message through the Love of God, which this time helps by punishing in order to save those who still possess good volition and humility of spirit!

If you wish to build up then *clarify your spirit* first and make it strong and pure. *Clarify* it, which means to let it come to maturity! Creation is already standing in the time of *harvest*, and man as a creature with it.

However, in this he remained behind through his stubborn wrong volition; he placed himself apart from any Light-willed swinging, and must be flung out of the already *intensified* and more joyful rotation of Creation, because in his immaturity he cannot maintain himself therein.

The popular saying about the *clarified* spirit is quite right. A mature or clarified person can very easily be recognized, for he stands in the Light and avoids all that is dark. He will also generate peace around him through his nature.

There will be no more flaring up, but only calm objectivity in the great swinging of joyous activity, or cool severity which in a friendly manner will clear up and throw light upon the frailties of those who have not yet been able to become strong in spirit, but who are still subject to fermentation, which must bring about purification and clarification or... perdition.

Only Darkness can flare up, never the Light, which always exhibits cool purity and peaceful prudence in the conscious power of the high knowledge.

Wherever anger can still *flare up* in a person there are weaknesses that must still be burned out; such a spirit is also still vulnerable to attacks of the Darkness, or to serving as its tool. He is not “clarified”, not yet sufficiently purified.

It is the same with *all* the weaknesses you carry within you, which you seem utterly incapable of resolving, or at least only with great difficulty. In reality it would not be difficult as soon as you resolve to utilize in a sensible manner *that* which God has given you, to apply *in the right way* what you already hold in your hands, and to adapt yourselves to the swinging of the Laws, the knowledge of which you were able to gain already through my Message. It will then be literally as easy as child’s play.

Refrain from concerning yourselves predominantly with questions which go beyond the sphere assigned to you, and learn first of all to recognize thoroughly all *that* which is *within* and *around* you. Then ascent will come of itself; for you will be automatically uplifted by the consequences of your activities.

Be *simple* in your thoughts and deeds; for in simplicity lies greatness as well as strength!

You do not retrogress thereby, but you advance and erect a *firm* structure for a new life in which every person can orientate himself because it is no longer confused and entangled, but assessable in every respect, bright and clear, in a word: healthy! Natural!

Develop yourselves as inwardly upright, genuine *human beings*, and you will thereby immediately have the intimate connection with the entire Creation, which will further you in everything that you need for yourselves and for your ascent. You cannot achieve this in any other way!

*Then* everything you need, everything that brings you joy and peace, will flow to you in rich abundance. No sooner, under any circumstances, no matter how hard you would strive for it;

for the time has now arrived when man on earth *must* open himself to the Word of God, which is the same as adjusting himself to the existing Laws of God's Holy Will, which sustain and further Creation!

There is no other way for all of humanity — nor any other help! They have to recognize and submit or perish; *for the Judgment is here!* As of now no human being will be able to give you council and to help you in the coming affliction, but *only God* alone!

---

## The Spiritual Planes I

For all those who have already absorbed my Message aright, and *only* for those, it is now time for me again to expand the picture of Creation somewhat further, in order to increase their knowledge of it.

In this way you will be initiated into higher recognitions, which have not been given to mankind in the past because they would not have understood. They would have been far too immature spiritually to absorb them. And no man, *of his own accord*, could ever have attained to these recognitions.

These higher recognitions must be given from *above* as a grace from the Light! Often in the past I have spoken of the Primordial Beings who are active in Primordial Creation, the Pure-Spiritual Realm.

Instead of saying Pure spiritual I could with equal justification use the expressions Highly spiritual and Completely spiritual. I could likewise designate it as the *highest* spiritual. All would be correct.

But I preferred the term Pure-Spiritual in view of the *most pure* spiritual that was able to take on form there. It is the most pure and thereby the *strongest* out of the spiritual which is capable of becoming fully conscious of itself, and in remaining conscious also to be active, under the highest pressure of the Light which the spiritual, as being spiritual, can bear at all.

In becoming self-conscious the form arose simultaneously without having first to undergo a slow process of development, as becomes necessary in lower-lying, even more cooled off, therefore denser and also slower orbits of this Creation.

After the strongest out of the spiritual was immediately able to sever itself and take on form, remaining in the closest

proximity to the Divine sphere and held fast by the latter's strong attraction through the Light-Pressure, the remainder was pushed further away by this pressure because it was unable to resist and had to give way to the too strong pressure, after the strongest thereof had become form. Form of different varieties, such as human, animal and plant forms, water, fire, air and earth, all of course remaining spiritual.

The spiritual species which had been pushed still further away and remained unformed was able to cool off even more in the greater distance from the Light, and with this a further new world came into existence; for in the cooling off process that which *this time* ranked the strongest in the remainder of the spiritual could now separate itself and take on form in order to be consciously active in this plane which had cooled off more.

However, the second as well as the first, the uppermost plane, contain many gradations within themselves, which formed according to the *speed* of their ability to be conscious.

In turn the differences therein were conditioned by the differences in a *greater* or *lesser* capacity to bear the nearness of the Light-Pressure which occur even within a *homogeneous species*.

Thus here too, there are still fine distinctions. Therefore each plane of a particular homogeneous species has nevertheless within its boundaries numerous planes which can be active either nearer to the highest point of this particular plane or only further away.

This often results in barely noticeable transitions which stretch in this way through the whole of Creation without interruption, resulting in glorious, absolutely gapless connections for the Light-Power to pass through. We may also call them steps which, despite their delicate nature, can never be crossed upwards unless the corresponding degree of consistency in the homogeneous species has been attained for this purpose!

But the developed human spirits, to which earthmen belong, originate neither in the afore-mentioned first nor in the second collective spiritual plane, but they issue from the *last precipitation* of spiritual substance, which does not hold enough strength to be able to form itself and become conscious in the second plane of the spirit.

Neither could this precipitation remain there since it was no longer able to withstand the pressure of the Light even at this more remote place, after *that* part had severed and formed itself which was able to do so, on this second plane. Thus the part left over, being the last precipitation, had to recede still further into yet deeper cooling-off possibilities.

But here also, being the weakest part and last precipitation of the spiritual, it was not possible for this precipitation to become conscious *of its own accord* without receiving an impulse from outside. That is why they remained only human spirit-germs, although capable of development and filled with the urge for it by their spiritual nature, yet not strong enough to awaken *of themselves*, and thus to take on form in the process of becoming conscious.

The spiritual nature of plants and animals and everything else in this last condensation was still able to form itself and produce glorious populated landscapes; these do not require the strength of personal *self-consciousness* as is the case with creatures of the human spiritual which can form only out of the special spiritual nature which bears within it *self-volition*, thus being of a *different* spiritual species than that from which plants and animals are able to form themselves.

It is only *there* that the spirit of earthman as such *originates* in the great Creation; here is also where arose and where is the Paradise of the human spirits that develop toward perfection; it is the plane of their actual origin and at the same time of their return upon perfection!

Looking downwards from above it lies at an immense depth, yet looking upwards from the earth it lies nevertheless at an unfathomable height; for the planes of the worlds of matter,

which are the spheres of development and fields of activity for the human spirits, extend far and wide.

Their inability to awaken of themselves, even at this outermost place, which is furthest away from the Light and the last point of support of the spiritual, forces these spirit-germs as they follow the inner urge for development to move on even further in order gradually to develop to spiritual consciousness by wandering through the more and more distant worlds of fine and coarse matter, since the friction and impact of their density and weight contribute to and compel them to awaken and grow strong.

That is the approximate picture of the genesis of your human spirit.

Until now I have always spoken of the Primordially Created ones and of the developed ones, but never mentioned Created ones! It would have been too much for mankind as long as they do not thoroughly know or have not actually absorbed my Message inwardly. For in the case of the Living Word of the Message simple reading is not sufficient. It requires an *alert* spirit and from the very beginning absolutely the greatest volition in the seeking for the Light.

Only to those who are this serious and to those who plead for it do I give the extended view into the wonderful Creation, which surrounds you as the Work of God in clear greatness, with the activity of the most perfect and thereby irrevocable self-acting Laws.

It is a vast field, and yet no gaps shall be left, but everything in its own time. Now I am first giving only that with which earthman is connected in an absolutely straight line. It remains unpleasant enough to know the unworthy manner in which earthly mankind have been exerting themselves for thousands of years to restrict and oppress in a destructive way their most valuable possession, indeed the only thing that makes them real human beings, their *spirit*. So much so that now man on earth is even ashamed to speak of something *spiritual*, to admit to a spiritual experience. But it becomes

agonizing to experience ever again that men, with an incredibly ridiculous stupidity, take this voluntarily enforced narrow-mindedness even for *cleverness*, regard it indeed as learnedness!

There is only *one* consolation in this matter: the knowledge of the *turning-point* in these things which is already so near at hand as nobody would suspect or believe; and the knowledge of the fact that a part of these same men will then look back with shame to the time of their disgraceful aberration which removes them far from their real humanity and human dignity, while the other part will no longer matter; for it will have ceased to exist.

Only *with this* in view do I continue my explanations. Since I have spoken of Primordially Created ones, this in itself suggests that I would also be speaking of Created ones; for otherwise I simply would have mentioned *only* the Created ones and the developed ones.

However, I wish to lift the veil even more for the human spirit after having already given him a very compact picture of the path of the Light down to him, along which path with its various anchorages the Light had to proceed each time help was extended from above, only to be rejected in the end by these small earthmen with their outrageous conceit, as has always happened in the past.

Tremble therefore when the Omnipotence of God now calls you to Judgment!

It is true that revelations from the planes I have mentioned to you today have often come down to you, but you only absorbed meager fragments and formed them according to your human nature, so that accounts can be found only as badly distorted fragments in legends and poetic writings. Presentations that are confused and impossible according to the Laws of Creation, interwoven with various happenings of a purely earthly nature... the result is a mixture which seems sublime to you, but which appears ridiculous when compared to the Truth, and which can only be excused by your complete lack of knowledge.

Before my Message people here and there had already heard of the existence of such planes, but they were unable to keep them apart since they lacked any kind of real knowledge about them, and so, due to the usual conceit of man's trying-to-be-clever, the most impossible forms arose.

It is easy to understand why serious people shook their heads and kept at a proper distance, while the most frightful aberrations arose among enthusiasts and visionaries, quite apart from the fact that especially the many small would-be greats sought to use such opportunities to swing themselves upwards without effort, so as to be able at least *once* to satisfy their morbid craving for effortless recognition, which is always inherent in them!

The only result was a disgusting ethereal swamp which became a great danger to the human spirits, because it prevented them from accepting the Truth uninfluenced and thus recognizing the *right* path to ascent! Hesitation, however, will mean annihilation for very many people who could otherwise have saved themselves from it.

In spite of everything, however, it is *nonetheless* the *personal* and *free* will, and the consequence of a self-created indolence of the spirit of each individual, which holds him back from recognition, causing him thereby to be forfeited as useless in the Judgment and according to God's Law.

Whoever exerts himself only *a little must* very soon clearly recognize the truth in these writings through his intuitive perception.

Let us take the legend about Parzival! Starting in his thinking *from this small earth*, man seeks to fathom and to find something about Parzival in order to discover the origin and development of the legend.

Although earthly writers envisioned earthly persons who gave the outward impulse to the *form* of the literary work, yet in the spiritual immersion in their work they unconsciously drew much from sources which they themselves did not know. Since in the end, however, they again polished it up with their

intellect, thus seeking to make it beautiful in the *earthly sense* and easier to understand, even what little flowed to them from unknown planes was compressed into the world of gross matter, diminished and distorted.

It is not worthwhile to add further specific explanations. I am giving what is *founded on fact*, and every person can take from it whatever his spirit is able to.

Yet it is necessary from the outset to further point out certain things, which for many people will clarify some of the errors, and which will facilitate much for those who can be initiated into higher recognitions, because through this they will be able to rise above all of the wrong that has taken root on earth right from the beginning.

There actually *is* a Castle where an Amfortas dwelt, who for a time was considered the highest guardian there. In this Castle there is a vessel called the "Grail", which is faithfully guarded by the knights. It was there that Amfortas actually came to fall, and where a great helper was promised.

But this happened neither on earth nor in the high Light Castle of Primordial Creation.

The Castle revealed *there* is to be found even today as the highest point on a plane in which the *Created Beings* have their field of activity towards the developed ones. In their purest volition and worship of God they possess only an *imitation* of the Light Castle. This Light Castle radiates down from the highest place in Primordial Creation and, as the actual Castle of the Holy Grail, also forms the exit gate from the Divine sphere of Radiation.

This lower lying *imitation was* once Amfortas' area of activity, and of his fall when he succumbed to the evil influence of Lucifer who soared from the depth all the way up to him. His mistake was that by following this influence he once, for a short time, sought to devote himself to the comfortable enjoyment of a proud knightly life.

Therewith he stepped out of the balance of the necessary movement of his plane, which movement the Primordial Law of

Creation automatically compels all to maintain who wish to remain at the same height. For a short time Amfortas came to a standstill, thereby creating an impediment and a gap for the passage of the Power of the Light.

Thus his fall was unavoidable and it tore him down. The gap was the wound he bore. Upon the supplication of the faithful knights the coming of the helping Pure One Who could arrest the destruction was already previously proclaimed.

And Parzival fulfilled the promise as He journeyed through all the parts of Creation, just as He fulfils all of the promises that were ever given to the creatures of the entire Creation. But the fulfillment was entirely different than what is described in the poetic literature.

The description of Creation also brings full enlightenment about this, and eliminates all that has been wrong in the past.

Thus only parts of a revelation from the lowest *imitation of the Light Castle* could penetrate to the deepened spirits of these earthly poets, who absorbed them during their work. They did not come from the luminous Grail Castle itself, for there it was impossible to prophesy Parzival's coming, because Parzival was and is the *First* in the whole of Creation. Only with Him could the entire Creation come into existence. He is part of the God-Spirit Imanuel, anchored into the Pure-Spiritual in order to create the Pure-Spiritual.

It was out of His Light-Radiation that the Primordial Beings came into existence and with them the Castle and everything that took on form. Thus He could not be prophesied to anyone, because He Himself was the First and all else could only come into existence *after* Him. No one but He has ever been King of the Holy Grail!

For this reason it was only natural that the Castle of which the poets speak had to be *below* the actual Grail Castle, because later on Parzival hastened through the world in order to redeem it from the evil influence of Lucifer, and to shackle him for the Kingdom of God lasting a thousand years in the world of matter.

Thus during His wandering through all the parts of Creation He also came to that Castle which is wrongly described in the poetic writings. He made His entry there *as King of the Holy Grail*, who He is from the beginning and who He will remain eternally, because He Himself originates from the Light. Nor did He remain there, but in place of Amfortas He appointed a new highest guardian for the vessel which they honor as the *image* of the Holy Grail.

In the Holy Light Castle which surrounds the actual Grail it is absolutely impossible for one of Its guardians to fail, because Parzival remains present therein, He in whom an Unsubstantiated part of the Light Itself is anchored, which was guided down from out of Imanuel through the Primordial Queen Elizabeth at the Word of God: Let there be Light!

---

## Believers merely out of habit.

People will have noticed how often I mention the unlimited domination of the intellect and the great spiritual indolence as being fatal, but it is necessary to do so for both processes are inseparably linked and can be designated as the starting points of many evils, indeed as the *real* hostile-to-the-Light causes of the decline and fall of the developed beings.

Hostile to the Light, because it prevents recognition of all Light happenings and all help from the Light; for when the earthbound intellect attains a dominating position, it reacts by first of all severing the connection which makes Light recognition possible, and thus *binds* the spirit to the physical cloak in which it is awaiting its development, the very cloak which should be its servant.

The effect of this process, which is in complete accord with the Laws of Creation, is of such a horrible nature that man can hardly picture it to himself correctly, for if he did he would collapse inwardly from fear.

It is particularly dreadful because *on that account* everything *must* develop towards destruction, and simply cannot do otherwise, since the human spirit on earth, in sinful, self-willed opposition to the All-Holy Will of God, *gave the wrong direction to its own development*. All evil is thus formed, under the pressure of the automatic Laws of this Creation, the activity of which man cannot recognize because he deprived himself of the possibility to do so.

In the perfectly operating mechanism of the wonderful Work of God, man frivolously and forcibly changed a switch, so that now, as the train of *his* destiny continues to roll on, derailment must follow as an inevitable happening.

And this happening, which principally impacts mankind on earth, will in turn also severely endanger man's environment, which has no part in this wrongdoing but which has always had to suffer under it, and was thereby retarded in its development.

Think on it in all calmness what it must mean when that implement, i.e. the intellect, with which the Creator graciously endowed each human spirit on earth as an aid for his necessary *development* in the world of gross matter, that this implement, which is to submit to the spirit and serve it, spreading Light volition in the material environment, and thus ennobling it ever more, and forming it into the Paradise on earth which was meant to arise, when contrary to its task, it actually, *as a consequence of your deed, chokes off* the spirit from any possibility of connection with the uplifting streams of power from the Light.

This failure, brought forcibly about by the free volition through greed and conceit, is so outrageous, that such guilt on the part of the indolent human spirit on earth now appears, to anyone who is awakening, to be far too great for forgiveness to be obtained once again through the Love of the Almighty.

Damnation alone, through the withdrawal of all mercies from the Light and disintegration, should be the well-deserved lot of the human spirits on earth, who with their conceited stubbornness have steadily driven an entire part of Creation towards inevitable destruction. This would occur were it not for the fact that the Love of the Almighty is also simultaneously connected with Perfect Justice, for it is the *Love of God*, which will forever remain incomprehensible to the human spirits. And the Justice of God is not capable of entirely abandoning *something* to destruction, as long as tiny sparks are glowing therein which do not deserve this.

For the sake of this minute number of little spirit sparks longing for the Light, *the Word of the Lord* was once more brought to this part of Creation, which is close to disintegration, so that all those who carry the right inner volition for it, and who really *bestir* themselves with all the

strength still left to them, may save themselves.

However, this volition must be of a *different nature* than many of the numerous believers in God on earth imagine it!

Therefore, listen to the Word which you can still hold on to as lifeline at the last hour. After this it will never again be given into your hand if you miss the opportunity *this time!*

The domination of the intellect entirely shuts off the spirit from any possibility of necessary development. This actually is not malevolent on the part of the intellect, but only quite a natural effect. In this, the intellect merely acts according to *its nature*. It cannot do otherwise than develop *its nature* to blossom, and to its fullest strength, when it is cultivated one-sidedly and given a wrong place by unreservedly subjecting the whole of life on earth to it!

And this, its nature, is *earthbound* and will never be otherwise, because as the product of the physical body it must also remain within the latter's boundaries, i.e., within the purely earthly gross material; for gross matter cannot produce that which is spiritual.

The fault lies solely with man himself and with the fact that he surrendered control to the intellect, thus also gradually enslaving himself to it, i.e., binding himself to the earth. In so doing, he completely lost the real purpose of his life on earth, the possibility of spiritual recognition and spiritual maturing.

He simply cannot grasp it anymore because the channels are choked off. The spirit lies in the physical body as if in a sack which is tied shut at the top by the intellect. Thus the spirit can no longer see and hear anything, and any path leading to the spirit is cut off in the same manner as is the spirit's path towards the outside.

That it could be so tightly blocked by the earthly intellect is due to the fact that the binding up already takes place *before* physical maturity, i.e., before the time comes for the adolescent's spirit to penetrate and become effective in order to take up a leading connection with the surrounding world of matter for the steeling of its volition.

At this time, however, the intellect has already been much too strongly and one-sidedly developed through wrong schooling, and it already keeps the physical cloak around the spirit tightly closed, so that the latter simply *cannot* develop or become effective!

Pernicious, one-sidedness of education which lacked spiritual balance! Only a rigid dogma was imposed upon the *spirit*, offering it nothing. Dogma does not warm the spirit to attain its own free conviction about anything having to do with God, since what is taught lacks vitality and has *no* connection with the Light. For in the teachings, the intellect and the conceit of earthman have caused much devastation everywhere.

Past schooling having to do with the knowledge about the Creator stood on feet far too weak, or better said feet weakened by men, for it to remain capable of keeping pace with the intellect, which quickly grew stronger through its one-sided cultivation.

The instruction which was intended for the *spirit*, i.e. for the intense activity of the intuitive perception, always remained rigid and thus lifeless. Consequently, it could never be truly *received* spiritually.

Thus everything was urged only towards *learning*, which could never become experiencing. As a result, like everything else, even that which was meant primarily for the *spirit*, had to be absorbed and held tight by the intellect without being able to come close to the spirit!

In this way the drops of the Living Water, in so far as a few did exist here and there, had to become lost in the sand.

The *inevitable* result was that the spirit received *nothing* and the intellect everything! This eventually resulted in *a* condition where the spirit was no longer capable of absorbing anything at all, since without an impulse from outside, the spirit germ, which had always been inclined towards inactivity anyway, came to a standstill, and to inevitable retrogression.

In this state of inactivity and lack of friction it languished more and more until today, a pitiful picture presents itself on

earth: human beings saturated with earthbound intellectual cleverness and with completely languid spirits, which are for the most part really already asleep!

With many of them their sleep has already turned into the sleep of death. *These* are the *dead* who must now awaken for the Judgment!

*These* are meant when it was proclaimed: He shall come to judge both the quick and the dead! This implies those *spiritually* alive and those *spiritually* dead; for there are no others, since the physical body cannot be considered as either alive or dead. It has never been alive of itself, but *has only been animated* for a time.

You men do not realize at all the danger you are in, and when you now *have* to recognize the danger it will be too late for many; for they no longer have the strength to shake off this lethargy which has caused such terrible harm.

For this reason I must ever again revert to the actual cause of all the evils of mankind: the domination of the intellect, and the attendant spiritual indolence which is as the immediate consequence.

Also the majority of today's believers in God count *primarily among* the spiritually indolent, who are like the lukewarm who must be cast out in the Judgment!

If with a little volition you would for once examine the situation *aright*, and would then draw appropriate conclusions, you would have to see clearly and be able to form the correct opinion without any doubt. You need only think logically about it, nothing else.

Look around and see how people today accept the *expanded knowledge of Creation* which is necessary for them! From this alone you can draw sufficient conclusions about their true condition.

Today, when reports are made about the Son of Man, Imanuel, as being the necessity for the advancement of *spiritual* knowledge, because for human beings the time has now arrived for this, you will hear all kinds of reasons for the

rejection of the new revelation from the Light!

I do not want to name all of them, for there are too many widely ramified varieties; and there would be no end. However, *in their actual sense* they are *all alike* because they have but *one* origin: spiritual indolence!

Let us take just one of them; for many an apparently quite well intentioned church faithful among the Christians would say:

“The Word of the Message as such is correct in many things, but it does not tell me anything new!”

Whoever speaks thus has *not* grasped, nor does he know that which he believes he has *already* learned in his school or church, in spite of his imagining it to the contrary. For otherwise he should know that there is very much which is *utterly new* in the Message, but which is naturally *not opposed* to the Message which Jesus brought, because both issue from *the same* source, from the *Living Truth!*

*New* does not always mean *negation* of the old, rather it can also swing in the old and *lead onwards* in the *up-building*, in the same way that the actual Message of Jesus unites with mine!

However, just because my Message is *completely* in accord with the *true* words of *Jesus*, so many people when reading it intuitively perceive that there is nothing new in it! But only for the reason that the Message of Jesus and my Message are in reality *one!*

For this reason, too, everything swings *uniformly*, with the exception of what people in their sham wisdom have added to the words brought by Jesus, which is mostly wrong. Naturally my words cannot conform to what has been added or rendered *differently*. But with the words of Jesus Himself they agree absolutely!

And this intuitive perception of the same vibration from out of the same origin, which the *spirit* recognizes without the intellect being conscious of it, lets men think, without reflection, that nothing new was given therein.

Such is one part of mankind. Others also accept the new as having been given before and as being self-evident, because they do not really know the old which they thought they possessed, and therefore they have no idea of what in my Message is new for them.

Yet there is no lecture in my Message which does not bring something that is perfectly new to the human spirits, something they have *not yet* known *till now!*

Many people therefore know neither what they imagine they possess nor what I bring them! They are also much too indolent *really* to absorb any of it at all within themselves.

For all *those*, however, whose spirit is at least capable of perceiving the *uniform* vibration of both Messages, this very fact should be proof that both Messages issue from *one* Source. It should even be an unmistakable proof that I too draw directly from the Truth.

But those who are indolent do not become conscious of this. They simply prattle away and thereby leave themselves wide open for anyone to clearly and immediately recognize them as being spiritually indolent.

Other believers again refuse to expand their knowledge, assuming or fearing that they could thereby be doing wrong! However, in only a few cases is this fear. Rather, it is merely *conceit* rooted in stupidity and only able to flourish on such soil; for conceit as such is stupidity, the two cannot be separated.

However, stupidity is meant here in a *spiritual* and not in an earthly respect, because just those persons who are considered particularly strong and clever in the earthly intellectual sense are, in most cases, spiritually languid. Before God they possess no value as human beings in Creation; for they have failed in regard to their actual existence, and with their intellectual knowledge they are unable to create any values for eternity, or to use their intellect for that purpose.

But let us leave everything else aside, and take only the believers from among *Christians*, of whom there are not many

anyway who can be considered to be truly believing; for the majority of them are but inwardly empty nominal Christians, and nothing more.

These people say, in a certain sense in common with the first group mentioned, or they explain with a certain theatrical expression that is supposed to indicate reverential awe, at least insofar as they try to delude themselves:

“We have our Jesus, our Savior, we shall not renounce Him, nor do we need anything more!”

This is just about the sense of all their words, although the words themselves may sound different according to the person speaking.

These genuine renditions of the Pharisees, who were often and sharply reprov'd by Jesus, are in reality nothing but spiritually indolent, but in this case also very *self-complacent*. Their sometimes repugnant way of speaking is enough to characterize them all too plainly.

If you ever try to probe into this type of person, you will recognize that they do not really hold a true conviction inwardly, but merely an empty *habit* since their youth! They do not wish to be disturbed any more in their indolence, for thorough examination might cause them spiritual turmoil. They seek carefully to avoid this without realizing that they thereby sin against the important Law of God, the Law of Spiritual Movement, which offers them the preservation of their soul as well as of their body. Ascent and the possibility of maturing toward perfection rest in the effects of this Law only when it is obeyed!

Just the very thing which they regard as greatness and proudly seek to display in order to delude themselves into having that support which they do not at all carry within, just this will become their doom and ruin!

If in obedience to the Law they would for once bestir themselves *spiritually* only a little, they would very quickly have to recognize that their past belief was no belief at all, but something *learned* which became a welcome habit, because

apart from a few formalities it demanded nothing from them and they *therefore considered* it comfortable and *right*.

However, they should not avoid turmoil but should be *grateful* for it; for it is the best sign that their spirit is awakening, which must naturally first be preceded by uneasiness before the certainty of a real, free conviction can arise, the conviction which unfolds its power only in serious and diligent examination, and in closely related actual spiritual *experiencing*.

Where turmoil arises, there is the irrefutable proof that the spirit has been *asleep* and wants to awaken. But where there is rejection with the proud reference to a personal, possessive claim to Jesus, it merely shows that this human spirit has already lapsed into the agony that leads to the sleep of death.

It furthermore proves that just *these* spirits would also have sternly rejected Jesus and His Word during His life on earth. They would have done so with the same empty conceit by clinging to what they had already learned, had it been offered to them for their choice and personal decision as the new revelation at the necessary turning point of that time!

For the same merely convenient reason, they would have held fast to the old, which must provide the foundation for *advancement* if no standstill is to occur.

They are rejectors of *all* that is new because they do not feel capable or strong enough to examine earnestly and without prejudice that which is incisive or because they are already too indolent and prefer to cling to past habits.

It can be assumed with certainty that they would have rejected Jesus quite decisively if this had not been taught them *compulsorily* already from childhood!

It is no different with those who try to reject everything new by referring to the prophecy about the appearance of false prophets! Again this likewise contains nothing but *spiritual indolence*, for this prophecy which they invoke simultaneously states clearly enough that the *Right One*, the *Promised One*, *will come just at this time* of the appearance of false prophets!

How then do they think they will recognize Him if for their convenience they simply dismiss everything casually with such a reference! No one has as yet confronted this fundamental question! They all *know* about His coming, even insisting that they believe in it, however, they have never thought about it because they do not want to trouble themselves or they know exactly that this is the very point they all try tacitly to avoid ... spiritual indolence. They wait, wait, *until the time has passed*, just as it was with Jesus, thinking that ultimately they will find out!

However, this time it is different; the time will *not* pass by the delinquent and indolent ones, but it will judge them! Waiting will become their Judgment, their condemnation!

But *they themselves* have to find the proof of identity *in the Word of the Truth*, which with very few exceptions people did not want to heed during the time of Jesus either, but still expected further proof when they sneeringly demanded: "If You are the Son of God, then step down from the cross, then we shall believe You!"

His Word of Truth, which was the real proof of identity, did not have any value for them at that time. Personal spiritual indolence in everyone wherever you look, and as it was then so it is again today, only much worse even; for now any spirit-spark is buried almost completely.

The believers of today have accepted everything merely as a *doctrine* without processing any of it within or making it their own! They are too spiritually sluggish to perceive intuitively that their belief is nothing but *habit from childhood on*, which in complete ignorance about themselves they now call their conviction.

Also the main increase in the number of Christians happened *through the addition of the young*, not through grown-ups! And amongst this adolescent group already baptized as Christians and then remaining such, eighty percent, under strict scrutiny by the Light, turn out to be Christian out of habit only. We can see that because they by

no means attune their lives to the Words of Jesus.

Specifically their behavior towards their fellow-men often very clearly indicates that they are not *real* Christians, but only empty, spiritually indolent Christians in name only!

He who is still capable of righteous thinking and is not spiritually enslaved will not try to deny this fact, which is proven over and over again, hundreds of times every hour and from all sides, and which already has been proven over the course of the past centuries.

This proof of pseudo Christianity is sadly and all too clearly in evidence, as also within the churches themselves which are downright intolerantly spiteful in word and deed towards all those who do not serve *their* church in purely *earthly* activity.

Whether those who are thus hated and perhaps feared nonetheless *in reality* do serve *God* with their whole being far more genuinely and vibrantly than do others, is of no relevance to the views of churches or their actions! *This I lament to God!* For this activity is against His demand and commandment! The *main concern* of all churches should be that *God*, not they, be served! To serve God, however, it is by no means necessary to go through the churches!

Where, however, is it written in my Message that man should relinquish God or the Son of God Jesus! On the contrary, with my words I actually even lead directly to God and also to Jesus! However, in a *more animated manner* than has been known in the past, according to the Truth, and not in the way that mankind has put together for themselves in their proclivity for spiritual comfort.

I point to the fact that God wants spirits in Creation who are alive and conscious of their *personal* responsibility! Thus human beings as are called for in the Primordial Laws of Creation! That everyone must personally and fully account for everything he thinks, speaks and does, and that none of this could be redeemed for mankind by the murder of the Son of God at that time.

Jesus was murdered *only* because, with His same demands,

He *too* was felt to be inconvenient, and seemed dangerous to *those priests* who taught differently, who taught what was much more comfortable so as to attract ever larger congregations in an *earthly* way only, which at the same time was to bring about and preserve more earthly power through mounting earthly *influence*.

*This* they did not wish to give up. Men did not want to surrender their comfort, nor the priests their influence, their power. The priests did not want to be *teachers* and *helpers* at all, but only rulers!

As true helpers they would have had to educate people to attain to inner self-reliance, to spiritual *independence and greatness*, so that these people would adjust themselves to and act joyfully in accordance with the Will of God out of free conviction.

The priests did the opposite and *bound* the spirit, so that it would remain amenable to their earthly purposes.

God, however, demands from mankind that they strive towards spiritual perfection in His Laws of Creation! Constant progress in extending their knowledge of Creation, so that they stand and work in it aright and do not become an obstacle in the swinging, rotating movement!

But whoever does not wish to go *further* now, and tries to persist in *that* which he believes he already knows, consequently rejecting or opposing in hostility new revelations from God, will remain behind and be flung out in the World Judgment, by which any obstacle is torn down in order at last to allow clarity to arise again in Creation, that clarity which in the future will *further* the progressive development which rests in the Will of God for His Creation.

Jesus, *too*, was a new revelation then and He brought further revelations in His Word. *All* this was new for that time, as is my Message about Imanuel today. At that time, it was as necessary an advance as today, but at that point, however, one should not have remained stuck forever. And I do not overturn anything of the old, but only add what is new.

Jesus shall not be given up as the Son of God through my Message, rather He must now be recognized *as such* all the more, but not as the servant and slave of a corrupted humanity in order to carry or redeem their burden of guilt, so as to make it more comfortable for them!

And just those who have *really* accepted Jesus as the Son of God *cannot help but* welcome my Message and the related new revelations from the Grace of God with *joyful gratitude!* Nor will it be hard for them to grasp everything I say aright and make it their own.

Whoever does not or cannot do this has not recognized the Message, nor the true Being of the Son of God Jesus, but has only constructed for himself something alien and wrong out of *his own* discretion and conceit and... last but not least... out of the laziness of his indolent spirit, which shuns the movement demanded by God!

The meaning and purpose of the Message from the Light, through me in the fulfillment of God's All-Holy Will, is the necessary extension of the knowledge for *the* humanity who wishes to survive the current turning point necessitated by the Laws of Creation, in order to be capable of and permitted to contribute to the new, *God-willed* Kingdom of Peace now being built through the Omnipotence of God!

Excuses of the spiritually indolent or vain pharisaical phrases do not count; and malicious slander and attacks by power-hungry egotistical people will have to give way before the holy Justice of the Triune God and vanish like chaff; for there is nothing which is greater and mightier than God the Lord and what issues from His Will!

The spirit of earthman must now become *alive* and strong in the Will of God. It is allowed to dwell in this Creation for the purpose of serving this Will, or it must vanish!

The time has come! Enslaved spirits are no longer tolerated by God! And man's self-will shall be broken unless he is prepared to adjust himself to the Primordial Laws of God which He placed into Creation.

To these also belongs the Law of constant Movement, which demands unhampered progress in development. The extension of knowledge remains connected with this!

The knowledge of Creation, spiritual knowledge, is the real purpose of all life!

For this reason you were given new revelations. If you reject them through the indolence of your spirit, if you want to let your spirit sleep quietly on as in the past, then it will awaken in the Judgment in order to fall into disintegration.

And woe unto all those who still wish to keep the human spirit bound! They will suffer tenfold harm and, in the last moment, they will, full of horror, *have* to recognize too late, how they burdened themselves, in order then to collapse under their burden and sink into the horrible abyss!

The day has come! The Darkness must vanish! The glorious Light of God now breaks apart all that is wrong and burns what is indolent in this Creation, so that it can pursue its course only in light and joy for the blessing of all creatures, as a jubilant prayer of thanks for every Grace of their Creator, for the Glory of God, the Only One, the Almighty!

---

## The longing that brings salvation.

Every human being on earth, who is not altogether lost inwardly, is filled with a great longing: the longing for the liberation of his spirit!

How this liberation is to come about no one really knows. They all simply have the *desire* for it, which grows steadily stronger in a conspicuous manner.

And it is strange: this longing shows itself in so many different forms. Some souls are overcome with weariness, others feel a sadness which they cannot understand, a great number are afflicted with a restlessness that worries them; and yet there are also those who bear within the intuitive sense of great happiness, without knowing the reason for it.

A great multitude, however, live as though in a daze; they are extremely sensitive, mistrustful, irritable, and during many a disturbed and sleepless night there rises before them the specter of an inferiority whose grinning emptiness leaves them helpless; and this in turn whips up their craving for influence and power in order to fill the ever more obvious gap.

The more such human beings perceive themselves to be irretrievably sinking spiritually, the more desperately will they cling to outward *appearance!* Their minds can now only strive after *empty superficialities*, which they clothe in big words in order to deaden for a few moments the ever-increasing feeling of their own inferiority, in an exhausting frenzy of indulgences or festivities.

Such indulgences are not necessarily always of a purely *carnal* kind, but there are also indulgences consisting of a wrong desire to dominate, to satisfy vanity or the craving for power. This may show itself in many different ways, from uncontrolled stubborn brutality down to the most ridiculous

games, which are regarded as harmless, but which in reality do not remain harmless if obstacles are put in their way.

As you know, all childishness bears cruelty within it, as soon as force is required to attain gratification.

In the end, as these sinking and lost ones realize their impotence, there breaks forth in all of them an unjustified rage, seething with hatred, against all of *those* human beings who still bear *values* within and who show *genuine* ability.

Envy then prevents them from uniting peacefully with such people in order to make beneficial use of their abilities, unless they are first given an oath of their absolute subordination.

But even *this* would not leave such frenzied ones in peace, for, judging according to their own faults, they do not trust the other person's word, and moreover fear that they will soon lose out to his ability.

They are afraid that the abilities of others cannot after all remain hidden forever, and that in time they will clearly come to light, with the result that their own inability will be all the more sharply exposed. This is the last thing vanity can bear. The mere thought of it arouses rebellion which can only plot destruction.

Thus envious hate grows into the final grotesque excesses of the spiritually sinking people: the unpredictable and unjust ravings of complete recklessness: *the fate of tyrants!*

Yet in thinking of such tyrants you must not necessarily think only of the leaders of large peoples; for I do *not* refer to *specific individuals*; nor should Nero rise before you, or the greatest shame of so-called Christianity at the time of the churches' inquisitions, which were hostile to God. Instead you must only observe and learn in the *present time*, so that you become spiritually free human beings, such as your Creator wants you to be!

I wish to open the eyes of your spirit through this; for at this time the Creator speaks to you in every happening more clearly than ever before, so that you *mature* in spirit thereby!

You can find tyrants *everywhere*, in the professions, in society

and in families! There are many more of them now than ever; for all men stand in the *Judgment!* Therefore everything is developing more swiftly and intensely than ever before.

Heed the time and also the signs that I indicate to you with my explanations. You will benefit greatly if you let everything come to an experiencing within you!

With this description I have shown you the state of present-day mankind, as they are *today*, without being aware of it.

They are already divided into two distinct groups. One group consists of the first-mentioned, whose souls are filled with longing, and who are unconsciously awaiting something which they cannot yet name, because the time for it is yet to come.

The second group is formed by those last mentioned, who are heading for perdition, which they must bring about for themselves in accordance with the all-holy Will of God. This group also includes all those who of their own free will or because of indolence fraternize with those who are sinking.

This is already the process of the separation of all of mankind on earth into the sheep and the goats, as was foretold long ago!

The great basic fulfillment for the Judgment is already completed, and men have no idea of it! They live in the frenzy of their own ideas and in dreams of the greatness and significance of their existence ... all the while drawing nearer to the end which will very soon awaken them to reality, to their accountability for every thought, every word and every deed!

All this is beyond the imagination of men, for they imagine it to be much smaller than it actually is, while trying to value themselves as much greater than they really are.

It would be utterly useless to give a broad picture of the future. You will benefit only if you know of that which is happening *now*, if you understand the *present* and gain from it a rich harvest for the future!

Be alert, observe and examine all things without becoming submerged in them! It is *for this* that I give you these explanations; for you must be able to experience all changes *knowingly*. He who neglects to do this has no idea what

blessings he has forfeited thereby.

Grasp my words and look about you! It will then be as though scales fall from your eyes.

The *origin* of all that I have spoken of today, which is coming to light more and more clearly, is not known to men although they must experience these happenings themselves. Moreover, it is absolutely impossible for them to ward off the *consequences* in any way, or to change them in any way unless they change *themselves!* *That* alone could bring them relief, and nothing else in the world.

*All* are subject to this happening, whether reluctantly or willingly; and so are you, every single one of you. You are at its mercy unconditionally. All this, however, is the *beginning*, which rushes with terrifying speed towards the end. The end that for many can and will be an end only of the utmost horror, and for a few an end bringing spiritual liberation from bonds that have oppressed them for thousands of years as a self-enforced disaster which they have to suffer today.

But the *same* Power: the Light-Pressure from the Primordial Light, the Holy Will coming forth from God, is the cause of the longing that brings salvation, as well as of the development that leads to the sharp boundary-line where self-destruction sets in!

This pressure is so intensified at the great turning-point of mankind that it now streams purifyingly through the worlds, *forcing* all things to swing uniformly once more in the harmonious Laws of Creation. And now, it also seizes this earth as the final work and holds it in a relentless grip, releasing in the closing of the cycles everything that has taken place on it, thereby either destroying or uplifting ; destroying all that refuses to swing in His incorruptible Laws, and invigorating all that willingly seeks to adapt itself.

What you will now *see* on the basis of these explanations, in order to mature thereby, are the first earthly visible effects of the enormous Light-Pressure, which has never been on earth before!

Soon, and in ever swifter succession, the other effects will then follow inexorably, until finally your earth too, will be cleansed of all that is false, and of all that refused to conform to the Laws of God in order to give preference to their own volition and thinking.

At this time only the knowledge of *that* which you are able to observe for yourselves can be of use to you, and therefore I draw your attention to the *current* happening that is already pivotal for the end of the Judgment; for it separates all men into those who are sinking and those who can be saved!

Countless are the signs that proclaim the beginning of the Final Judgment; but men hurry past them, assuming or deluding themselves into believing that everything has already happened often before.

But they forget to compare the conditions under which this or that has already occurred in the past with those of today. There are very great differences, which must not be overlooked if one wishes to judge *aright*.

Above all, man must not be so timid, cowardly or superficial as to try and ignore the present absolutely astonishing *abundance* of events, be they natural or economic catastrophes, murders and suicides, political upheavals, the struggle for earthly power between states and churches, and so much more.

Never has there been such an abundance of everything at the same time as it is today. This in itself should be an indication to every thinking person of the accelerated release of events, which are visibly increasing. It should awaken the notion of a tremendous cosmic cycle coming to a close through a power higher than the will and the capacity of men and of the retribution connected therewith.

All that is false will perish in it, and only what is good will remain. The good or the false, however, as measured not by the mind of man, but by the Mind of God *alone!*

On their *own volition*, men remain so ignorant of everything! Out of fear, superficiality and carelessness, or out of conceit. Last but not least there is spiritual indolence. Even a great

many of the *Light-seekers* cannot quite free themselves from this. In my last lecture I have already referred to spiritual indolence, which goes so far that even intellectually clever people do not really want to “*think*” about matters that do not directly concern their earthly ambitions!

Men do not *want* to understand, and will only recognize everything when recognition is no longer of any use to them. Therefore all the calls from the Light for an awakening are in vain.

With anything that is new to them, men thoughtlessly refer to the warning against the false prophets at the time of the earth-life of the *true* great Helper from the Light, *who at the same time releases the Judgment.*

Mindlessly they talk about all this, and one sees the emptiness and immaturity of their souls, the unworthiness of such a human spirit for further development, because its indolence will miss every opportunity for ascent and place itself as an obstruction in the way of new revelations, so that the Love from the Light can find no entrance for salvation.

Who among men realizes that false prophets cannot refer one-sidedly only to the concept of the bringers of new revelations, but that it concerns every single one of *those* who pretend to be able to fulfill even a part of *that* task which calls for the Power of the Promised Light-Envoy.

Nor does the term refer to only *those* who claim to be the reincarnation of the Savior, which in itself clearly shows their own ignorance of the task of the Promised Son of Man; but it concerns very many more.

However, to be able to form a judgment on this, there is first required a different kind of knowledge: *The knowledge of the real task of the Promised Son of Man on earth!*

On reflection you will see that at this point already things become bogged down. There is no human being on earth who has genuine knowledge about this! Although there has been much talk about it for hundreds of years, *real knowledge* of it *does not* exist. With words from the Bible which they do not

understand themselves, every questioner is given an answer which offers no enlightenment and once more only thrusts into the foreground the untenable groping of all those who pretend to be knowing, thus making it plainly visible.

Actually, a false prophet is a person who dares to assert that he is able to accomplish some of the things that are reserved for the Envoy of God!

And of those there are many today because it is a matter of earthly workings, not only of a teaching: for the Promised One will be the one and only and the *true* helper of mankind in their spiritual *and* their earthly afflictions!

It will not be too difficult for human beings to recognize the false prophets at the *right* hour, for to come to recognition they must *experience* it on themselves, since otherwise they would not believe what they were told.

All the works of *those* who, as false prophets, have made promises to men which they *cannot keep* will now collapse as being untenable or they will not even come into being in the first place. Men must thereby recognize, albeit through bitter experience, that they put their trust in *false* promises and believed in *feigned* abilities that did not exist.

*These* are the actual false prophets referred to in the prophecy, because those who believe in them must suffer bitter experiences through painful disappointments.

Those, however, who claim to be the reincarnated Jesus are not even to be counted among the false prophets, but they are liars, who themselves have no idea of the mission of the Son of Man, and still less have the ability to start with even the smallest part of it. They do not even know that Jesus and the Son of Man are not *one* person, but two distinct persons according to *human* conceptions, although they are one in *that* sense which Jesus implied when He said of Himself: I and the Father are One!

Strange that even many a *Christian*, who always speaks *correctly and* as a matter of fact of the *Trinity of God*, who is Three and yet One, will not grasp this! And he unhesitatingly

separates Jesus, who is Part of the Trinity, as standing and acting apart from It, standing alone as the Savior Personified. Man is not really wrong in this, but he does not understand it! He does not reflect on it because he is too indolent in spirit.

But let us go a little further. The man who points to the false prophets, rejecting them, must also realize that the emergence of false prophets is indeed one of the many signs heralding the appearance of the *real* Envoy!

Surely then, the real seeker should at least be on his guard so as not to miss the Right One! It must leave him no peace, and must spur him on to the most earnest examination of *everything* that is offered him, so that without hesitation he may become a helper for the Coming One instead of perhaps a hindrance on His path! Or even an annoyance!

*He*, the earthman, must exert himself to recognize Him! That is one of the tasks God has assigned to *him*, so that this time he may prove himself worthy of the Holy Word. But on looking at and observing the seekers one finds that even those who call themselves such act far too superficially in this matter. But the cause of this is not only carelessness, or rather habitual superficiality due to spiritual indolence, but with seekers in particular it is *first and foremost* vanity and *conceit*!

This weakness alone will plunge the greater part of all those who call themselves Light-seekers into perdition! And that's no pity; for they are hypocrites who do not apply *that* earnestness to the Word from God which is Its due, but merely wish to bask in their *conceited* efforts, which completely lack humility.

And humility alone opens the gate to the recognition of *all* that comes from the Light!

But even setting aside *this* fact, there still remains one point which to many seems quite insurmountable: how do the seekers picture this Promised One in His earth-life and in His "coming!" In this case the expression "coming" refers to His "stepping forth," for surely it is clear to every human being that He will neither fall as a gross material man from Heaven, nor that He will appear as a child.

In reality they do not picture *anything at all!* Instead, by their unformed hopes or expectations, they impose rather narrow, limited *conditions* from the very beginning!

First and foremost is the wish that He should come from their particular circles! They simply cannot picture it otherwise, because they imagine they have the first claim, since they have *believed* in His coming sooner than the others.

Of course, He must take care of them, that is His duty; for He comes as the helper in their need. Perhaps He should even let Himself be led by them; for He is a stranger on earth and needs their caring advice, which they will offer Him through the experiences they have already gathered! Thus they would like to build a future for Him which He would owe to them. And in reciprocity blessings would surely be theirs.

In short, all their thinking, all their volitions are purely earthly, restricted to their petty earthly thoughts and earthly conceptions, mingled with many secret desires.

They do not consider that He must already have gathered His own experiences even at the start, completely unrecognized until then, so as to preclude any possibility of being influenced, but that men must reveal themselves *as they really* are, in all their weaknesses, their faults, and in all evil! Also in their attitude towards Him.

Human reflection does not go so far as to realize that all this can only take place in the most natural and simple everyday environment, and through the most realistic *experiencing*. With boundless superficiality and actual indifference men entertain the expectation of *special* unearthly, extraordinary events! Quite conspicuous if possible.

Why? No one can account for this. Nor does it occur to anyone that in particular anything conspicuous would immediately be opposed by all those who believe they have a certain power and influence here, and this is quite apart from the fact that anything conspicuous could never provide the opportunity for deep insights.

It is not the case that those coming from the Light can easily see through or even understand the pettiness of earthmen in their thinking and evil volition; for evil is alien and incomprehensible to the Light. How often do even parents fail to understand their own children, who are of the *same* species as they, whereas the nature of the Light remains utterly alien to all that is of human nature.

Only with great trouble, and through personal experience and suffering, can the Light-Messenger gain *recognition* of all the evils on earth and above all, of any evil *volition*, but He can never gain an *understanding* of it, because evil simply cannot be *understood*, since there is no justification for its existence in Creation.

Thus a considerable time spent on earth in getting to know all the human evils, and also all human thinking, must have preceded this “coming,” for with the coming, the Judgment is already to set in, to be followed by the help. And help can only be given by someone who has an *exact* knowledge of the weaknesses and the strengths.

All this is very simple, and every human being could and *should* realize it for himself, were he not too spiritually indolent and too indifferent to do so. And he is indifferent, because although as a seeker he speaks of it, yet he does not try to *live* it in his innermost being.

He lacks any connection between his inner perception and his words, thus any true support. He *seeks!* With him this is the only thing that cannot be called a lie. The expression “to seek” already provides the answer that he has found nothing.

However, since the promise was given from the Light that he who seeks *earnestly* and in *humility* will *find* according to the Law, it is evident that those who call themselves seekers today are not true seekers, that they all lack the main thing, i.e., *humility!*

This is indeed not to be found among those who today describe themselves as being seekers, and least of all wherever there is talk about humility! Human beings no longer even

know what it is to be humble in spirit, since they keep the spirit within closed through their intellect, which only knows *conceit* and *vanity*, and smirks at humility.

But enough of this; the time has come when all conceit will pathetically collapse in on itself in wretched suffering, so that man *must* attain to humility from within himself, or break down, never to be able to rise again. *Experiencing* alone is the only help for mankind, who will not *listen!*

The seekers or those who await fulfillment have so immersed themselves in their own ideas that they no longer pay the slightest attention to anything else, and from the outset approach everything with distrust, rejection already on their lips, that which does not lie within the range of *their wishes*. Without the *most intense* suffering they will never come to recognition!

A thousand things speak against this from the start, nothing in its favor! Many assume that there must be a similarity between life today and life at the time of the Son of God Jesus, two thousand years ago! They expect self-denying wandering through the lands, without giving any thought to what the authorities would have to say about it *today!*

It is also impossible today for a human being to retreat quietly as in former times in order to achieve, in seclusion, the composure for an awakening. The difficulties involved would be great, in part quite insurmountable!

Even if all difficulties were overcome, it would not be possible without arousing suspicion of being ill or even mentally deranged. Not to speak of the pernicious and unscrupulous sensationalism of many newspapers, which often, without any morals or sense of justice, are capable of doing the most incredible things.

Also that which people were formerly still able to respect and what was granted to every human being as a personal right, considering it natural and understandable in such matters, would *today* be considered grounds for suspicion by many, only from fear of any kind of different thinking, or to even the most

sincere volition there would be attributed fraudulent intentions, because, at the present time, all thinking is poisoned!

But it is an indisputable certainty that only *he* who *himself* holds evil within can think evil of his fellow-men! No one can deny this. Only he who breaks his word will suspect or expect another to break his promise, only a liar will expect another to lie; only a traitor will expect another to commit treason! And so it is with *everything*, it is an irrevocable law!

Today it is much worse than during the time when Jesus walked on earth, and *nothing* of it could be repeated today. Therefore it goes without saying that everything *must* be entirely different for the present time.

Nevertheless men will not visualize an Envoy from God in a dress suit or in a motorcar, although they must know that Jesus did not appear in priestly vestments, but was well-dressed in accordance with the *prevailing* custom, and also lived in a manner appropriate to the times. *All* men's expectations in these matters are ill-founded, and none of them will be fulfilled, since God does not adjust His fulfillments to the wishes of men.

Men, however, stand too far removed from all Divine happenings, and think on much too small and earthly a scale for their imaginations still to be able to come anywhere near to the reality of the coming fulfillments. They stand aside from the Truth, as they have always done. The majority, however, have simply neither the time nor the inclination to go into these matters anyhow! This is the same as it has always been, when mankind was meant to *receive* something from the Light, or to do something for their salvation *themselves*.

Earthly affairs come first with them, leaving no time for other things in the ever-increasing hectic pace! And if just for once there is an hour of rest, these so needlessly harassed human beings seek balance only in entertainment or sports, nothing else.

I say to you, you men, you have missed what is *most important* for yourselves, and *your separation for the Judgment is already completed!* You have separated *yourselves* under the increased pressure from the Light, which releases everything in the All-Holy Will of God! The end is now approaching without delay. But only for the *few*, however, will the end be a new life in the Radiance of the Grace of your Creator's Love, while for all others it is eternal damnation and the fall into disintegration. Nor is there any time left to you for the usual long reflection, which has never yet brought forth a decision. You are too lethargic for real life, and for transformation you lack humility and thus *everything*.

AMEN.

---

## The Spiritual Planes II

Parzival! This word as such is so well known among earthmen, and yet none of them has any idea of the reality.

A poetic work, a legend! With this they are correct if they mean *that* which is known about the word today; for in reality what they know is nothing but a legend that has become a poetic work, which was preserved as such as a fragment from former knowledge.

As I have already pointed out in my first lecture about this, it was always only small fragments which came down from spiritual planes into the gross matter of this earth long, long ago.

The authors of the Grail legends known *today* are by no means the first who concerned themselves with this and who, as they became absorbed in their work, were once again able to intuit a few glimmers of light.

Far, far back lies the time when the *first* hints about the Light Castle and its inhabitants descended to the earth from the spiritual planes, together with the tidings of the Holy Grail.

*At that time* it was received with reverential awe and childlike confidence by the inhabitants of the earth, who were still working without disruption in co-operation with the elemental beings, whose advice they gladly took. Without knowing it the human beings in turn helped the elementals with the radiations of their spirit-sparks. Thus Creation increasingly unfolded itself in the world of gross matter with the spirit sparks, which held the promise of a wonderful blossoming.

At that time, long before the known great upheavals took place on earth, and even before men made an idol of their intellect, thus bringing about their movement away from the Light and their downfall, a connection with the Luminous Castle was created; for the rays could flow unhindered all the way down to the earth, and in these rays men on earth could already intuitively sense Parzival.

Then, however, proceeding from the human beings, the reign of their intellect-idolatry set in, causing the connection with the Light Castle to be cut off, which was automatically followed by ignorance about it, entailing the impossibility of a spiritual sensing through the intuitive perception.

Finally the ability to perceive anything *animistic* also dried up, and all of the natural experiencing in the knowledge about the animistic helpers sank into the realm of fables, so that the development which up till then had been striving upwards in a straight line quite unexpectedly received a rift.

If men had remained *as* they were at the time I referred to, when the first tidings of the Luminous Castle and of Parzival came down to the earth, then through their steady ascent they would today indeed be Lords of all gross matter in the best upbuilding sense . Nor would any human being have been destroyed during the upheavals which were bound to occur from time to time in the development toward maturity.

The great *catastrophes* were always a necessity of the development, but not the destruction of so many peoples, which until now has nearly always been closely connected with this.

If men had not frivolously and wantonly given up the connection with the animistic helpers and the Luminous Heights, they would always have been warned in time of any emergency and led away from the endangered regions in order to escape destruction! For this is what happened at the time when men let themselves be guided willingly by the helpers, which the Creator assigned to them from the animistic and spiritual worlds, with whom they sought to maintain the connection with joy and gratitude.

In this manner, they later always robbed themselves of these invaluable aids, owing to the conceited would-be cleverness of their intellects, and on several occasions they thus forced their own painful destruction in the same way as they are now bringing it about again, since they no longer want to listen to the last calls from the Light and even think they know everything better, just as they did so often in the past!

Tribulation, despair and destruction are always and only the lawful reciprocal effects of wrong doing. Surely this is not difficult to grasp if one only *wishes to!* This contains such simple and clear naturalness that later you will hardly understand how it could happen that such a thing could be overlooked and not strictly heeded, in order not only to spare yourselves all suffering but even to change it into joy.

Today you yourselves see clearly enough that no person can really defend himself against this. No nation, nor the joint volition of the whole of mankind, would manage to achieve this; for everything in Creation remains but a creature, dependent upon the Will of God! It will *never* be otherwise.

The wrongful act has always and only been the submission to the bound and binding intellect. Many individuals as well as entire nations had to fall victim to the natural consequences of this act since they kept themselves outside of any possibility of salvation through higher guidance.

You can easily recognize the great simplicity of the effect of the Divine Laws therein, and also see what men missed for themselves.

With this, I have today given you a brief glimpse into that great activity of Creation which has already caused men many a headache, so that through the Message you would be able to see that man has only himself to blame for all of the distress, all of the fear and the suffering; and that he could have avoided a great deal had he not stubbornly embarked upon false paths.

Through the Message you can clearly recognize and *substantiate every* happening that takes place in Creation. You

know about the unalterable effects of the Laws of Creation, which I have explained to you, you know of their simplicity and greatness which is easily assessable.

You will experience ever more that with the Message, I have given you the key to the right explanation of *every* happening, and therewith of the entire Creation! In spite of all of this you still have no idea what treasure you are in *reality* holding in your hands!

Let your fervor and untiring watchfulness gradually fathom it, then you will have the path to eternal life, which you will gain merely by walking it.

Thus primeval ages ago men had already received the first and right tidings about Parzival. This knowledge was passed on by word of mouth from parents to children.

But through the declining purity of the connection with the Creation activity, the transmission of the original knowledge also gradually became clouded. It was imperceptibly distorted and finally mutilated by the growing intellect, remaining only as a legend which no longer bore any resemblance to the erstwhile knowledge.

Those human beings who were striving for nobility then time and again took up these fragmentary legends and tried to create from them something *gross materially* here on earth, because they imagined that these transmissions must have originated in an *earthly* model from the distant past.

This they wanted to renew, which they attempted to do frequently over great intervals of time. This is why even today many a researcher imagines he has found an *origin* in one of the earthly attempts of past centuries, without ever hitting upon the right thing.

Man does *not* emerge from the confusion however hard he may exert himself; for he lacks connection with the reality, which I want to restore to him in order to eradicate all that is wrong.

Parzival! He cannot be separated from Imanuel; for Imanuel is in Him and He works from out of Parzival.

It may also be said that Parzival is a cloak of Imanuel formed by the Primordial Queen Elizabeth, through which Imanuel works, standing at the head of Creation, which could only come into existence from out of Him and otherwise would not be, simply could not be; for Imanuel in Parzival is in fact the origin and starting point of Creation.

He is the Creative Will of God and God is with Him, in Him. That something like this could be dragged down to become *that* figure which people imagine Parzival to be today is something that only this mankind on earth is capable of. They press everything into the dust through their intellect, which itself is born of the dust.

Whatever this mankind tries to absorb with their intellect they also drag into the dust as a natural consequence, i.e. they drag it down into the range of the *earthly* ability to understand. With this everything is confined within the narrow limits of coarse matter, and that which is highest is wrapped in the density and ponderousness of the slow movement in the zone of the most extreme cooling-off. Thus quite naturally it cannot even bear any resemblance to the reality of that which was so dragged down, which reality is found in altogether different conditions and in *such heights* as the human *spirit* is unable to grasp, much less the earthbound intellect!

The expression “to drag into the dust” does not here mean to press into the dirt, but merely to *make it earthly!*

The expressions dust and born of the dust are used in place of the concept of gross matter, something which will perhaps be more easily understood by some men, because it is a commonly used, popular saying.

*This* then is Parzival! The *First* in Creation! He bears within Himself an Unsubstantiate core from out of God, is connected with Imanuel and remains so in all eternity, because Imanuel works out of Him and thus rules the Creations. Thus He is the King of all kings, the Son of the Light, also called the Prince of the Light!

Now compare this with the character in the poetic writings! What an impossible caricature you see before you.

However, it is understandable how all of this happened when one takes an overview of the whole and divides it into *three large sections*.

But make each of these three sections, each one by itself, come to life in picture form before your spirit.

Only in this way can you survey the *whole* and understand what I am trying to make clear to you therewith.

The *first* thing which is *fundamental* for an understanding is:

To think of Parzival as the Son of the Light, who descends into Creation *from above*, and is not per chance lifted up from below, as the beginning and the end in Creation, the Alpha and the Omega for all of the weaving outside of the Divine, and therewith King of the Holy Grail, King of the Created ones!

The *second* thing is:

Parzival's great work of purification which leads Him personally through the worlds, with the unreserved condition that He must, through His own experiencing, get to know all the evil, and that this has to end with the fettering of Lucifer for the protection of the Creations and of all the creatures that remain after the purification.

The *third* thing is:

The fall and great failure of the developed ones, i.e., of the human spirits in the world of matter, which necessitates the breaking of their wrong self-will, the direct installation of God's Will in the establishment of the Millennium, until all of mankind's volition submits to the Will of God, thus completely ensuring the undisturbed further development of the Creations in the vibration of the Light-permeated spheres of movement.

He who grasps these three sections well, *one by one*, and who is at least able to conceive them clearly as a picture, can quite easily understand how the wrong poetic writings of today gradually came into existence. Partial tidings of the three happenings came down to the earth here and there, foretelling much of it.

In their lack of understanding men pressed everything into the coarse conceptions of the densest materiality, placed it onto the earth and thus made up a concoction from which literature eventually emerged.

You must follow my words precisely, and you must also *obey* them. Picture to yourselves living illustrations of the three sections as being tremendous individual happenings of which only partial knowledge could reach the earth through channels opened for this purpose. These channels, however being badly clogged and in any case only allowing through that which had been dimmed and already mixed with what men themselves thought up, forming muddy deposits in these channels. For thousands of years already this knowledge has been unable to penetrate to the earth clearly and purely.

With all this I am referring only to *happenings in Creation* which forcibly arose out of the development through the wrong volition of failing creatures, and for the time being I am following this *one* path in my explanations! Everything else I am still leaving aside. Therefore this does not include the attempted redemption of earthmen by the Son of God Jesus either, for this was a Work of Love standing all by itself.

You must follow me precisely, otherwise you will not be able to understand. Perhaps it is therefore a good idea for me to explain to you what happens when I speak to you:

I see before me the *entire* happening, for I overlook it in its complete activity down to the most delicate ramifications. I see everything *simultaneously in the knowledge*; for it is I who weaves it.

Now, by what I wish to explain, I try to prepare a straight road on which you can grasp the main points *in such a way* that you receive a basic picture for *that* which you are meant to grasp in the lecture. However, all this I must first press into such a reduced form as is adapted to the perceptive faculty of the developed human spirit. Once I have achieved this then I must still seek suitable words and forms of expression for you to form that picture which I want to give.

All this, however, does not happen *successively* but *simultaneously* within myself, and then I give you, in a form which is accessible to you, the happening which you can neither survey nor grasp, in which past and future take place in the present, a process the nature of which the human spirit is utterly incapable of thinking!

Thus you receive drop by drop from out of what is unfathomable to you, yet in such a way that together these drops yield a palatable and powerful drink which strengthens you in your knowledge and helps you upwards, if only you will accept this refreshment as provision for your journey.

Very often there is a great deal that I must at first leave out in order to bring it back in other places much later, but then always in such a way that it completes the picture to which it actually belongs; for all the weaving of Creation *above* him is far too intricately patterned, much too alive and mobile for the earthly human spirit to grasp, even pictorially, unless he receives it in a form made accessible to him through special descriptions.

Just take one tenth of *that* trouble which *I* must take merely in order to make it accessible to you, and you will have accomplished *everything* for yourselves!

Later on I shall perhaps also describe how *things are* in the Light Castle, and then illuminate those planes which were able to develop at a greater distance, and finally down to where the human spirit-germs remain as the last precipitation of the spiritual, in order to find development in wandering through all the worlds of matter, for the fulfillment of which they all bear the urge and longing within.

First I shall give pictures *of* how it *is*, and perhaps later on, of how it came into existence at one time; for the happening is too great. First you must know how *things are*, for *this* is what you need, since for yourselves you must always take into account the present and the future unfolding from that present. If you stand firmly *in this* then we can stride onwards in the knowledge.

For today learn to recognize the three basic sections that are connected with the name *Parzival*.

---

## The Great Purification.

There is nothing on earth, you men, which you could offer as a balance in gratitude for the fact that God liberates you from the vermin of the Darkness, which you yourselves have reared through your wrong volition!

If only you would at least take the trouble to comprehend that the battle of the Light against all Darkness is not a joyful one for the Light, but a wrestling down and annihilation of all manner of loathsome filth, during which the majority of mankind, for whom this liberation is *intended*, and who gain from it in every way, even side with the poisonous Darkness so as to make the path of the Light Bringers more difficult through their base way of thinking!

But the Wrath of Almighty God now strikes into the ranks of these evildoers, who as the most disgusting vermin are doomed to suffocate in their nauseous slavering! So that the world will be cleansed from such evil!

This expression is not nice, but there is no other word for something that is really absolutely unspeakable in its hideous depravity; for even this earthly language is inadequate to fittingly describe this kind of utterly base thinking.

The expressions "scum, vermin" alone characterize the two fundamental types of these depraved people, who have excluded themselves from any possibility of salvation because, being incapable of producing even *one* thought of a purer nature, they spread abroad poisonous, all-corroding venom which now, in returning to them, is bound to corrode and disintegrate them!

Torn to pieces by an indescribable, hateful envy, they will now pass on in fear and dread, anxiety and horror, and no

hand shall be lifted to relieve their well-deserved suffering. They will be spurned by anything that strives towards the Light and freedom of the spirit. And as they are stricken in distress and suffering, and tossed about in indescribable agony, the spirit-spark within them, which they had kept imprisoned through their Light-opposing efforts and would have left to perish, will awaken accusingly through the loosening effect of the disintegration. It flares up in every individual, in unquenched longing, painfully burning and searing what has hitherto held it down.

Thus disintegration goes on hand in hand simultaneously from without and within in unbelievable agony, for hundreds or thousands of years, removed from all help, far from any relief, in ever-increasing anxiety and the most terrible despair, until finally the ego-consciousness is completely eroded; for nothing of it must remain.

Such are the paths of the accursed ones from the moment when God has withdrawn His Hand, and in Holy Wrath has cut them off from receiving redeeming mercies!

Then the doomed one *had* to sink and be torn down into the abyss of horror and devastation; for he was no longer granted support from above!

And this day of the most Holy Judgment has now arrived! You who strive upward, *you* will become *free* from all vermin and all tools of the Darkness, as you have already been delivered by the Holy Light from the Prince of Darkness himself for a long time to come! So that you may again become so strong that you need fear him no more.

The whole earth that bears you will now swing upwards with you into purer and more luminous realms.

And when you can once more breathe *purity*, when everything around you that barred your clear view to the Light has fallen away, only *then as you look back* will you recognize *how* revolting was the swamp in which you have lived until now. Only *as you look back* will you be overcome by nausea and horror... and... perhaps... then there will also unfold within you

a part of *that* gratitude which you should already be giving to God today, for the great Work of Love that He is fulfilling upon you with this purification!

You could and should long since have recognized how superhuman are the patience and the forbearance He has shown, even to those who are now finally condemned. You were able to observe it within *your own ranks!* Just as a *minor* example, think once more of all those who *voluntarily* found their way to the Word and then fell away!

I do not speak here of former happening in more luminous realms, nor of vows formerly given upon granting the fulfillment of voluntary petitions. No, I speak *only* of a *short span of this earth-life*, which however already contains enough to make you turn away in horror from *those* human beings whose entire thinking consists only of the basest products of wounded vanity, of disappointment over a few earthly wishes of one kind or another that were denied, and also of an egotism which was not able to manifest itself.

Look around you, you will find these people everywhere! You have known them well enough, so that I do not need to mention names. All their names will still be burning in your sense of justice, until you realize that the Justice of God will not be mocked, and that at the proper time it will take effect in *such a way* as man could never achieve.

The Judgment in its wisdom and justice will force you to your knees in awe, and you will beg for forgiveness for often allowing your wishes, in your anger and indignation, to get ahead of real Justice, without considering that the Omnipotence of God strikes much harder and more surely, and also more relentlessly, than a human being can ever dream of.

The Lord will not be mocked! And mocking also includes disobeying His Holy Laws. If man imagines he can act as *he* likes without taking God's Justice into consideration, or if he assumes that he may always indulge his *whims and wishes* without retribution reaching him, he therewith mocks the All-Justice of the Lord!

But the Lord will not be mocked! This is a warning that will bring fulfillment for everyone! And the day of these fulfillments is here!

Look back and scrutinize these people and their actions once more, before they now sink into the harsh mills of retribution, thereby forever disappearing! Indeed many of you have experienced all of this. You will not find it difficult to gain a recognition from it, which may *benefit* you for the future.

The people to whom I refer had found in the Message that which they had been seeking for a long time already, and according to their *own assertion* at the time had recognized It as the Truth!

*Thereafter* they got in touch with us, we certainly did not contact them. They all approached *us* themselves. *I* did not call them! Very often *they* made ample use of our time, with the intention, of course, of benefiting *themselves* in some way or other. Let us be kind and assume that they were looking for *spiritual* advantage and gain.

This they can and shall find in the Message and in my lectures, as well as in individual discussions, if they seek enlightenment about things that will *elevate* and *ennoble* the human being. Indeed, the Message itself testifies to all this in its own way, with which the discussions are in accord.

*All* of this they were granted, although at times reluctantly, because these people, although they asked, yet they partly extorted it, as was inevitable from the egotism and vanity clinging to them, which indeed later separated them from the Cause.

When they thought they had filled the gaps in their knowledge, or found no further advantages, the Message was again relegated to the background, and there gradually arose in them the well-known pseudo-knowledge that accompanies any form of vanity, and above all *injured* vanity.

And finally the worst shock to such vanity is often the fact that we neither solicit nor fight for anyone who turns away; for it is absolutely immaterial to me, since each human being must

have his free will to decide if it is to bring him benefit or destruction, because he alone bears full responsibility *for himself*.

For this reason I also object to influence of *any kind*. This is the *opposite* of what such people, after they have fallen away, would like to maintain in order thereby to excuse their nasty actions and their evil volition, and to justify them, at least to some extent, in the most ridiculous way.

They would rather furnish wretched evidence of their inner instability, solely to indulge the evil habit of causing harm or trouble, where they feel or imagine they must be despised!

They are too cowardly and far too conceited to admit to themselves that *they* might have made a mistake in the first place, even if later on they once more hold a different opinion; and that it was *they themselves* who came and have now gone again, and that they have absolutely no right to hold someone else, who has neither solicited nor called them, in any way responsible for *their* apparent mistake.

But such nonsensical hostility is refuted by every single word I have written and spoken hitherto, and I *live* this Word! I cannot be separated from my Word. And this Word is now firmly etched into the entire Creation, and cannot be distorted!

It is *in this way* that *those* creatures, who hope for *more* than they themselves are *capable* of taking, seek to revenge themselves, because their attitude is lacking in the necessary purity of their wishes and in spiritual humility, because in everything they over and over again regard the *earthly* alone as the main goal of their path.

Even from a purely human point of view such behavior cannot be understood, unless it is simply explained by the fact that people of this type have no inhibitions about cunningly and craftily indulging their mania for causing only annoyance and, if possible, harm to others, which affords them pleasure. They find an inner satisfaction in such actions, through a disposition which is sometimes even pathological.

If in addition there is a chance to reap some *earthly* gains without effort, they take it unscrupulously, as a welcome side benefit of their actions.

But the real reason for all this lies much deeper. It can only be explained in the sense of the Message:

As these people became lukewarm, the Darkness gradually lured them through their weaknesses and seized them *imperceptibly*, yet with a firm and inescapable grip; because they offered no resistance, but even felt satisfaction when their weaknesses were mentally touched through the Darkness.

Then, in their frivolous mental games the inevitable contact was made; the Darkness flared up ... only too gladly they became willing tools, and even added their own share.

Their original lukewarmness then grew into hostility and barely-controlled hatred, and finally enveloped all thoughts and actions correspondingly.

Of course, similar currents always seek to unite, they find each other, and together they then concoct the poisonous brew intended for their victim. This time, however, they will have to drink it to the last drop themselves, in accordance with the Holy Will of God, which will strike them reciprocally in Omnipotence!

Whatever they forge together through their slanderous thoughts and homogeneous deeds, whatever they form by a supposedly clever distortion of the actual concepts and events, will turn into a sharp sword *against them*; and even the smallest and most insignificant wrong thinking will roll back upon *them* strengthened a hundredfold, for their hate was directed against the Holy Light!

Even an outsider can easily detect the incredible behavior in its evil nature. Properly considered, such behavior cannot be called “good” by anyone, but can immediately be recognized as an *evil* volition! And evil can come only from the Darkness, *never from the Light*.

It *thereby* becomes evident where the *Darkness* lurks. And what the Darkness hates and pursues with its hatred is *only* the

Light, and all that is light. This in itself indicates to any calm observer where is anchored either the Darkness, or the Light.

Following my Message, this can be explained explicitly according to the Laws of Creation. For the Darkness hates the Light, and tries to attack and defile It wherever it can!

*Wherever Darkness attacks, there Light values are present!* In the near future men will understand this, and will judge and act accordingly in order to eliminate the evil entirely, which *must* always characterize *itself* through this!

What Darkness is, or what belongs to it, can be readily discerned by the *nature* of the volition, which manifests in the deed.

With this example I give you a lesson which you are to use henceforth in your life, and at the same time I show you how loathsome and disgusting is the fighting with the Darkness, because Darkness *always* works only in cunning, untruthful, treacherous and malicious ways, wallowing in a morass of its own covetousness, from which it hurls poison towards those places that it persecutes with its envy.

If such behavior is already an abomination to men on earth, how much more so to the Light and before God!

Now, however, the ray of God's Wrath will strike and ignite this wretched slough, and annihilate all those who cling to it through their thoughts and actions!

In reality this cannot be called a fight; for disgust and nausea arise with every blow which the Pure Sword of God has to strike against this filth, forced to do so by the attacks of the Darkness, which already recognizes its end.

A man who can still keep his self-respect will simply withdraw if he believes he does not find what *he* hoped for, and he will tell himself that *he himself* must have been mistaken if he expected anything different. He can never be treacherous and mean, *unless* he bears *within himself* the evil elements which then, incited by the Darkness, often become aggravated beyond belief.

In addition to all this, there is the increasing pressure of the

Light, which *forces* evil as well as good qualities to the final reckoning, by compelling them *to live* themselves *out* in the increased mobility induced by this pressure.

Through this unexpected outburst the evil is simultaneously and finally overthrown; the good however will be raised on high. The enforced activity of all that slumbers in the human soul begins to release the final effects of the Judgment, for the individual as well as for the masses!

A very simple happening, which you will now be able to observe more and more clearly from day to day. Learn from it, and benefit spiritually!

It is the World Judgment in its automatic activity, with the simple naturalness which is inherent in the Holy Will of God! You can see for yourselves that the term fight is too good for the necessary destruction of such highwaymen on all of the roads which were mercifully given by God, and which lead to spiritual peace.

It is not a fight, but the great *purification* through the work of redemption by the Light. To the Light, however, it is only *repulsive* work; for until the very end the Darkness neither can nor will ever be different from what it is: Loathsome, abominable in all its actions. It is neither a worthy nor an honest adversary! Indeed, the Light simply cannot have *adversaries* worthy of respect, because all that is *truly* respectable wishes to serve the *Light* alone, and not the Darkness.

*That* is the mission which the Light accomplishes for you, you human beings! You, who are allowed to experience all this as already *knowing*, will find in it the Greatness of God, His Omnipotence and justice, and His... Love!

For it is *Love*, when He cleanses the earth of this stench and frees you from it, so that you may stand *joyfully* in Creation, which He graciously gives to you as a home!

Render to Him *that* gratitude which is due this Work of Love by keeping your thoughts pure, and by considering only *the welfare* and the peace of your neighbor, but not how you can harm him!

## The Spiritual Planes III

Primordial Beings! These words are familiar to you but you cannot imagine what they mean, or what you imagine can never correspond with the reality.

Therefore I want to lead you towards a better understanding, so that you may become knowing in this matter, as far as this is possible for a human being.

If I want to tell you about the Realm of the Primordial Beings I must once again begin with Parzival, *out of whom Primordial Creation came into existence.*

You already know the main facts about Parzival. You know where He came from and what He is.

I would best summarize it once more by repeating for you a few of the words which He spoke only a short time ago, in an image to a human spirit who was especially endowed to receive visions that are otherwise inaccessible to human eyes.

In one such image Parzival said:

“Allfather’s wise Will *is!* In Him since eternity, I was born out of Him. Wise and eternal as He, I am in Him and out of Him, and from out of me streams forth His power, working His Will.

I am Parzival, the vessel in which the Fire of Godfather is anchored in the Pure-Spiritual, and creating therefrom, the Law of Creation forms itself from the Will and the Word!”

These words are so clear, so unequivocal, that a false interpretation can hardly be made. Nevertheless I want to draw your attention to a few points which can again provide you with a further explanation of what is already known to you.

The Words start out: “Allfather's wise Will *is!* From eternity in Him, I was born out of Him.”

From the Grail Message you have learned years ago already: Godfathers' Will is *Immanuel!*

When Parzival continues to speak in the vision: "From eternity in Him I was born out of Him!" He thereby explains that from eternity He has been in the Will, i.e. in Immanuel, and that He was born out of Immanuel, that He is a part of Him.

And it has been clearly stated in the Message for a long time: "Parzival is a part out of Immanuel who thus works in Parzival in Creation. Immanuel and Parzival cannot be separated: for they are *one!*"

In reality this says exactly the same thing, only in different words. I have already explained in the Message that the Son of God Immanuel is the creative Will of God the Father become personal, who is also known under the name of the *Spirit* of God, i.e., the Holy Spirit. Through this He is at the same time the executive Justice of God, God's sword!

The Son of God Jesus is the *Love* of God become personal. This Love is and will forever remain one with the Justice of God, in the same way as it is also one with God the Father.

Forever indivisible, standing within one another, yet acting separately at times, such is the Triune God of which you know, but of which your imaginative capacity has never been able to form a correct picture. This is the Triune God in unapproachable Unsubstantiality! The center of all power and of all existence from eternity to eternity.

And adjoining this Unsubstantiated Light-Core of the Triune Godhead is the plane of the direct radiation of God's Power, incomprehensible to all that is created. It is the sphere that from eternity to eternity lives in the vicinity of the unrestrainable radiation of Divine Power. Thus has it always been.

And when *Creation* was to arise out of the Will of God the Father, everything could only develop in the course of the action or happening necessary for this purpose, which course you are today able to conceptualize logically through the Message.

Creation had to come into existence through the Creative Will of God the Father! As such, the *Creative Will* of God the Father has been the Son of God Imanuel since eternity, who is personal in His Creating and yet stands or remains completely in the Father, and the Father is in Him as He creates.

I believe that *in this way* many things will become increasingly comprehensible to you.

Just as the *Creative Will* Imanuel is *personal* so even the *Love* also became *personal* in Its working in the Son of God Jesus.

Being Parts of the Father, both are one with Him, and the Father is within them. From eternity unto all eternity.

Jesus is the Love of God, Imanuel the Will of God! All of Creation therefore swings in His Name, indeed He *is* Creation. Everything that occurs, that is fulfilled therein, is inscribed in the Name which carries Creation, from the smallest to the greatest happening! There is nothing that does not come out of this Name and that would not have to be fulfilled therein.

You men have no idea of the greatness that is contained in this; for this Name is the Living Law in its origin and in the fulfillment, it carries the Universe with all that it contains.

The fate of every individual rests in this Name, because you must pass judgment upon yourselves through it, since you are all firmly anchored in it.

And the Name *is!* It is *living* and *personal*, for the name and its bearer are inseparably one. The bearer is the living name, is the Will of God Itself.

The work of creating had to fall to the *Creative Will*, i.e., to the Son of God Imanuel, who is the Creative Will in God!

And since Creation could only arise from out the radiation of the creating part of God, Imanuel, and *outside* the *immediate* radiation of the Primordial Light, which radiation of the *Triune* God has existed from eternity and cannot be held back, it became necessary to place a small Part of the Divine Creative Will Itself *beyond the boundary* of the direct radiation. A Part who remains eternally united with the

Creative Will in the Unsubstantiate, and yet remains standing and working by Himself outside the Divine sphere, so that through His radiation Creation can form itself and be maintained.

And this small Part who was placed outside of the Creative Will of God, the Son of God Imanuel, so that Creation can form from His radiation and also remain preserved, is *Parzival!*

His Unsubstantiate Core out of Imanuel received form through the Primordial Queen Elizabeth, i.e., He received a cloak which became His anchor, so that He can remain standing *outside* the Divine sphere! And this cloak, this form, is the Holy Vessel in which the fire of God the Father, the Holy Spirit, Imanuel, is anchored and out of which He works. With this form, with this cloak, the small part of Imanuel outside of the Divine sphere also became *personal*, but He remains inseparably connected with Imanuel and thereby equally closely connected with God the Father, whom He, as a part of Imanuel, can also call Father and He can call Himself a Son of God; for Parzival and Imanuel are one with God the Father!

In Abdruschin, for the first and for the second time, *Parzival* was on earth, and with these explanations He will likely come a little closer to your understanding today, whereas in the hour of fulfillment Imanuel as such will take possession of the physical cloak of Parzival after painstaking purifications of this cloak.

Only then could the full power gradually sink down into this cloak, in order to fulfill the Divine Promises through mercies upon humanity! Thus immeasurable happenings are unfolding once again before your spirit as a foundation for the understanding about Parzival!

It is exceedingly arduous to give a clear picture for earthly comprehension, and I must not shy away from the number of lectures required if I want to accomplish it.

Therefore I already stated clearly at the outset of the first lecture that the explanations can *only* be for *those* people, to

the exclusion of all others, who were already able to bring the Message to *complete* experience within themselves! Only *those* will be able to follow me if they exert themselves with all their strength again and again until they can grasp it; for I scaled it down in such a way that it becomes possible for their spirit to do so.

Above all, you must think of the term "*Son*" *not in the human way*, not as a son in a human family.

For in the Divine "*Son*" means a "*Part*", a Part of the Father that works separately by Itself. Son and Father are completely *one* and can never be separated.

Therefore do not think of it in human terms, for that *would be certain* to give an absolutely *false* picture! It would lead you to errors in conception which would completely exclude the actual facts, and would consequently never allow you to come nearer to the Truth!

Perhaps it would be better to say: It is all *only* God the Father, He works threefold as One!

This probably comes closer to your understanding as you form a picture of it. And considered from the Origin it is also described *more correctly*, for there is but *One* God! Whatever God the Son works He works from out of the Father, in the Father, for the Father! He would be nothing without the Father; for He is Part of the Father and the Father Himself is within Him and works in Him.

Here we might come a little closer to earthly understanding again if you imagine: The Father does not by any means work *out of* the Son, thus not *through* Him, but *in* Him! Herein lies the mystery for the human conception, which despite my efforts will probably always remain a mystery; for it cannot be described in earthly words. Words are after all only words, strictly limited; they cannot render that which is mobile, that which is living in Truth, such being inherent in everything concerning God and the Divine.

That which is with God can never be with men. In the human family the son is by himself and the father is by

himself, they are and they remain *two*. At most they can become *united in their working*, but never one! It is different with the expression God the Son! Just the opposite! God the Father and God the Son *are one* and can only be considered as two in *Their working*, as also the two Sons of God Imanuel and Jesus are one in the Father and only in Their working they are two, in *the nature* of Their working.

With this I have tried to explain to you once more the *origin* of Parzival, who through Imanuel is in God and therewith God is in Him.

Now I will also try to show Him to you as an image, as a person, as He *is*. And *then* in His working.

It will be hard for you to imagine that from His radiation was also bound to issue the Light Castle, which surrounds and protects Him in the Primordial Spiritual sphere, in Primordial Creation. This Castle must be understood as an addition to *that* Castle which is situated, since primal Eternity, at the boundary of the Divine sphere, in which the Elders, the Eternal Ones, have their home and activity in the Divine sphere. In the *Divine*, that is in the immediate radiation of God, by no means however in God Himself!

I do *not* include the Castle in the Divine sphere in the range of my explanations because mankind has nothing to do with it, but I always and only speak of the Castle *in the Primordial Spiritual sphere*, which is the summit and point of origin of the entire Creation.

The Castle in the Primordial Spiritual, in Primordial Creation, may be looked upon as an addition to the Castle in the Divine sphere. At its uppermost end is the golden screen and the curtain which forms the boundary and is impassable to the Primordial Beings.

Imagine Parzival at this boundary as the First and Highest in the whole of Creation, which issued from Him. In a hall of pillars that has closed around Him in the most faithful and pure volition of all the Primordial Beings and their Love for the Light!

The first Primordial Beings, the highest of Primordial Creation, could only become conscious as they separated themselves in and from out of the creative radiation of Parzival, outside the boundary of the Divine sphere, i.e., beyond the immediate radiation of the Triune God!

I repeat the expressions and designations so often so as to pound them into you as unshakable concepts!

Thus Parzival stands there as the First One. He has stepped out of the Divine sphere! From out of His radiation the highest Primordial Beings separated themselves first as they became conscious, and their love and loyalty to the Light, towards Parzival, formed itself in the volition into the glorious Hall, the Temple, the Castle.

However, I want to mention this living forming and weaving only briefly today. Perhaps I shall give more detailed enlightenment about it later on. Now it needs to be mentioned only for the sake of the whole picture I wish to give.

For you Parzival Himself is only undulating Light, His Unsubstantiate Core from out of Imanuel far overshadows everything else, if shadow can even be used in connection with the Luminous Castle. Therefore this is only stated *metaphorically*, for actually there is no trace of shadow whatsoever.

However, to the eye of the Primordial Spiritual Beings, the First Created ones, the Primordial Spiritual Form of the Son of the Light takes on form, brilliantly illuminated by the radiation of His Unsubstantiate Core.

What shall I tell you about that which it is impossible to define in earthly words?

A luminous head in the most perfect form, cloaked in the eternal movement of the Living Light, which causes any Created one who looks at it to lose consciousness and fall down. The body is enveloped in a radiant cloak which gives the impression of a flexible scale armor; the wings of the Dove spread protectively above the head ... thus can you imagine Him, powerful, imperious, invincible, unapproachable, Divine

---

Power personified, Divine Radiance taken on form: Parzival, the Son of Light, in the Primordial Spiritual, standing at the summit of Creation! *The Pure Gate* which has opened from the Divine to Creation and leads from God to man!

According to its meaning the name Parzival signifies among other things: *From God to man!* He is therefore the gate or the bridge from God to man. He is not the pure simpleton (in German “*der reine Tor*”), but the Pure Gate (in German “*das reine Tor*”) of Life to Creation!

---

## The Spiritual Planes IV

**M**an has burdened himself with much that acts as a hindrance and prevents an unfolding of his spirit, which of its own accord strives to tread the path *upwards*, so long as it is not fettered or earthbound by anything.

The main evil, however, remains the one-sidedly and too greatly cultivated intellect which, puffed up, lolls about on a ruler's throne to which it is not entitled.

It resembles an animal that renders very good service only when controlled, but which definitely has a *harmful* effect *as soon as* it is allowed to be independent.

It is like a beast of prey which at first remains friendly and gives pleasure to him who cares for and feeds it, but which, once it has reached a certain size, becomes dangerous even to the one who initially reared it.

It then becomes a tyrant over the caretaker, who must fear it and who completely loses his hitherto accustomed freedom of movement in the cage, the habitat of this animal. All of a sudden the animal controls him within the bounds of its ability to move about.

It is the same with every person and his intellect. And since the intellect not only remained dependent upon the dwelling assigned to it, i.e., upon the particular human body, but also forcefully obtained *complete freedom of movement* for itself, which is without limit on earth, then *the whole of mankind* had to submit to its volition.

Nowhere are they safe from it, it lurks dangerously everywhere, ready to use its sharp claws or destructive teeth wherever a person appears who is *not* willing to submit to it!

This is how things look on earth *today*! The animal at first so tenderly cared for has grown to an immense strength and

cannot again be forced into useful service by anyone. And so it now creates dismal havoc, in which you already find yourself to some degree, and which will spread and become even worse because you are incapable of commanding the beast to stop.

Many persons will fall victim to it, despite the fact that they could easily have controlled the animal if they had only trained it *aright* at the proper time.

The energy now used by the beast for destruction was meant to be used in a beneficial way under the judicious guidance of your spirit, to beautify and uplift yourselves and your surroundings for the peace and joy of all.

Instead of devastation, flowering gardens would lie before you, inviting you to blissful activity in the grateful productivity of peace-loving citizens of the earth.

All of you, *without exception*, would have become enslaved by the monstrous beast you have reared if God Himself did not now set a limit to it, divesting it of its power and leading it again on paths where it can only work *beneficially*!

But first you must experience what harm you have committed therewith, you must see and suffer the serious consequences which it brings and entails, so that you will be completely cured of such wrong deeds and striving, and no desire for such things can again arise within you in the future!

*This* is how God punishes you, by giving you the fulfillment of everything you tried to impose by force through your selfish volition against His command. This, after you not only paid no heed to all those who were sent to you from the Light out of love in order to warn you, but you even persecuted them with your hatred and finally murdered them in blind rage because they were inconvenient to your plans, although *they alone* could really have helped you.

And through this mistake you also make it impossible for the *spirit* within you to loosen itself in order gradually to unfold and receive connection with *its* own species, i.e. with the Spiritual plane in the Light Ray of the Divine Grace.

The domination of the intellect never permitted this; for its artificially elevated false glory would very quickly have melted away like a snowman in the rays of the sun.

Its fall from the throne would have been unstoppable and it would *have had to serve* again instead of playing the master.

*This* accounts for the strenuous resistance, which did not even shy away from murder where its prestige could in any way be endangered.

That is why even today you simply cannot think differently, and press everything you hear, everything that is revealed to you, into *earthly* forms that are well known to you, thus permitting ideas to arise within you that do not nearly correspond with reality; for the animal that you have nursed and cultivated without making it subject to your control is *above* you and holds you down! It has placed itself between you and all that is spiritual in a separating way, not allowing anything to pass through to that which is higher than this ambitious beast, your intellect, which remains earthly and is the alluringly glittering but most dangerous and sure tool for your destruction in Lucifer's hand.

Now *free* yourselves from it and lift yourselves *above* it! Otherwise you will never be able to grasp the values that are offered to you from the Light or make use of them for yourselves.

Become *the way* earthmen used to be, before intellectual conceit enveloped them and pressed them down onto *that* ground which is suitable for them in their narrowness.

At that time people were vibrating in harmony *with* and *in* their surroundings, and they could therefore be spiritually uplifted in those vibrations without fear of losing earthly ground and earthly thinking.

How small you have become in comparison with those whom today you characterize as standing in the beginning of development and not yet being of full value as human beings.

They were of greater worth in Creation than you are today and therefore more valuable and useful in the eyes of the

Creator than you are in your disastrous distortion, which can leave behind only devastation instead of uplifting what already exists.

You must again return to this point, must again unfold the wings within you which have become completely stunted, if you do not wish to fall; for your spirit is now forcibly *freed* from all obstruction by the Power of the Light! The obstruction is shattered. Then woe to the spirit that cannot *maintain* itself in *its vibration*, it must fall because it has no longer any strength for flight due to lack of any practice and use, of which you wantonly deprived it.

One thing man on earth must pay quite particular attention to for he has sinned severely in this: the connection with the animistic helpers must *never* be *cut off*! Otherwise you tear a great gap therewith which harms *you*.

You must not look upon the *great*, strong animistic beings as gods; for they are not gods but faithful servants of *the Almighty*, and they are *great* in their serving! But they are never subject to *you*.

However, you must not look down in arrogance at the *small* animistic beings; for they are not *your* servants, but like the great ones they serve only *God*, the Creator. It is only through their working that they approach you. You however, must draw closer to them, should approach them.

You can learn very much from them, especially from their faithful service, which they gratefully dedicate to their Creator. You men absolutely *need* the great and small helpers, for only through completely harmonious *co-operation* with them can your souls mature aright and attain to ascent.

Therefore learn to *respect all* of the animistic helpers, for they can be your best and most loyal friends!

Then you will vibrate more lightly again, but first you must be *free* of *any limitation* by your earthly intellect. Especially when you want to grasp that which I am revealing to you of the Luminous Realms, which can never become comprehensible to you if you will think only in the *earthly*

way; for they are of a nature that can only be absorbed by *your spirit!*

Only when you have *opened* yourselves for it will you know what I have given you with my explanations. While I speak about these things already today, they are nonetheless given for a *later* grasping; for I *fulfill*, as I do in everything I say to you! I fulfill, since it was once promised that I would reveal Creation to the developed ones as well as to the Created ones, that I would give you the key to the understanding of every happening in Creation.

Safeguard all the knowledge *faithfully*, for never again can such salvation and such blessing be granted to the earth. As I reveal all this to you, you become *the guardians of all the keys!* If you allow them to become blemished or you twist only a small part, they will no longer open these secrets of Creation, and the gates will again remain locked not only for a long time, but *this time* they will be locked to the developed ones *forever!*

This is the responsibility now resting on *you* whom I have lifted out among all of mankind, as Jesus once did with His disciples when He dwelt on the earth.

It has been made easier for you this time; for I not only *speak* to you, but I also *write* everything down, so that a distortion of the Holy Word can never again occur *as* devastatingly as happened to the most essential part of what Jesus spoke at that time.

And this time I am given much more time to lead you into everything, so that you can learn precisely what the Will of God is and what He demands of you after He gave to you *everything* you need for being allowed to be self-conscious.

You therewith became capable of *knowingly* enjoying all the Grace in Creation, in eternity, if only you proceed aright and become a useful link in this Creation, and provided you do not envy others anything; for there is room and the possibility of existence for all who in following the Law of Movement, swing harmoniously with the others!

You small group of bearers of the Holy Cross are now the *leaven* which I have prepared for mankind, which must now penetrate and further everything, bringing spiritual movement into the ponderous masses so that they need not uselessly collapse and perish.

Faithfully guard the keys that I give you with my words, and always transmit them to those who come *after* you in the right manner!

As soon as you have become free from the pressure of intellectual compulsion, *then* all my words that I have already spoken to you and that I shall yet speak will be clear to you. *Then* you will also absorb what you have heard about Primordial Creation and about the Primordial Beings, who stand at the highest place of all Creations, in the Temple of the Holy Grail.

The *first* ring around Parzival, facing towards Creation, consists of *four* Primordial Beings, who, immediately becoming conscious, were the first to be able to form from the radiations of Parzival. Swinging continually in joyful creativity they receive and transmit, receive back and radiate back.

There are *several* rings of Primordial Beings around Parzival. But all of them, even the first ring, are at a great distance from Parzival and His Throne, which on account of the pressure they cannot traverse.

The four of the first ring are the strongest of all the Primordial Beings. They are able to bear a greater Light Pressure than the others without having to lose consciousness.

They are:

*Od-shi-mat-no-ke*, the servant and Light-Protection of the Perfect Trinity. He is the most ideal embodiment of a kingly ruler.

*Leilak*, the embodiment of manly courage and strength.

These two in their nature are understandable to men. But it is different with the two whom I will name now, for their nature is beyond human conception.

*The Lion.* It comes closer to the human conception if I say that the Lion as a Grail Knight is the embodiment of the most noble *heroism*, whose radiation supports and furthers heroic loyalty in Creation.

*Mercury*, the Primordial Leader of the forces of all the elements. They are anchored within him.

Man may think he has understood without difficulty what I have stated here, but that is not so. He cannot understand it unless I give him an extended explanation about the special nature of the Lion.

In order to do this I must ascend further into the Divine sphere. Men know allegorically that there are Animals at the Steps of God's Throne that keep watch, winged, powerful Animals, among which there is a Lion. These Animals are no fairy-tale, but they actually do exist there. I have never as yet mentioned them because it would have been too much for the beginning. Therefore we shall only talk about them when the human spirits are more matured than they are today.

What I say about it today is only for those who have already absorbed my Message within themselves, and really seek to make it alive within themselves. Thus it is only for the more *mature* earthmen!

Man will now ask himself how it is that *Animals* are in the Divine sphere, and what is more, even up to the Steps of God's Throne, indeed onto those Steps, which a human spirit can never reach, no matter how divinely blessed he might be.

However, this is very simple to explain: Man has formed a false conception of the *animal*, for he only sees the animals of the earth which can develop in the world of gross matter!

And that is wrong! Whether man or animal, both are *creatures* in Creation, one as necessary or as dispensable as the other.

The Animals at the Steps of God's Throne are of an entirely different species from that which human beings think of as animals. They are *knowing* Animals! Even of this you are unable to form any idea, nor will you ever be able to do so in

the right way, for all this is too far removed for the human spirit of the developed beings.

*Knowing* Animals, whose loyalty and devotion are absolutely incorruptible! There is no wavering or hesitation for them, but only an enthusiastic unchangeable serving! Serving in immediate action, without deliberating, without first needing the volition to do so. A living swinging in the Law as a matter of course and as a necessity for their existence!

They also stand much higher than the developed human spirit, even by the mere fact that in their inviolable purity of activity and strength they are in the *Divine* sphere.

Thus they are not animal in the human *sense*, but of a special species of radiation which has taken on form and is called Animal, just as another, lower species of radiation is called *man*! Very special explanations are yet needed about this which can only follow much later.

Just as the Lion at the Steps of the Throne of the Unsubstantiated God-Trinity issues from the latter's radiation, living and working in it, so the Lion in Primordial Creation has issued from the radiation of the likewise Unsubstantiated Core in Parzival, and has taken on form in the Primordial Spiritual plane of the first Primordial Creation as Knight of the Holy Grail!

It is a similarity of species in a different form; for the Lion of Primordial Creation bears other things within himself besides, something of the spiritual-human nature about which I shall speak later in greater detail. Within himself He is already a combination, whereas the knowing Lion at the Steps of God's Throne does not bear another combination within himself.

The Lion of the Primordial Creation is already prepared for the radiation *in Creation* as a necessary transitional species. His radiating activity is many-sided but nevertheless more limited than that of the Lion in the Divine sphere.

All the heroic virtues which manifest here and there in Creation issue from him.

I must not go into details today, for this diverts too much from what I want to say in this lecture. I will only remark in passing that from the radiations of this heroism a share was also given to the spirit of those *earthmen* who were active as real *heroes*.

This was well known to the ancient Germanic people and to the Greeks, as well as to many other earlier human races who still maintained a conscious connection with the Animistic.

At the earthly death of such a hero the animistic beings guided the animistic radiation-part of heroism to Valhalla, the uppermost Castle in the Animistic Ring of Creation, whereas the spirit had to go to his assigned plane. In spite of this, if the spirit had been active in the *good* sense, both parts would have remained connected with each other by threads.

These two parts were only separated when the spirit stepped downwards, so that the animistic part could not be dragged along. Otherwise the two parts would flow together again at earthly incarnations.

This attribute of heroism is a special gift for earthman, the reception of which is prepared through a definite state of maturity of the spirit concerned, as well as through a definite *path* thereof.

For certain tasks on earth a part of these animistic rays of the Lion is needed, for an aggressiveness swinging *in purity* is anchored therein, combined with an absolute devoting of oneself, which the spiritual as such does not carry within, for its highest goal is upbuilding and peaceful activity.

All real heroism in Creation is anchored in the Lion, who as Knight of the Holy Grail stands in the first ring of the Primordial Beings, and who, upon his petition, was anchored in an earthly human body, so as to actively assist in the holy fulfillments *on earth*, directly, while being in the same proximity of his Lord, just as in the Light Castle of Primordial Creation.

*True* heroes will gather around him spiritually and physically, because in the Laws of Creation, through the power

and basic nature of his radiation, it *has* to happen *this way* and can be no other way; for they are inseparably anchored in him. Sham heroism will naturally stand aloof from him and must even *thereby* reveal itself as such.

In the Holy fulfillments on earth this is one of the many processes incomprehensible to men, which in All-wise providence are God-willed, but which in their effect are so simple and natural, as it is with everything instituted by God.

Men will stand in awe before the certainty of the workings of God's Laws, where nothing other than absolute *automatic* fulfillment can exist, which in the last moment, with All-power, will toss aside anything intent on inhibiting it.

Now I have also simultaneously lifted the edge of a veil a little from the Animals on the Steps of God's Throne. They are four winged knowing Animals who guard the Throne: an Eagle, a Lion, a Bull and a Ram. The Ram, however, bears a human countenance, for the Ram carries the *human-spiritual* within himself!

The four knowing Animals on the Steps of God's Throne have issued from the *immediate* radiations of God and can live therein knowingly. They bear within themselves *the basic species for the Creations*, whereas the Archangels swing in a different species of radiation. It is not without significance that the birth of the Son of Man on earth falls within the sign of Aries (the Ram) according to Law!

But to solve these mysteries is not the task of today's lecture. Accept with gratitude to God what I am allowed to offer you, try to understand everything, and do not playfully jump from one thing to another. You cannot afford to do so in these things, for they are much too powerful and too high for the trifling thoughts customary to mankind.

However, the *more keenly* and *earnestly* you exert yourselves really to *grasp* the Truth of my Word, the more I am able to reveal to you. For you the key to the gate of my knowledge lies in your effort! Therefore strive in such a way that I can give to you with full hands!

## Easter 1935.

Today you are expecting *joyful news* from me, since it is *Easter*, the feast of resurrection, which is being celebrated!

Though the zones of the earth with which we are familiar are preparing themselves, with their age old faithfulness by offering to the inhabitants new vitality, by providing new nourishment, raising hope and even fulfilling wishes, as they have always done, willingly swinging in all of the Laws of God, this time nevertheless, humanity will *not* be blessed with God's Grace as in the past, for the wrath of God is upon them *in Judgment*.

Today is that Easter which has to lead humanity of this earth to the *deep sorrow of Good Friday* in the just balancing of eternal Laws!

Mankind, you have not paid attention to the calls from the Light! Only in the willing acceptance of and adherence to the Holy Word of God could you have saved yourselves in time! As always you only mocked it, laughed and scoffed at it, *now accept the reward!*

You will learn to pay heed to God's calls, to observe them gratefully, to *obey* your Creator! For there is no other path available to you, except for the fall into dissolution, into eternal death!

This is the only choice remaining for you which you *must* make. However, if you still want to *live* in obedience then you must have the *sincere* volition for this and ask for it in purest *humility*. Otherwise it will not be granted to you any longer. For too long you have frivolously or even maliciously toyed with the most precious treasure that God has given you on loan.

The greatest amount of effort is now demanded of your volition! Even as the Darkness moved over Golgotha when Jesus, the Living Light, departed from this earth, so is it now moving over all of mankind, balancing and returning to them the great suffering they inflicted upon the Love of God in the cruel way of the cunning intellect, which is utterly incapable of any intuitive vibrations, and which, as Lucifer's most powerful tool, was sacred to you!

Now try if you can, you human beings, to protect yourselves with your intellect against God's All-Holy Wrath! Defend yourselves against the Omnipotence of Him who graciously left to your use *that* part of Creation which you have devastated and defiled like a stable of the most depraved animals, so that only suffering and misery can still dwell therein, because all peace and joy flee before your wrong actions and dark volition, and all purity conceals itself in horror.

Try to hide from God's inflexible Justice! It strikes you *everywhere* in the inexorable execution of Divine Will, without remitting anything of the enormous guilt with which you have laden yourselves in your self-willed obstinacy.

You are judged even before you are able to stammer a single word of excuse, and all petitioning, all supplicating, all blaspheming or cursing avails you nothing; for now you have unpardonably wasted the last respite for soul searching and turning around merely on fostering your vices!

*This* is what the Easter that we celebrate *today* holds! I do not tell you this as a warning; because it is too late for that. Far be it from me to continue to admonish you as I have done for years. You are only to think of it in the coming *experiences*! For this reason I state once more what this time has in store for you. Perhaps the knowledge of it will help to *alleviate* some of the suffering, although it can no longer prevent anything.

You know it is the clearing of the great debt with which you have voluntarily burdened yourselves, since nobody has forced you to do this. If through my words you can come to recognition in the suffering, and if thereby a yearning for Light and for

Purity arises within you and forms a humble petition, you may still be granted salvation as you are sinking; for God's Love is ever watchful, and these last Words of mine about this have not been in vain if only *one* amongst the falling ones thinks of it in time and in humility.

Therefore this is the *best* I can give to you for this feast of Easter!

A *true* Easter will blossom for you only after the Judgment of the Lord is over. Then I will speak to you again and tell you of the *new* life, which the Lord will grant only to *those* who willingly swing in the sacred Laws of His Creation, to those who will keep His Mansion, in which you are but guests, free from all activities that are hostile to the Light, and who will not again wantonly devastate the beautiful gardens in whose splendor and purity they shall rejoice evermore in order to grow strong therein!

Oh, you who are blinded, why will you not awaken! You could have been spared so much hardship. I could have brought you joyful news. But as it is, your existence must be shrouded in grey veils of deep sorrow, from which liberation and redemption can once more be granted to you only through the piercing lightning flashes of the Holy Wrath of God!

And this Wrath will fall upon you with unsuspected might in the Holy Judgment!

However, the Judgment is *different* from your conception of it. You know of a Book of Life which will be opened by the Judge of God at the appointed hour for *each* one!

The Book of Life shows *the names* of all creatures that have come to life, and nothing else.

The inscribed pages belonging to the great Book of Life however, which show the pros and cons of every single thought and every single deed of the individual, are *the souls themselves*, upon whom has been imprinted all that they have experienced or done in the course of their existence.

The Judge can clearly read *therein* all the pros and cons. But again you also have a wrong idea about the reading. This too is

much simpler than you try to imagine.

The Judge does not order each soul to step separately before Him, before His Judgment Seat, but in the Name of God He sends the blows of His sword *into the Universe!* The blows of the sword are *radiations*, which go forth and strike *everything* in Creation!

Recognize the great simplicity and amazing naturalness! The Judge does not send the rays consciously or intentionally to this one or that one; no, He simply sends them out at God's Holy Command; for it is the Power of *God*, nothing else but His All-Holy Will could work in this way!

Thus the blows of radiation, or the radiations, penetrate all of Creation, however, with a force as has *never before*.

Nothing can hide from the effect! And thus, in the Law of the Working of Creation, the Ray of Divine Power strikes *every soul* at the appointed hour.

When the Divine Ray, which is not even visible to the human soul, falls upon it, everything that still clings to it must come alive and become manifest and active, *thereby* closing the final cycle, which either presses the soul down or raises it up.

Whatever wrong or evil such a soul has already been able to shed in the course of its existence, through redemptive experiences in accordance with the Laws of Creation, is obliterated in such a way as if it had never been; thus it no longer clings to the soul and is no longer imprinted upon it. The soul is freed from it and pure, and therefore can suffer no harm from it.

Only that which has *not yet* come to the closing of its cycle, and therefore still clings to and is connected with the soul, is driven forthwith to the closing of its cycle in the pressure of the Light, in that as it comes to life and *reveals* itself as it attempts to become active, it in so doing also receives the blow it deserves.

The actual blows depend entirely on the strength of the individual volition which, being released in the *reciprocal action*, is directed *against* the soul as the point of origin!

Everything, be it good or evil, is now strengthened by the irresistible pressure of the Light and thrust back to the starting-point, to the soul.

And everything which otherwise, in the labored movement of the dense, solidified environment of all the human souls on earth, might still have required many thousands of years to close its cycle, is now compressed into a few months owing to the increased driving movement caused by the power of the blows from the Light, unexpected by mankind .

Such is the manifestation of the World Judgment in its simple naturalness! This time it is the "*Last Judgment*", so often proclaimed to you! But its manifestations are entirely different from what you thought. Former proclamations were given to you *in pictures*, because otherwise you would not have understood them at all.

By means of the Grail Message, however, your knowledge of the working in Creation is expanded, and therefore more and more can be revealed to you; for today you are already able to understand it through my Message.

The sword-thrusts of the Judgment-Day strike as Light-radiations of the Holy Wrath of God into Creation, and flow through all the channels that have already been formed through the automatic working of the Divine Laws in Creation, and which are based on all the intuitive perceptions, thoughts, volition and actions of men as points of origin.

The judging rays are therefore guided with infallible certainty through these existing channels to all souls, which they then impact in accordance with the condition of the respective souls in such an accelerated way however, that their entire existence is brought to *the final closing of the cycle* of all past activities within a few months; and in exact accordance with their actual condition these souls will be uplifted or cast down, invigorated and strengthened or destroyed!

*Such* is the Judgment! *Today* you are able through the Message to understand the process thus described.

Formerly you could not have grasped it, and therefore

---

everything had to be revealed in simple pictures which correspond more or less to the operation of the process.

And these blows of the Last Judgment have been dealt! They are already on their way to you, to everyone one in Creation, no matter whether he is with or without his physical body.

The first blows have already reached you, and everything that still clings to your souls is revived.

But also the *final* blows, bringing destruction or upliftment, have been flung out with an all-overwhelming severity to complete the purification upon this earth!

Already they are rushing towards mankind, and nothing can check them anywhere. At the exact hour appointed by God, mankind will be inexorably but justly struck by them!

The last from the Will of God in the Judgment *has been fulfilled therewith!* Pray, you men, so that you will not have to be lost therein!

*Blessed* are *you*, that you can become knowing; for thereby you also receive surety on your paths through the Creations, you know the way and the goal exactly! That will give you strength, joy, peace and at the same time protection and even higher volition for the good!

Holy power of God be with you who wish to pursue the right path in gratitude!

AMEN.

---

## The Spiritual Planes V

I have explained the first ring of the Primordial Beings around Parzival, that is, not yet explained, but only spoken of them.

Before continuing I must yet explain many things in greater detail, otherwise you lack something of the ring of the great vibration, and you cannot let it come to life within yourselves. Everything must be without a gap although it can only be given to you in *pictures*. For this reason we can only advance very slowly.

Therefore we must once again dwell upon the first Primordial Beings whom I named in the last lecture. They are the strongest pillars *for* and *in* the Creations.

And for this purpose I must again ascend to the nearest proximity of God, in so far as it is even possible to speak of proximity; for there is nothing which could be said to be in the proximity of God, if proximity is measured according to earthly conceptions.

Even the greatest distance which exists in human conception is still not sufficient to give an approximate picture of *that* distance meant to designate the nearest proximity to God.

It is still infinitely greater; for that which can be called the actual proximity of God is an undulating sea of flames, still without the possibility of acquiring form.

Thus, I merely use the *expression* for the designation “proximity”, not the *conception*. In this proximity, upon the Steps of the Throne, which are entire planes, there are to be found the four Animals in their very special kind of vibration.

The Primordial Queen Elizabeth cannot be placed into any kind of gradation for She exists *entirely unto Herself*, and through Her the Pure Lily.

The Archangels are again of a different species of the direct Radiations of God than are the four Animals. The species separate themselves in the process of their forming. One can also say: The forming *is* the separation; for it is an *automatic*, living happening.

Today, however, let us only speak of the four Animals. These Animals carry within themselves the essential conditions for *Creation!* This means that they hold within themselves the *concentration* of all the radiations needed for the *Creations* to take on form, and to develop.

For this reason the foundation of Creation already rests in these Animals. Four Animals which form a Square on the Steps of the Throne of God and drink, absorb within themselves, all the Creative Radiations of God. This means that they not only form a Square, but they *are* the Square of Creation, or the Square of the subsequent Circle of Creation.

I will not dwell upon this too long, but merely touch quickly upon that which is essential for us today in order to explain the connection of the Square of the Animals with Creation.

Thus the Square of the Animals, or better said "*Beings*", contains everything needed for the *Creations*, and *for this purpose* it is the first central gathering point out of the Radiations of the Divine Trigon above it, the Divine Trinity.

Entirely different radiations go through the Primordial Queen, and different ones again go through all the Archangels.

Thus it is *only* this Square of the four Beings that from above is directly involved with the subsequent Circle of Creation; it is connected with it. Everything else, having its home in the Divine Plane of Radiation, and which was and is thereby eternal, inclines towards all that is created *only* in a *helping*, uplifting and furthering way in the vibration of the Divine Love, which is completely natural to them. However, they are *not* firmly *connected* with Creation. Only the Square of the Four Animals is connected with it.

*Very much* lies in this fine distinction! Therefore pay special attention to impressing it upon your mind. Some things, much

that has so far remained incomprehensible to you will thus become clearer to you.

Of the four winged, knowing Beings at the Throne of God: the Ram, the Bull, the Lion and the Eagle, the Ram is *that* Being which bears a *human countenance*; for the Ram holds within himself *that spiritual quality* in Creation out of which *the human beings* in Creation form themselves and develop!

This is *also* connected with the expression: The Lamb of God and the wound it bears; for in conformity with its nature it bears the signs of the wound of the failure and decline of the human spirits in Creation, since they issued from it, if not directly, then *indirectly*. The out-streaming human-spiritual does not pulsate harmoniously back from out of Creation, but is held fast in the worlds of matter because too much guilt clings to it.

With this I again expand the field of knowledge for you by another span. But it does not change any of that which you have been able to learn up until now. All of this remains just as it is, and vibrates in full harmony with the new, even though some things may not appear to do so at first.

Now I want to move on to the details. Parzival stepped across the boundary of the direct radiation of the Divine Trinity, i.e., across the boundary of the Divine Plane.

With this He carried the radiation of His Unsubstantiated God-Core out, and now radiated outside of the Divine sphere as a small Part out of Imanuel into the Light-Void and, being the Source of Life, illuminating, warming, setting everything into motion, and keeping it in motion.

Immediately and at a certain distance the first four Pillars of the Creations were formed in a kind of combination, which contains everything necessary for Creation. They are not formed as are the Beings at the Throne of God, but have human form, although for human conception of an absolutely unimaginable stature.

Standing before Parzival as Knights of the Grail, i.e., as powerful protectors and faithful guardians of the treasure and

Holy Vessel of His Unsubstantiate Part entrusted by God in Parzival, they, at the same time, fulfill the effects of the four Beings on the Steps of the Throne!

In their effect for the Creations they are of the following kinds:

1. *Od-shi-mat-no-ke*: The ideal figure of the human-spiritual unattainable by others due to its perfection! Therefore he appears as a kingly ruler. He bears *only* the nature of the Ram within him, thus he is the nature of *his* activity in Primordial Creation; one could say that the Ram is anchored within him.

2. *Leilak*: The ideal figure of masculine courage, of masculine strength. Within himself he bears a combination of the species of the Ram, therefore the spiritual human form, and of the *Bull*.

3. *The Lion*: The ideal figure of heroism and unshakable masculine loyalty. He bears within himself the combination out of the Ram with the Lion.

4. *Mercury*: The ruler of all the forces of the elements. He bears within himself the connection out of the Ram with the Eagle.

All four of the Primordial Beings, apart from the other species that are expressed, must also be fundamentally connected with the *Ram*, because they are *spiritual* and *conscious*, something which is anchored in the Ram.

Just as the four Beings on the Steps of the Throne are the pillars and powerful Guardians in the Divine, naturally outside of the Unsubstantiate Godhead Himself, so the four Primordial Beings of the first ring around Parzival in the Primordial Spiritual sphere, in Primordial Creation, are the pillars and powerful Guardians whose co-operation brings about a perfect union and radiates all the requirements of Creation.

The animation of these rays comes from the Light-Core of Parzival, from whose Radiation they were able to form as the first necessary mainstays, which at the same time are the most powerful Guardians of the Sanctum.

It is not easy to explain to you something which is so great

and mobile, to form it into stationary pictures for you, whereas the reality is *not* stationary, but remains in a continuous flowing movement, a movement of receiving, of radiating further, of withdrawing and again leading back to Parzival. All this *simultaneously* without interruption. Even this you will never be able to picture to yourselves.

Thus in these first four Primordially Created Beings are gathered all of the creative powers streaming out of Parzival, united with and amplified through the same species of radiations of the four Animals. The creative powers are held in a thrusting or pressing away movement through the Living Light in Parzival and are directed by the volition of the Primordially Created Beings.

*In this way* you may be able to imagine a process which comes closest to the Truth expressed in earthly words!

To start with keep this in mind thoroughly, and hammer it into yourselves, in the way in which I formed it into earthly words.

Do not perchance let your thoughts jump about again and do not ask yourselves where then is the feminine, which according to my earlier lectures is always supposed to stand half a step higher! Also do not brood about where Maria and Irmingard are, who certainly cannot stand lower than the Primordial Beings! Here, too, there is no gap, but everything is completely consistent.

To begin with the four named Primordial Beings are the *main pillars* of the structure of Creation, and *starting with these* the progression is downward into greater distances according to the explanations of Creation which I have already given; for these four bear all the creation powers combined within themselves, while all the others are only *helpers*.

Here, again, I first indicate only the *straight* line downwards which leads to you the developed human spirits leaving untouched and unnamed all of the branches, as for example Loherangrin, because he is not the *starting-point* of a radiation which works incisively in the forming in Creation. I shall

address this later on. First I give the *supportive pillars* in the structure of Creation!

Maria does not enter into any of this at all, nor does Irmgard. Although, coming from above, they are *anchored* into the Creations, but *not* firmly *connected* with them. Therein lies a great difference again.

Despite the anchorages, They are not tied to the Creations, but completely free from them and their currents. The currents of Creation can *approach* Them through these anchorages, so that they become clearly recognizable, but they can never penetrate *into* Them, because the necessary *connection* for this is lacking.

Maria and Irmgard act, without the possibility of anything reacting upon Them! They work in a helping and uplifting way, strengthening, purifying, healing or also repelling, but in Their Radiations They do not *connect* Themselves with the Creation. Heed this well!

Maria did come from out of the *Unsubstantiate* into holy union as a Part of the Love of God, which is Jesus, and as a Part of Imanuel. She has nothing to do with *womanhood as such*, but as the Love of God She faces the *whole of mankind!*

Womanhood of Creation as such has *only* to do with Irmgard. And She *descended* to the Grail Castle into Primordial Creation, out of the Divine Plane, and there merely stepped into a Primordial Spiritual vessel which had already been prepared for Her.

Quite aside from the fact that through an Act of God's Will a spark of Unsubstantiality was placed into Her, so that Imanuel can now work in the whole of Creation as a *Triad*. The Triad of the Unsubstantiality of Imanuel in Creation is: Parzival - Maria - Irmgard, i.e., Justice, Love and Purity. Thus Imanuel, as Son of God, in the final most Holy Fulfillment works in His Unsubstantiality from now to all eternity in Creation at the same time *in* Parzival, Maria and Irmgard, while nevertheless remaining in the Divine Trinity as the Holy Will of God.

This is a new Act of Love which God fulfilled for the aid and stronger protection of *that* humanity which will survive the Judgment, so that then Creation cannot again suffer harm through the weakness of the human spirits.

Thus do not confuse yourselves with unnecessary thoughts. I now speak *only* of the Primordial Creation out of Parzival! Neither Maria nor Irmingard belong to this, although they *are active* there, like Parzival, according to their natures.

After the four Primordial Pillars there is a second ring, which is somewhat further distant, let us say half a step further away in earthly terms. This second arc or plane is filled with the activity of the three *feminine* Primordial Beings: *Johanna, Cella, Josepha*.

Now you must not picture these Primordial Beings as simply standing there in an arc; but rather they work according to their specific nature, in big gardens or planes which arise around them and from out of them, with many helping entities and inhabitants of Primordial Creation, who vibrate and work around each of these leading feminine and masculine Primordially Created Beings in the same nature of these latter.

Thus in the retinue of each of the four first Primordial Beings there is a great number of knights, while a great number of feminine beings co-operate with the feminine Primordial Beings.

But we must not dwell on this for the moment, otherwise the picture I want to give you will expand into distances which you can no longer grasp or survey.

Today, I merely wish briefly to mention the manner in which the activity through the radiation of the three feminine Primordial Beings vibrates as it penetrates the whole of Creation.

Each one has a specific kind of activity, and yet the entire activity of these three is so interlinked one with the other that it can appear almost as one. One can hardly recognize any boundary in this. Their activity is purely *feminine*, of which they are the ideal embodiments.

First *Johanna*: Her activity cannot be put into definite *words*, since to do so would immediately diminish the concept. For this reason I will only say briefly that it concerns the *home!* To make it homelike, attractive, harmonious. However, home taken in the *broad* sense, not merely as a small residence of earthmen!

True, men's earthly home is also included, for this activity takes effect in great things as well as in small, indeed down to the minutest, yet in this instance it concerns *the matter itself*, not merely a small form thereof.

For instance, it also embraces the sense of a blissful connectedness with one's native soil, which can set whole nations ablaze with the most genuine enthusiasm if an enemy seeks to harm it in a covetous way.

I could quote a thousand different things, but you would nevertheless not recognize therein the true greatness which lies in the activity of *Johanna*, which she also seeks to impress upon each human spirit as a holy legacy which can uplift it to great heights and provides firm support. And this legacy is given above all to *womanhood*, wherefore it often holds the fate of an entire nation.

*Cella's* activity is of a no less delicate nature. With care she plants into the spiritual the serene respect for developing motherhood! With all the inviolability and sublimity inherent therein. In the noblest way and with the respectful reserve which comes to the fore in such proximity with all who are still pure in spirit!

*Josepha* lays the foundation for *the purpose of* caring for the *cloaks*, i.e., the bodies, as property entrusted by the Grace of God, and to treat them accordingly. Naturally not only the earthly bodies, but *all* the cloaks in Creation, which in the first place are always and only given as a support for the development of the spiritual or animistic core, and which as such must always be regarded in purity!

Diseased cloaks also contribute to the development of *that* core which in a healthy cloak might perhaps not come to awakening so quickly.

Josepha's activity is of the same value as that of the others, and also of the same *importance* on the paths of all the wanderings through Creation. All these are fundamental conditions for a normal, God-Willed maturing of all the creatures in the Creations. They penetrate everything as if with the finest threads and in their effects manifest in quite different forms, because they remain mobile, reposing unexpressed and unformed in the spirit. All of this urges and drives, but only in the intuitive perception can it be understood *aright* and brought to beneficial realization.

When the capacity to perceive intuitively is buried through the domination of the intellect, then a gulf is torn between you and all those who weave in service to the Will of God in Primordial Creation, and with this the disturbance in the necessary vibrating of Creation is also forcibly brought about.

The radiating activities of the three Primordial Beings Johanna, Cella and Josepha comprise one great, *joint*, fundamental activity, intertwining with each other and yet remaining separate.

Now let us proceed another half a step further which, of course, in reality signifies distances that appear hardly conceivable to you. There again we find a feminine Primordial Being: Vasitha.

She is the vigilant gatekeeper at the exit of the uppermost and purest part in Primordial Creation, on the summit of which there radiantly arises the glorious Castle of the Holy Grail in sublimity and peace.

With Vasitha and her surroundings the uppermost part of the Primordial Creation is complete. She stands at the gate and points out the way to the bridge for all that is spiritual, and which, as a necessity for its own development, must move onwards, over the bridge. This bridge, like an immense rainbow, spans deep chasms, and leads to those regions where spirits who needed more cooling-off and greater distance from the Light of God to enable them to become conscious of their own existence, are able to form themselves and unfold to full blossom therein.

---

Vasitha stands there upright, pointing with her spear, while her keen gaze scrutinizes and penetrates everything which is unable to remain in the first part of Primordial Creation and must then pass by her. Her prompting word gives strength to all and true guidance!

So they move out, those who are able to form themselves as Created ones, together with those who still remain lying in the last precipitation, and who must first wander along the path of slow development in order to become conscious of their existence. They move out into great vast distances with the longing for the Divine Light!

In conclusion, form for yourselves once again a brief overview of what has been said:

The path of the Radiations of the Divine Triad for Creation, and thus of course for all mankind, goes through the Square of the four Animals on the Steps of the Throne, hitherto known to you only by name. The four first Primordial Beings of Creation carry within themselves these radiations of the Animals, thus they form the Square in the Primordial Spiritual for the circulatory movement of Creation. The circulation of Creation is then driven and kept in constant movement by the Power of the Light, which works in a living manner out of the Unsubstantiated Core of Parzival.

Let this basic picture be firmly anchored within you, so that I can expand upon it, adding picture after picture in order to extend your knowledge without your gaze becoming confused. You will succeed if you so desire!

---

## The Spiritual Planes VI

Today I once again call up before the eye of your spirit the picture of Primordial Creation as I have given it to you so far. After Parzival you see the first four of the Primordially Created Beings who occupy the uppermost of the seven steps in the Primordial Spiritual: Od-shi-mat-no-ke, Leilak, the Lion and Mercury.

On the next step I named three feminine Primordial Beings: Johanna, Cella, Josepha, and again a little further distant, upon the third step or plane, Vasitha as the vigilant gatekeeper.

With this I revealed three steps or planes of the highest Primordial Creation in their basic nature. But before I further extend the picture and go into details I want, as a foundation, to name the four other steps; for there are *seven* steps or main sections in the Primordial Spiritual, which I designate as Primordial Creation, just as later on there are also seven steps or world parts in the material spheres.

You find as a matter of course the *seven*-division wherever the *Will* of God is working, whose name itself holds the number seven: Imanuel.

Let us now enter the fourth step in the Primordial Spiritual Realms.

Wondrous, infinitely refreshing light streams through this glorious plane, which like an immense crystal-clear sea extends into shimmering distances.

Out of this flowing weaving there arises, like an island, a luminous place of most exquisite roses. Grateful jubilation pervades the terraces which rise in indescribable beauty up to a radiant hill, offering a matchless wealth of color and compelling the most discriminating gaze to admiring adoration.

Radiating blessings, the colors vibrate in their most enchanting splendor, forming the delightful gardens into the source of all hope and all life. Here and there countless rosy children romp about playfully, while blissful adult women stride joyfully along.

It is as if all of earthly womanhood had its origin here: for from the smallest child to the fully matured woman, indeed all of the skin colors which Creation holds can be found here.

However, these are not perchance the spirits which later incarnate in the Creations. Rather they are starting-points of radiations which, in the special nature of the Isle of Roses, affect human womanhood of Creation as a help for their development on all their wanderings through the material worlds. The children affect children, according to size and nature, even according to color, and adults affect *those* grown-ups whose *forms* resemble them as regards the state of the maturing spirit.

Body sizes on the Isle of Roses are therefore counterparts of the different levels of maturity of those human *spirits* who, during their wanderings through the material worlds, are permitted to develop gradually from germs to complete consciousness.

Therefore everything exists in the Primordial Spiritual on the Isle of Roses which is later repeated in the Spiritual and material worlds as replicas or as reproductions.

In reality this *is* the lawful repetition in all world parts of everything that has already occurred in the Primordial Spiritual, for it can never be otherwise, given the simplicity and clarity of the Divine Laws which are incomprehensible to human beings. Thus everything which has already taken place in the Primordial Spiritual is then repeated precisely in the Spiritual.

Also in the Pure-Spiritual, everything which, in this nearness to and under the enormous pressure of the Unsubstantiated Core, was neither able immediately to form nor to maintain itself, moved out of the uppermost part of

Primordial Creation. It passed by Vasitha into a greater distance, into a next plane, in order to maintain itself in a more cooled off state, being thereby able to attain self-consciousness. This also includes germs of the *Primordial Spiritual*, which already develop to consciousness in the fourth step of cooling-off, as here on the Isle of Roses.

When I speak about steps or planes of Creation then these are stages of cooling-off; for nothing else lets steps come into existence, which may also be called steps of distance instead of cooling-off stages, thus in reality they are also steps or gradations according to *earthly* conceptions.

Therefore as we descend from above we find on the Isle of Roses *children* and *development for the first time* in the Primordial Spiritual! This is important for you to know as it signifies a great stage of Creation.

Thus in the upper steps of the Primordial Spiritual there are first of all those who are able to be self-conscious immediately, i.e., the strongest and thus the most powerful ones, the pillars. Then on more distant steps follow those who are still able to *develop* in the Primordial Spiritual. For this reason we find there, for the first time, *Primordial Spiritual children*.

In the next great section of Creation, the *Spiritual*, which is somewhat weaker than the Primordial Spiritual, since it can only become self-conscious at an even greater distance from the Unsubstantiate Core of Parzival, the process is repeated in exactly the same manner as it was in Primordial Creation.

First the strongest parts of the Spiritual become self-conscious immediately, while the others must still be pushed a further distance away in order slowly to develop and mature to self-consciousness there.

Thus there too, starting with the applicable step of spirit germs, there exist spirit *children* which can grow either to greater spiritual maturity or remain children; because developing spirit germs that do not grow to full maturity, i.e., to spiritual adulthood, are *not destroyed*, not cast out, as long as they remain *pure*!

This is a point which I have not mentioned so far. *Spiritually* they remain children and as such they radiate upon children, until finally they gradually do mature and become adults. What is pure can *never* fall victim to disintegration.

One more thing I wish to mention here. The Primordial Spiritual in this Creation is by no means the stronger part and the Spiritual the weaker part *of the exact same species*, but the Spiritual is a *completely different species* from the Primordial Spiritual!

Both species in themselves have a stronger and a weaker part. True, the Spiritual is a *precipitation* from the Primordial Spiritual, but only because it is of a *different* species, which can therefore separate and form itself only at a greater distance from the Unsubstantiated Light-Core of Parzival. If it were of the same species, then the Primordial Spiritual would not have passed this same species on, but on the contrary, it would have *held it fast* through the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species, even though as a result it would not have been able to form itself while becoming conscious.

The further I go with my explanations the more I must spread out the structure of Creation. Thereby many a picture which you have formed for yourselves in the past will change, but this is merely a separation into ever more pictures without having to somehow shift the actual basic picture.

It is the same as with the description of a long journey. If in so doing one first of all relates only a sequence of the main experiences, then this appears quite different from a picture where all of the separate in-between experiences are gradually added, although the journey as such remains unchanged.

But for now, let us return once more to the Isle of Roses.

On the summit of the Isle there is a magnificent Temple ablaze in rosy luminosity. Peace will enter the heart of him whose gaze beholds it, his chest will all but burst with bliss!

Into this peace, into this harmonious ringing of colors merges the jubilant song of trusting birds who flash brightly with every movement as if studded with diamonds, even enhancing

the splendor surrounding them.

The human expression bliss is far too weak to press the Light-rapture of this isle into an approximate form which may be understood by the human spirit. And spread over all this there lies a sacred sublimity.

Red roses like chalices of ruby are in full bloom around the Temple.

*Isle of Roses!* The anchorage of the Love of God for Creation. On this Isle there works and weaves the fundamental up-building of the healing, unifying, balancing Love, which radiates from here out into the Universe! The Isle stands under the protection of the Primordial Queen Elizabeth, as does all that is feminine in the whole of Creation.

Under the protection of the Primordial Queen Elizabeth, Maria often inclines to this Isle, visiting the Temple in order to give ever-new strength directly to all those serving on the Isle, who then in a mediating way transform this strength into their kind and send it out as a help for all creatures.

And some day this high, glorious Isle will also be the abode of feminine human spirits who are called to Maria's service here on earth and who were selected for such. If they faithfully fulfill their service here on earth, they will, after departing from the earth, awaken radiant with joy on the Isle of the Roses, in order to continue serving the Rose for all eternity.

At times their gaze opens even further and they behold Parzival in the Holy Castle, receiving from His Power directly, as a sacred fulfillment of blessed promises.

At the same height in this plane a second island rises upwards out of the weaving of the Light. *The Isle of Lilies!*

Just as roses radiate their glowing splendor on the Isle of Roses, here it is predominantly lilies that radiate in indescribable purity across vast spaces. Here too, terraces rise toward the summit, on which stands a Temple.

In this Temple there is a magical radiance resembling the delicate luster of pearls, but gleaming at the same time with a rosy hue and settling upon this Isle with a severe austerity like

the soothing coolness of the sea. Anyone permitted to ever behold this temple will always be compelled to reverential humility; for it radiates down in sternly demanding austerity. The proud calm of Purity descends and penetrates the spirits, refreshing and invigorating them while pulling them upward to the liberating worship of Divine sublimity.

Here, too, everything arose with a beauty that is beyond human conception; here too, a wondrous melody resounds, ascending to the Creator as a living prayer of gratitude which sounds eternally in His Honor!

Here too, the Primordial Queen Elizabeth reigns supreme, and under Her protection at specific times Irmingard, the Pure Lily, inclines onto this Isle in order to renew the power of Purity for those who serve upon it, which they transform and send out to refresh and uplift all creatures.

The inhabitants of the Isle of Lilies, like those of the Isle of Roses, belong exclusively to womanhood. Among them all statures are represented, also all the *colors* which of course contain the radiant glow of purity, not the dull colors of earthmen.

Here, too, only that which is *up-building* in the Will of God dominates, just as on the Isle of Roses, but the up-building is of a different kind on the Isle of Lilies - in purity and justice it is *demanding, sternly commanding*, unrelenting.

Womanhood which *faithfully* serves Irmingard, the Pure Lily on earth, will awaken after their earthly departure on the Isle of Lilies in order to continue to be allowed to serve there in eternity and often to be united with Irmingard.

It is the same on the Isle of Lilies as it is on the Isle of Roses, where those who serve see Parzival at times and receive of His Power.

And there is a third island which rises out of the Light Plane of the fourth step in the Primordial Spiritual. It is *the Isle of Swans!*

This isle bears delicious fruit which is enjoyed by the Swan Maidens living there. Here the radiations from the Isle of

Roses and from the Isle of Lilies concentrate and, in exemplary serving, are passed on unchanged for the Creations.

Therefore the Isle of Swans could also be called the island or hub of *exemplary serving*, of *selfless* serving. From here serving in purest love is spread and uplifted!

The inhabitants of the Isle of Swans are not spirits but executive *beings*, which have a *connecting* effect between the radiations of the Isle of Roses and those of the Isle of Lilies.

In accordance with their graceful nature these entities vibrate blissfully in the direct radiations of the Isle of Roses and the Isle of Lilies, and with their inherent nature of exemplary serving in purest love they profoundly connect the radiations of Love and Purity, passing them on connected and yet unchanged.

*Schwanhild* is the responsible Guardian of the Isle of Swans! Schwanhild is responsible to the Primordial Queen Elizabeth, who is the Protector and Ruler of the Isle of Swans as well. This responsibility gives increased strength to Schwanhild and exalts her being.

Like the Swan Maidens she wears a flowing gown which, similar to the plumage of swans, clings brightly to the body, which in its harmony surpasses the imagination of all earthly artists.

A characteristic feature of the Swan Maidens is that they have only *blue* eyes, and that they wear a star of lustrous blue as a head ornament. They distinguish themselves especially by their wonderful, deeply moving singing, and they sway in the harmony of the sounds, which streams downwards from here to all parts of Creation.

The worship of the Swan Maidens is manifested in the Temple of the Swans through their enchanting song, which is imbued with soft, magnificent sounds of harps. Therefore the harmony of sounds is part of the element of life for each Maiden on the Isle of Swans. In it she comes alive, swings joyously in the waves of pure sounds and drinks them in like an elixir of life, which gives her joyful activity.

---

Tidings of this quite special, moving song of the Swan Maidens has already reached down to the material spheres. For this reason we still speak here and there of a swan's song, which in its special nature is supposed to have a heart-rending effect. As always, only a *part* of the old revelations has been preserved, and has been distorted and made all too earthly through the intellect.

Now many of you will probably understand why, at the time of the most sacred fulfillments on earth, when the Rose and the Lily dwell on earth, a Swan Maiden from the Isle of Swans is also needed as a connection, in a physical body prepared for this purpose, in order not to leave a gap in the vibrations.

God's Mercy is so great that He allows wonder upon wonder to arise, so that the help for mankind in the Kingdom of the Millennium may be absolutely complete!

Bow down in humility before His great Goodness.

---

## The Spiritual Planes VII

Last time I spoke of the Isle of Roses, the Isle of Lilies and the Isle of Swans.

I will call these three great cornerstones in the fourth level of Primordial Creation islands, islands in a sea of radiant Light. Yet, they are not islands as humans picture islands to be. A more comprehensible picture might arise if I say that these three islands of support are as three radiant jewels in a gold band, if we compare the entire plane of the fourth level to a golden band in which the three jewels are set magnificently.

Of course, there is other life as well on this plane as on all other planes. But for now, I name only those points of support which radiate *outward* for the creations, namely for the human spirits, and whose effect upon human spirits is incisive, indeed *decisive*.

The same applies to the next level, the fifth level of Primordial Creation. While the previous levels were the *planes of origin* for all of the radiation energies that are fundamental for all that follows, the fifth plane is the land or the plane of *readying, of the preparation* of aids for everything that is *below* Primordial Creation. It is on this fifth level that the guiding, powerful preparers of all the supports for the *human race* have their field of activity!

You will understand me best if I tell you a name from this plane: *Is-ma-el!*

Here is where he lives and from where his activity originates. Is-ma-el who once raised Abdruschin on this earth, who incarnated on this earth for His sake, and who then, as John the Baptist, also proclaimed Jesus, and had to prepare all seven parts of the worlds for the coming of the Holy Will of God, for Parzival-Immanuel!

He is the *highest one* in this level, numerous helpers are around him. *He* received the revelations from the Light for his great comprehensive work, which he fulfilled faithfully at all times and which he will fulfill again this time, faithfully, with immeasurable power since his love for the Sons of God is without limits. It was *he* who gave humanity the great revelation of happenings for this time which has become generally known as the Revelation of John.

This fifth level is filled with this great preparatory activity for all incisive Light happenings for the Creations and it is full of flaming life.

The next level, the sixth one, shows, again for humanity as well, a radiant point projecting far and strong: *The White Castle!*

The White Castle does not conform to earthly concepts. It has this designation as being the *haven of the two pure vessels*. In it, faithfully guarded, are the two Pure-Spiritual feminine vessels of the most holy Light Fulfillments on earth.

They are the two *Pure-Spiritual* vessels for the earthly mothers of Jesus and Abdruschin.

*Only two;* for the Pure-Spiritual vessel for Abdruschin, which was chosen to prepare the path into the gross-material world for the *Will* of God, had already been on earth *twice*. The first time in the earthly woman Dijanitra, the second time in the earthly woman who brought God's Will into the world for the *Judgment*.

The Pure-Spiritual vessel which had to bring God's Love into this world had also been in the body of an earthly woman *twice*.

The first time it was in Cassandra's *earthly mother* who gave to the earth a part of God's *Love*, the second time it was in Mary of Nazareth.

Both Pure-Spiritual vessels, however, also needed a *spiritual* cloak without which they would not have been able to fulfill their task *on earth*. This *spiritual* part of subsequent Creation was the respective earthly woman, and it was *she* who, each

time upon the earthly birth of God's *Love*, became darker, and acquired human weaknesses, which prevented the Pure-Spiritual vessel on earth from radiating *in the way* that was expected.

This is why, strangely, God's *Love* could not find the support on earth from the earthly mothers that It should have had, but on the contrary It very often experienced suffering through them.

This is sad and clear proof of the fact that earthly humans, in their corruption, are no longer able to sense or understand, much less bear the pure *Love* of God; for, consciously and unconsciously, they always rebel against It.

Now, when for the third and last time, the Pure-Spiritual vessel again had to accompany a part of God's *Love* into these gross-materialities for the time of the Holy Judgment and the subsequent up-building, the vessel was withdrawn immediately after the earthly birth of the Light-Love, so that possible failure of the chosen spiritual cloak could not cause *new* obstructive connections to develop. For, even for a third time, the earthly birth of God's *Love* required a *new* spiritual cloak to be chosen since the first two were still bound by encumbrances with which they had burdened themselves and which caused them to stand far removed.

Each spiritual cloak is an individual human being, thus a self-conscious earth woman, with whom the chosen *Pure-Spiritual* woman must first be connected for an earthly birth of the Divine Light!

Such a Light-birth on earth requires the greatest, most comprehensive preparations from above. Often, even after centuries of painstaking efforts, such a small human spirit through its weaknesses may necessitate changes, even at the last moment.

When I speak of a Pure-Spiritual and a spiritual vessel or cloak, it is in each case an individual *woman*. The two Pure-Spiritual vessels are two women in *Primordial Creation*, chosen for this purpose, who were able purposefully to develop

from the Pure-Spiritual toward this goal under specific high guidance, always remaining in the White Castle under the most faithful care.

The *spiritual* vessels or cloaks are the souls of those earth women who could be chosen and prepared to form a close connection with those cloaks or women from Primordial Creation for the purpose of holiest fulfillment.

By an Act of Grace of the Light *that* earthly mother who had been chosen for the last earth incarnation of God-Love was allowed to depart the earth after the birth of her child, and the child, Maria, was received into hands which had been tested and chosen for this, and as they were spiritually unconnected, could not obstruct and harm the Pure-Spiritual vessel.

Having had to experience often enough the greatly inadequate reliability of human spirits in Light Fulfillments, especially in the case of God-Love, this time Wise Providence prevented the possibility of a reoccurrence of harmful earthly impediments for the *Pure-Spiritual* feminine vessel, which as such always fulfilled its task in purest faithfulness, by quick severance of the spiritual-earthly connection immediately after birth. Maria, as a child, therefore grew up in strange but loving hands.

According to the Primordial Laws of Creation, it is absolutely imperative for *that* spiritual, which is held down by the darkening with which it surrounded itself during life on earth, to return to this earth until the impediments are resolved, so that the spirit, freed from them, can ascend, in order to dwell in the Luminous Heights.

Since, in case of the Pure-Spiritual vessel serving God-Love the first spiritual cloak had not been purified at the time of the second earth fulfillment, it received a *new* spiritual cloak which again failed for the most part.

As a consequence, *both* spiritual cloaks, i.e. both *spiritual* vessels, have to be re-incarnated now at the time of the Final Judgment, in order to redeem the errors or to perish.

This concerns the human spiritual cloaks of Subsequent Creation, the human-spiritual part, not the Pure-Spiritual vessel of Primordial Creation which in its purity could remain complete in itself.

*This Pure-Spiritual vessel* was held back under the most devoted care until it was decided whether complete separation by an Act of Grace by the Most High was necessary in order to spare this Pure-Spiritual feminine vessel from having to also suffer through the failure of the spiritual cloak, or whether this spiritual cloak was able to lift itself up again, purified, and would no longer form an impediment in heaviness.

Now, however, by the Grace of God, the luminous core of this Pure-Spiritual vessel is completely freed from *that* spiritual part which belonged to Mary of Nazareth and which because of its failure must move toward disintegration in the Judgment. It can no longer be touched by this pain.

After a long waiting period it returned to the White Castle of the sixth level of Primordial Creation to dwell and work there in joy and happiness.

The situation was different for *that* Pure-Spiritual vessel which served the Will of God. In this case the necessary human spiritual cloak adapted to the Pure-Spiritual vessel both times and a return for the purpose of any kind of redemption was not necessary. Dijanitra, however, as reward, was once more granted permission to return to earth at the time of the second incarnation of Abdruschin who had been her son, and, in recognizing Him as Imanuel, to serve the Light.

This too, only concerns the human-spiritual part, not the *Pure-Spiritual* part. Thus only the *spiritual* cloak is incarnated, not in order to redeem, but in fulfillment of an Act of Grace from the Light.

The task of the earthly feminine vessels was different. It was possible for the vessels for Jesus and Cassandra to *know* the missions of their children so that they knew their origin.

If the earthly mothers then no longer held fast to that knowledge, but became increasingly dark in doubting and quite

often also gave in to human weaknesses such as egotism or lack of effort toward understanding, a propensity for craving worldly recognition and diversions, then this was a failure only of the *spiritual* part and *its* desires, from which the Pure-Spiritual is now separate.

The earthly vessel for Parzival-Immanuel (Abdruschin), however, was not to know of the origin of her child and its mission on earth, nor were any other humans on earth to know, since Parzival first had to walk the painful path of recognizing and realizing the ways of humanity here on earth. This He could do only through personally experiencing and suffering through all human faults which made it absolutely essential that neither He nor anyone in His environment knew His origin.

Thus, this earthly mother passed through her earth life without knowing any of this. Only upon leaving her gross material body did she become aware of the great task she had fulfilled on earth in service to the Light. Grey shrouds had always surrounded her which, however, immediately dissolved through the love for the Son in recognition.

The spiritual cloak, which again was Dijanitra, was now able to re-incarnate on earth in order to receive the Grace she had once been promised.

Long since, however, the *Pure-Spiritual* vessel has been living in the White Castle again, knowing, and blissful in pure service to the Light. This castle on the sixth level of the Pure-Spiritual realm is home to the two feminine vessels which were chosen for the Holy Light Fulfillments on earth.

I will again briefly summarize this matter which is difficult for you, so that you have a completely clear picture:

In the White Castle, which forms the summit of the sixth level of the Pure-Spiritual realm, there are two chosen women who carry down all those who are born of the Light and descend into the material worlds for the purpose of fulfilling Divine promises, in order to connect themselves to an earthly woman. This transition is necessary for earth incarnations of

those born of the Light since there is no possibility of a gap in the working of the Divine primordial Creation Laws.

The two women bear names standing in the Law: *Maria*, vibrating in the Love, and *Therese*, vibrating in the *Will*. Thus, Maria, in the Law of numbers as well as in her nature, is always chosen for God-Love, and Therese always for God's *Will*! For earth incarnations they were, each time, closely connected with an earthly woman, i.e. with her *spirit*, as the next step.

This earthly woman naturally had to have a similar vibration. The birth of Love required a human spirit vibrating in *Love*, the birth of the *Will*, on the other hand, required a human spirit on earth vibrating predominantly in the *Will*.

Now, the vibration of a human spirit in a gross-material physical body manifests itself in a very earthly way, and Love, therefore, manifests as *softer, more indulgent* than it is in the Pure-Spiritual realm.

For this reason alone was it possible that in the darkening of all that is earthly, which was already quite advanced at that time, and in the midst of all the corrupted concepts, the earthly woman vibrating in *Love* did not offer *that strong* resistance to various weaknesses to the same extent as did the earthly woman vibrating in the *Will*. Despite her knowledge, she frequently succumbed to doubts, fell victim to vanities and a domineering nature.

This need not and should not have happened, for the power to resist had been given to her in the greatest degree through strong help which was always at her side to assist her, more than any other human being. Yet there is no other explanation for the failure, at times, of *that* earthly woman who was privileged to bear God's Love.

Only the *earthly human spirit*, however, encumbered itself thus, not Maria from the White Castle in the Pure-Spiritual realm. Nevertheless, that part had to suffer from this since it was still connected to the other part by threads, and the weight of the other part held it down, as long as there was no forced separation.

Therese was not encumbered by the earthly human spirit vibrating with her which, being anchored in the Will, was uncompromising enough to vigorously fend off and have no indulgence for anything that was wrong and distorted.

Each time, the earthly women who had to convey Light-born Ones into gross matter are connected by threads with the Pure-Spiritual vessels *only*. They are not, however, connected to the Light Envoys themselves.

You must pay close attention to this, in order to properly understand the complete process!

The spirit of the earthly mothers is thus connected only indirectly with the Light Envoys via the Pure-Spiritual vessels to whom they are connected directly by carefully woven threads for a period of time.

The Pure-Spiritual vessels carry the Light Envoys down to the earthly mothers with whom they connect only at the time of incarnation, after which they remain connected until 40 days after the earthly birth.

During *that* time, there is a gap-free Light connection via the Pure-Spiritual vessel which includes the earthly mothers. After that time, however, this gap-free connection is terminated as the Pure-Spiritual vessel detaches and returns while remaining attached to the earthly woman only from a distance via a few threads.

The feminine earthly human spirit is thus left more on its own again, since a direct connection with the Light core of her child *does not* exist, hence the possibility of the earthly mothers wavering and failing after giving birth.

Everything is so simple and natural, yet difficult to put into limiting earthly terms, in order to make it comprehensible in the gross-material world.

The seventh and last level of Primordial Creation bears the Isle of the Chosen ones!

Here is where, from Subsequent Creations, all those who were permitted to serve the Sons of God on earth, and who did serve *faithfully*, are elevated. Here they continue to serve

blissfully after their departure from earth into all eternity. At certain times their view expands, they see Parzival, Maria and Irmgard in the Castle, without feeling the distance; instead they have the impression of being there in the presence of the Primordially Created ones.

I do not have much to say about this in the present lecture, for the name *Patmos* alone will suffice for you!

Much has been said, and much more will be said about this Isle of the Blessed ones, for it is, at the same time, the Isle of Prophecies, or the Mountain of Sacred Revelations.

Like the Grail Castle which rises at the outermost boundary of the Divine sphere and at the same time has a replica forming the summit of Primordial Creation, so is Patmos at the outermost border of the Pure-Spiritual sphere and has a replica at the highest height of the adjoining Spiritual sphere. All that happens on Patmos in the Pure-Spiritual sphere can be seen in the Spiritual sphere as in a mirror image, thus always providing the connection through common experiencing in both realms despite the separation.

Perhaps we will address this in more detail at a later time; for today it would far exceed the purpose of this lecture. I will, therefore, merely present the last part of the great realm of Primordial Creation in a straight line downward.

Adjacent to the seventh and last level in Primordial Creation there follows a protective cloak, a layer which has the effect of separating the Pure-Spiritual and the adjoining spiritual part of Creation which the human mind is no more able to grasp in its vastness than it is able to grasp the Pure-Spiritual sphere.

This protective cloak, too, is a distinct plane of great expanse. It is by no means uninhabited, but is animated by many beings, though it is not a permanent dwelling place for self-conscious spirits.

This plane forms the insurmountable, impassable boundary of the Pure-Spiritual Realm of the Primordial Creation, yet at the same time it serves as a transition.

However, for the spiritual to pass downward from above, or, again upward from below, the escort of an entity inhabiting this plane is required. To the one passing over, these entities themselves resemble, in their activity, a protective cloak as does their plane of the entire Primordial Creation.

These entities are able to grant such escort through the protective plane only under certain specific conditions which immutably vibrate in the Creation Laws. This means that passage through the protective plane is possible only when these very specific conditions are fulfilled. Fulfillment of these conditions, resting partly in the *species*, as well as partly, in the *condition* of this species, i.e. in the respective degree of maturity, results as a necessary consequence, in a natural, automatic passage.

There is movement everywhere, precisely interlocking, as in an incredibly finely tuned and artfully constructed mechanism, kept in motion by actively working, living Laws.

Whatever stays on the *right* course within this mechanism is whetted and cleansed, pushed and lifted, toward the height of pure competency. Whatever leaves the right course, however, and carelessly or even with evil intention, steps outside the mechanism, will be shoved and injured until it is back on its right course, vibrating in harmony and without friction, or until it is crushed and ground up between the ceaselessly moving wheels.

Therefore, men, adapt yourselves to the unbendable mechanism of this masterwork which is Creation, the greatness of which is incomprehensible to you; in its steady vibration you will be happy for all eternity!

---

## On the occasion of May 30<sup>th</sup>, 1935 (The Sacrifice).

The Grace of God permits the opening of the gate to the Source of Life! Only for those, however, who, in humility, opened themselves to the Word. A drop will also be given to all those who have kept the spark *alive* within their innermost being. Now, in the days of the Judgment, that spark is re-ignited by the yearning for the truth and becomes ablaze, breaking through every obstacle in order joyfully, in gratitude and in humility to climb the path to the Luminous Heights.

Wherever the spirit then seeks victoriously to overcome these obstacles which hitherto had kept it shut out from the true Light, there this will also manifest in an earthly sense; for such a human being searches restlessly for the way to the Luminous Height on *earth*, the Holy Mountain!

With patience and painstaking effort he will overcome everything obstructing his path, be it family or other circumstances. Wherever there is something trying to hold him back, he *will* detach himself from all the people who do not wish to go with him.

This is God's Will and Law, and thus it will happen! Much is different now from what it was during Jesus' time on earth. At that time, all who wanted to learn from Him had to come to Him personally; for the Word could come to them only through His *mouth*.

Today, the Word is accessible to everyone *in the Book*, so that it is not even necessary for him to first come to me. He can obtain the Book of Truth for himself as long as he searches for it. He can have it in many languages, if only he truly *desires* it! If he carries the *yearning* for it within his soul he will definitely be led by his spiritual guidance in such a way as to obtain an opportunity to come into contact with the Word in

some way. He will achieve this with certainty; for no one is in reality *so* poor that he would not be able to find a possibility for that.

Even if he had to go *hungry* on earth in order to gain the Word of Truth for himself it would only *benefit* him!

I say to you: *much more* is demanded of you! Humanity has fallen lower than could have been anticipated by the Light. Through its rigid, evil self-will it fell so *rapidly* that help from the Light had to penetrate deep into the Darkness Itself, in order to at least partly stop the rapid fall precipitated by human *wickedness* and to prevent the entire humanity from having to be condemned.

Therefore the Light descended deeper into the Darkness than had been prophesied at one time, having to fight for an anchoring ground in the loathsome swamp of those who through their nature were already condemned, to provide help to *those* who are swept along in the rapid fall of the masses, ensnared by thousands of threads, which they could not perceive in the darkness, whereas their souls are yearning for the Light.

For this reason you must use *all* of your strength and, by way of the Word, fight your way upward from out of the incomprehensible depth in which you still find yourselves, keeping your sight directed upward!

You do not know at all the horror of the unspeakably tenacious deadly swamp into which you have already sunk, because your eyes will only be opened again when you are permitted to look down from above.

That is why, *for your salvation*, the spirit has to be *kept awake* for you through constant, intensified effort, so that you will not fall back into the danger of the engulfing sleep of death!

The redeeming Word has anchored Itself for you on soil hitherto indisputably leaning toward the Darkness. Now *you* must endeavor to grasp It if you still want to save yourselves from falling further! The opportunity for this is given to you

through Light anchorage.

Do not think it to be easy, for that would mean your final ruin now. Also in *that* hitherto false conception of a state of comfortable well-being under the loving protection of God, everything must first become completely new in you, before you may continue to be permitted to receive God's blessings in Creation.

It is the Will of God that *man* must now *endeavor* with all his strength to receive the Holy Word once more, *unadulterated*, pure and undistorted! The Word he so often *disdained* and *disparaged* and of which, in the insane self-conceit of his humanness, he believed that it had to be carried after him, that he had to be begged and that he already showed greatness by simply listening and taking notice of It, or when he did not oppose it with hostility.

Fools! God *demand*s of you now your willingness to sacrifice *everything* merely in order to be *permitted* once more to absorb the Word!

The term "sacrifice" does not mean piling up, gathering up all your possessions and offering them as a gift, forsaking earthly goods and earthly pleasures, no, the admonition to sacrifice means to put a *lesser value* on everything else, and to regard the Word of the Lord, His Holy Will, as what is most essential to man!

*Placing everything in a subordinate position behind the Word of God already constitutes the sacrifice!*

There is no need to forsake other things, but you must not consider them as the most important or the only things within the framework of your aspirations, as you have unfortunately done hitherto.

However, do not imagine all this to be easy, for there must be *life* in your volition! It must grow naturally and become a matter of course as a part of your everyday being. No matter what you think and do, God's Holy Will must always be *above* everything. You must always keep your sight anchored confidently in His Will, without deviating even for one single

second!

This is the only way for you to achieve what you *must* achieve now, and this is not so easy for you because you remained unfamiliar with what was meant to be and to remain everything to you forever!

You have moved much too far away from all this and are no longer able even to form a concept in your mind much less an actual deed! Go ahead and try; you will soon grow tired, and your weariness will mean your death! Therefore, just as with a seriously ill person for whom sleep would become the sleep of death, you must be kept awake continuously, albeit through shock and horror! At *any* cost! Until you will have re-formed yourselves into being able to remain alert voluntarily.

You must thirst for the Word, as one dying of thirst longs for a drop of water!

You will *experience* what *this* means, what it is for you, over and over until you are ready to *ask* your God for this grace in truest humility!

He who wants to be saved and accepted again by God, *must* get himself to this point. If he *cannot* do this, he will be lost for all eternity! For *everything else* you have always had time and energy, again and again, except for the Word which brings you *life*!

People had time and inclination for all manner of earthly habits, for they were willing to make many a sacrifice, raising millions for sports and plans conceived by their own minds, yet for God's help they have no *time* at all!

But now you shall *learn*, men, to truly appreciate God's Word *above* all; for now you must make *every effort* to attain It, must use your whole strength, the greatest volition you are capable of, in the spiritual as well as in the earthly sense! You will be spared nothing.

All that you have hitherto put ahead of the Word of your God you will now have to lose, to leave behind! You have to *struggle* for the Holy Word of the Message to the limits of despair, so that you will finally appreciate It for *what* It brings you! It has been made too easy for you up until now, a fact that you did

not appreciate.

Now it is the commandment of the Lord that you must first *demonstrate* that It is everything to you before you receive It, in order to thereby have new *life!*

Things are now different from what they were at Jesus' time on earth! For you, things have changed into the opposite because of your smallness, your loathsome conceit, which must be crushed until even the tiniest speck of it is squashed in immeasurable suffering; for there is no other way of helping you.

You have fallen *too* low, lower even than Divine Wisdom had once considered possible, since you have always acted only in wicked ways toward the Light.

All of the prophecies will find fulfillment in you, but through your own fault you have forced the disintegration of *many more* human beings than could have been considered possible at the time of these prophecies, even assuming the most unbelievable downfall. Filled with fury, men will smash their heads against the Light wall which, without regard to them, now spreads across the entire earth.

Through your actions, things have turned out differently from what had been planned. Things are stricter, harsher, but you well deserve the harshness! It is hard for me to permit even a spark of love to be woven into humanity's self-induced destiny, for they are not worthy of it!

Now they will have to suffer and struggle, fight for every Word that they are allowed to receive from the treasure which was offered them so often, and which again in recent years they *refused* to heed. They *did not want to heed*. Therein lies their greatest guilt! It shall be atoned for down to the last and faintest hesitation!

You *must* recognize the treasures you have always ignored and rejected, again and *again!* In this nothing shall be mitigated for you! Even if all of you would have to perish thereby! For if help is given too soon your poison would rise up again with you and permeate the world, as has happened so

often.

Demonstrate through years of labor that you are serious about changing, and that it is not just the fruit of your suffering! You who have sinned against the Light for thousands of years cannot expect trust now.

You must now give *proof* to your God, not words! This I call out to you, I as Imanuel, in the name of my Almighty Father whom you derided in your actions!

Now you shall learn to *fear* God so that you get used to respecting Him in humility and to praising Him thankfully for every one of the gifts He has hitherto granted you in such abundance.

Whoever among this humanity will not learn through suffering, as befits creatures, shall be damned for all eternity and shall be erased from the Book of Life, which may no longer bear his name!

Light *alone* is Life and Power! And whoever does not want to strive toward the Light, shall no longer receive any of its power! The wrath of God Almighty will force the great purification! Then you will realize that it is the Word of the Grail Message alone which can save, can help you in your distress!

But *you* must endeavor to *grasp* It. It does not come to you. Struggle, make haste, strive, so that It may not be lost to you at the last moment. Then you will stand alone, without light and warmth, without life, and you will have to perish in a thousand agonies!

I am commanded not to make anything too easy for you, so that you remain alert in your spirit! It is exactly *in this* that God shows His *Love* which will always remain incomprehensible to you because it very seldom corresponds to *your wishes*. God's Love *helps* you, humans, which is why it will never flatter you. You must be *forced* into the Law of Spiritual Movement now, so that you may stay *alive* and will not sink into disintegration.

Today I call out to you:

Henceforth, no one can come to me but through the Word!

The Holy Word alone opens the door to me, you men. On earth and in the spirit. Whosoever wishes to come to me must already carry the Word of the Message within himself, incorruptibly, faithfully and irrevocably! Take this with you today, for your guidance!

---

## The Guardian of the Flame.

U ngrateful and devoid of understanding, even reproachful, that is how men often face the greatest help from the Light.

It is distressing to observe how even those of good volition behave wretchedly in these things, or turn away from the Light full of doubt because of unfulfilled hopes regarding wrong earthly wishes, whilst through non-fulfillment the Light very often grants salvation and gain. But, defiant like very stubborn children, men close themselves off from the recognition of the All-Wise Love, thereby harming themselves to *such* an extent that frequently they can never again ascend, and become lost as an unusable seed grain in this Creation.

The least of all the evils which they thereby inflict upon themselves during their wanderings are various successive incarnations on earth as a result of reciprocal action. These incarnations take up centuries, perhaps thousands of years, ever again delaying the possibility of the spirit's ascent, causing new suffering to arise, and resulting in continual new chains of unnecessary entanglements, which must all be redeemed without fail down to the last and finest speck of dust, before the spirit can rise from the confusion brought about through stubbornness.

If the Light were like *human nature*, It would drop Creation out of weariness, for truly unbelievable patience is needed to allow such disgusting, stupid stubbornness to live itself out so that those of good volition who are still striving to rise above it will not lose the opportunities for their salvation, and will not need to perish in the whirlpool of self-created destruction with those who no longer wish to change.

But even among those of good volition only a small part will attain to real salvation, for there are still many who weaken before then and lose heart, and sometimes think that they may have taken wrong courses, because there is so much that is against them causing vexation, worry and suffering from the moment the good volition sets in, whereas formerly they did not experience as much of this.

With the resolution for ascent contained in the firm volition for what is good, for many persons there first comes a time of refining which lets them experience their past wrong ways of thinking or acting, and transforms them for what is right! The more obviously this is manifested the more such a person is blessed and the stronger the help from the Light.

It is already the beginning of salvation, the severance from Darkness, which in the process seems to keep him clasped even more *firmly*. But this firmer and harder embrace only appears as such because the spirit, awakening and growing strong, *is striving away* from the Darkness that holds it.

It is only the *upward striving of the spirit* which makes the grip of the Darkness appear more painful, because until then the grip could not become as noticeable so long as the spirit voluntarily adapted itself to or nestled itself into this embrace. Previously the spirit offered no counter-pressure, but always yielded without struggling against it.

Only when it wishes to uplift itself is the hindrance through the Darkness bound to become perceptible and incisive to the upward striving spirit, until finally it *tears* itself forcibly *away* in order to become free of the ties that hold it back. The very word indicates that this *tearing* away cannot always take place without pain; for a tearing away cannot be accomplished with gentleness whilst no time is left for leisurely *severance*. For this earth has already sunk far too deeply and the final fulfillment of the World Judgment is in full swing in its final fulfillment.

Man does not reflect about all this. Many a person thinks his resolution cannot be right because he never perceived such hindrances before, and perhaps even felt quite comfortable.

Thus through such false thinking he again lets himself sink into the hands of the Darkness. Thus He no longer resists it, and consequently fails to perceive its embrace as hostile. He is pulled down without sensing any pain until aroused by the call of Judgment, to which he cannot close himself, but then... it will be too late for him.

He is only shaken up so as to come to the dreadful recognition of his fall into the bottomless pit of final disintegration, of being cast away. And with this begin the torments which will never ease off, but which are bound to intensify until the horrible end of his being permitted to be self-conscious, i.e., of being able to be a human being, which would have meant blissfulness for him for all eternity.

Consider, you men, that you are deeply embedded in the Darkness, that you have embedded yourselves therein! If you wish to be saved you must wrench yourselves free from it, and my Word shows you the way to do so through knowledge. It gives you the possibility and the strength to carry out your liberation and redemption!

As soon as you have resolved to escape from the collapse of the Darkness which embraces you firmly and pulls you down into the depths, there already comes with this resolution, like a flash of lightning, a ray from the Light and the Power to help you.

You have tied innumerable knots into the threads of your fate through your past wrong thinking, and through the actions that so pulled you down. But, held in the fist of the Darkness, you no longer thought of them at all, nor could you see or perceive them intuitively because they still lie *above* you, blocking your path and your connection with the Luminous Heights.

With your upward striving, however, you will naturally find them all again upon your path, and you must untie the knots one after the other so that your path will become free for ascent.

When it concerns the knots of your vanities and so much else,

then this seems to you like misfortune and sorrow, like anguish of the soul. In reality, however, it is the only possible way to liberation and salvation and simply cannot be otherwise, since you yourselves had prepared your path beforehand in this manner, and must now return along it if you wish to attain to the height again.

*Such* is the way towards your liberation and redemption, *such* is the path towards ascent into the Luminous Heights! It simply cannot be otherwise. And since you now find yourselves in Darkness it is natural that everything hampers and opposes you in the *very* moment when through your resolution you want to ascend into the Light!

You need only reflect a little in order to understand the correctness of the process and also to discover it on your own!

But very many think that at the moment of their volition to ascend everything must lie before them in sunshine and joy that they must succeed in everything without a struggle that their path must be immediately smoothed for them and that as a reward, immediately and without effort, sweet fruits will drop into their laps.

And if it turns out quite differently they will quickly tire in their volition, give up and sink lazily back into their old way, or even show hostility towards the person who pointed out to them the path leading to freedom, and who in their opinion caused them nothing but anxiety thereby.

*Such* is the majority of these earthmen! Stupid and lazy, presumptuous, demanding, and even expecting reward and gratitude when they *permit that the way be offered* to them which leads them out of the swamp in which they wallow sluggishly, finally to become engulfed therein.

But you who wish to fight for yourselves honestly, never forget that you are actually in the *Darkness*, where any good volition is immediately attacked.

Your surroundings will also quickly seek to claim rights on you if you dare to sever yourselves from them in order not to fall.

Although previously nobody ever bothered about what your

soul desired, no one paid any attention as to whether it was already close to dying of hunger or thirst, and although nobody proved willing to offer you refreshment, at the very moment you dare to place your foot on the only true path towards your redemption, *then* suddenly and quickly they make themselves heard so that you will not leave them.

Then they pretend to be worried about the welfare of your soul, although they gave proof more than once that your soul *and* your life on earth were really of utter indifference to them!

It is so conspicuous that it even borders on the ridiculous, as can be frequently observed, and it clearly shows that all these dear earthly relatives or other acquaintances are nothing but blind tools of the Darkness, whose urging they obey without being conscious of it. If you do not then listen to them they will show through their actions that it was *not* really worry about you which caused them to do such things, for real concern would contain love for one's neighbor. But love is not shown if they annoy you with deprecating remarks or spiteful talking about you, or even by seeking to harm you in some way or other.

Plainly and quickly hatred flares up also, which all that is dark harbors against anything striving for the Light! Observe this now and learn to recognize the Darkness *thereby*. It is just *by this* that you can also see that you have chosen the *right* path; for the Darkness *must reveal* itself in this way which is its way, and its alone!

You will easily learn to differentiate! And finally, the real hatred of the Darkness, and also of its slaves, is directed beyond you, towards Him who *is* the Word and offers It to human beings for their redemption!

Pay attention to this! For in this way you will now immediately recognize all the henchmen of Lucifer who have already been cast out in the Judgment.

Turn away from them, and no longer try to help them with the Word; for it shall no longer be offered to them! Henceforth you must *eliminate* them from It unless you yourselves want to

suffer harm through ill-considered accommodation.

Your love must be directed to the *Light* and for all those striving towards the Light through their pure and humble volition, but not for those who must be cast out of this Creation because they are harmful.

Above all the call is directed to *womanhood* once more! Through their more delicate intuitive perception womanhood has the ability to distinguish with infallible certainty what belongs to the Light and where there is still hope for it, and what has irretrievably surrendered to the Darkness and must perish with it according to the Holy Will of God!

For this, however, womanhood itself must first be purified and rise from the swamp into which it has frivolously led the whole of mankind! And only when vanity has fallen away from her will woman again be able to perceive intuitively in the *right* way.

Once again I accuse those women of all the developed ones, who were *too* eager to allow themselves to be tempted to descend from that step which the Creator graciously assigned to them, to spread ruination instead of God's blessing, and to distort all that is noble, which they were meant to support and *maintain* clear and free of blemishes.

She tore womanly dignity down into the dust! Her every thought, her every wish was subjugated to the most base calculation, and all the innate grace bestowed upon her as a gift by the Creator, in order thereby to keep awake the longing for the beauty of the Luminous Heights in human souls, and to arouse the urge to protect all that is pure, this inherently noble attractiveness, was scornfully dragged down into the deep mire by womanhood on earth in order sinfully to exploit it for *earthly aims* only!

I accuse! Never before has any creature of Creation sunk as deeply as has woman on earth!

The Holy Power of reciprocal action will now strike with unfettered force every woman who does not wish to awaken for pure and high activity, which the Creator's Grace once placed

in her hands and for which He equipped her!

It is womanhood, the woman, whom the Creator once chose to be the Guardian of the Flame of Holy Longing for the Light in all His Creations, for which purpose He endowed her with the most delicate intuitive sense! She came into existence in order to receive the radiations of the Light without hindrance, and to pass them on in the purest way to the man as well as to her particular surroundings.

For this reason she exerts her influence no matter where she may be. Through her nature she has been gifted for this. And she has used this Gift of Grace for the opposite end.

The influence given to her by God she exercises to attain selfish and often condemnable ends, instead of uplifting her surroundings and keeping the longing for the Light alive within the souls during their wandering through the dense planes which are to serve their development and maturing towards the Spiritual Height!

Thus she was meant to offer support and stability to the wanderers, through her being, and to keep open the connection to the Light, the Prime Source of all Life!

They could have already turned this earth into a gross-material paradise in the world of gross matter, vibrating joyously in the purest Will of the Almighty, the Eternal One!

The Guardian of the Flame of Holy Longing for the Light, however, has failed as no creature has ever failed before, because she was equipped with gifts the possession of which should never have allowed her to fall! And she has dragged down an entire part of the world with her into the swamp of Darkness!

However, she will experience *full* retribution for the unspeakably wicked conduct of staining even the *most pure* of which she was to remain the *guardian*!

The way is far and great the exertion which still lies before *that woman* who longs to co-operate in the future. And yet again the Grace of the increased strength will be given to her if only her volition is genuine! But she must not think it will be

easy.

The high distinction of once again being permitted to become the Guardian of the Longing for the Light, to keep it alive in the material world through the purity of her womanly dignity, *must be won by severe exertion* through perpetual alertness and unswerving faithfulness!

Wake up, woman of this earth! Become pure again and faithful in your thinking and your actions, and keep your entire volition firmly anchored in the Holiness of the Will of God! Wake up or cease to exist in the immutable Justice of the Lord! You shall not have the opportunity once again to harm the future human race on earth. The woman who will live in the Kingdom of the Millennium here on earth must become an absolutely pure guardian of the souls' holiest longing for the Light! In God's All-Holy Power!

AMEN.

---

## The Power of the Language.

I have already made known how important and meaningful the *human word* is in the weaving of this Creation, in the realm of the gross material planes.

But men have not grasped *how* far the formative influence extends, and how devastating negligence can be. Not only does the individual word itself have a strong influence and a forming effect on your environment, but so does the way in which you arrange and connect the words, and your effort you make in pronouncing them.

Thus your manner of speaking has a powerful effect on your environment. You know that *everything* issues from the Word! In the beginning was the *Word!* I have already pointed this out. Although the statement refers to the *Word of God*, which bears within it most Holy Primordial Creative Powers, a certain *formative* albeit not a *creative* power also vibrates in the human word, which along with man himself only came into being through the Word of God. This formative power reaches into fine gross matter, and from there back into the world of gross matter.

Therefore, pay closer attention to the way you speak! Place your words so that they vibrate correctly in the Law of Creation and thus remain in harmony. The consistent, even rhythm of all of the cyclic movements in Creation must ring in your sentences if you wish to develop your speech into *that power* which was given to you by God!

I will help you to recognize the danger of negligence, so that together with me you may faithfully fulfill the Lord's command, which is meant for the days of the Judgment and which you have known for a long time already in the words: "*Everything must become new!*"

*Everything*, not only some things! And since only that which is *wrong* needs to become new, these words state clearly and distinctly that now *everything*, without exception, is wrong; otherwise it need not become new. *Everything!* Here this word is not to be regarded as an everyday word, but it is *a command from God*, to be taken in its fullest sense, *unabbreviated*, without qualification; for otherwise it would not have been used for this.

And it is just *this* which you have hitherto not been willing to grasp properly in its entire seriousness, and about which you still think much too superficially. Without exception, your great volition *suffers from this*, and this alone holds you back from taking *that* step which is absolutely necessary, without which you would not be able to fulfill even a portion of the *earthly* tasks that are approaching, and without which your development cannot be completed.

This step, so decisive for everything, is: to leave behind you *all* the old, indeed *everything*, and not to try to carry any of it over into the new, or to mingle it with what is new! Any attempt to accept and bring to life within yourselves that which is new is hopeless and in vain from the beginning if you would leave even a speck of the old clinging to you. Whether that be what is old in your concepts or your abilities, in what you have learned or in your opinions. The new will come to you only when *all* that is old has been pushed away.

Your next necessary duty is to attune yourselves to the *New!* You will ask what this New is, with the comment that you are gladly willing to attune yourselves to it if only you can first recognize it aright!

To this I respond: you do know much of the New, but still you stubbornly hold fast to the Old and in many cases *only grudgingly* offer *a hand* to the New! Or we could put it more mildly: you approach the New with an inner reluctance. I could name many, many things. Whether it be only the sense of family in its old form, or a propensity for fashion that you do not under any circumstances want to abandon completely, or

... actually, it is pretty much everything wherein you still connect the Old with the New, even with the best of intentions to *accept* the New.

As it is in this instance so is it also in a *thousand* things that are considered trivial, yet which will turn out to be decisive in a totally unforeseen severity. Therefore never regard anything as being too inconsequential, for as it could unexpectedly cause you the worst disappointments!

I mention these outward things only incidentally; because they can still be easily changed, even though in many cases they do now hamper the joyful upwardly swinging development. What is damaging though are the old *concepts* which still rest in people in thousands of forms, even in you who are to be the first amongst all people who must become new.

And over and over again you take the wrong path in this, the path that can *never* lead to the goal!

Yes, you know much of the New, which may seem small to you, but which is of decisive significance. Time and again, however, you seek to smuggle some of the Old into the New in pathetic self-delusion and with wretched excuses! This however closes you off from the most necessary of all the steps that can lead you to success, the first step of courageously throwing the Old overboard, of *shattering* all the old forms to begin with, without mercy toward yourselves, so as *then* to be able to receive the New!

You will never succeed in adding anything of the new to even the minutest part of one of the old forms, in the delusion of *thus* becoming new!

You will not even be able to recognize the New aright, much less comprehend it, until you *first* have completely crushed and left behind you all of the Old. This is the basic requirement for becoming new for each individual and the basic requirement for all of mankind.

Only after the complete destruction of old concepts, which have *all* been wrong, can genuine recognition and comprehension of the New and the Right offered by God arise!

Especially in this there are no transitions, no leading out of, but something *new* must arise in the Creative Omnipotence of God, a complete rebirth, which however cannot be a *transformation* of what is false, for this would enable much of what is false to grow up again with renewed vigor like a weed.

First grasp *this as of the greatest importance* for you, and seek to fulfill it *completely; then*, but not before, can the *new* arise within you! Only then will you be able to understand it without running the risk of slipping back once more into the old.

I will try to help you, for I see that although you are not lacking in great volition, and zeal to absorb the new, yet you cannot bring yourselves really to abandon the old *completely*, because of the risk of at first being called strange in your concepts among your fellow-men.

And this fear, which you will not admit to yourselves, it *does* exist in very many cases. This fear alone often makes you hesitate to fulfill my Word in these matters! You think that you might *attract too much attention* in this or that, and you find all sorts of objections for yourselves as comforting excuses for not fulfilling my Word and my command *as completely* as would be necessary for the Holy Victory of the Light here on earth!

Out of consideration for people, and to avoid other inconveniences, you narrow the scope of your fulfillment, forgetting that if only a small part of the whole is missing, it is *no fulfillment at all!*

You will *never* become the laughing stock of men if you fulfill *completely* what is demanded of you from the Light! But you shall perish along with mankind and your errors if you wish to take men into consideration.

Indeed, you are to *go before* all mankind as examples! You must not wait until the old collapses of itself, in order to then willingly join all that is new, but you must begin with it *even now on yourselves!*

And it is for this purpose that you *are meant to* attract attention, it is intended that all men shall speak of you!

If this were not the case, then there would be no difference. But the absence of such a *striking* difference, be it in your attire, in your work, or in your being, could only indicate to you that like the others you still stand in the old, in the false, and that so far you have not succeeded in rising above it!

Yet if *you* act like this, what do you expect from *others* who have to stand further away from the Light on earth and who did not receive the power that was given to you!

With my help, you shall now begin! For this purpose I will lift veil after veil from the mysteries of the working of the Divine Laws in Creation, which in spite of repeated hints still do not seem sufficiently clear to you, for you place too little value on them. Today take my reference to the *human word*, by means of which you have gradually developed your languages!

The Word was formed within the Law, and therefore bears much greater significance within itself than you dare to assume. For this reason, I have already shown you the dangers of idle chatter or malicious talk, and mentioned the fruits that must grow from out of such things through the effects of the Primordial Laws of Creation, for the individual as well as for nations and races.

But this influence of every single word extends much further, even into apparently minute details. Therefore only *that* nation will reach a *permanent* height whose language swings in the rhythm of the Divine Laws of Creation! Permanent however, only if their language always continues to vibrate in this rhythm, and if it does not permit itself to be forced out by affectation and sophistries.

You may already have an inkling of the wickedness that has been committed, what stagnation has been caused *through this alone* in the developmental cycle of so many people.

At first the gradual development of expressive sounds into a language proceeded more or less uniformly, and in harmony with the Laws of Nature.

Then everything was right, and remained so until here also the intellect interfered, completely distorting and disrupting the pure vibration.

But you must not think too superficially about this! The most primitive peoples with only a few expressive sounds may vibrate much more harmoniously in the Laws than the most intellectual peoples with their affected manner of conversing amongst themselves, or of voicing their opinion.

What matters is not the plenitude of forms of expression as such, but it is the way in which they are used and the combination and sequencing of the individual words which produce the right or wrong vibration and bring about its consequences. This, however, is now just as distorted and therefore *wrong* as is everything the human spirit has formed for itself in recent times.

However, you cannot *learn* to distinguish in this, you can only *perceive* the distinction *intuitively!* This you can accomplish only when you have reawakened your *intuitive perception* and given it free rein *within yourselves!*

However, I will give you a hint which you can use as a touchstone. Already for centuries the Light has been making preparations for the coming of a Light Messenger here on earth, in *everything* needed to help Him in His task.

So also the *language* which He needed for the Message from the Light, in order to make it accessible in earthly clarity to this mankind on earth.

For this purpose a language had to be prepared on earth to swing as purely as possible in the Primordial Laws of Creation, whose expression cannot again be distorted later on, so that the Message will remain pure for all time!

For this purpose the German language has already for centuries been carefully developed to a perfection that united with the harmonious vibration of this Creation, thereby being able to absorb the strongest Power of the Light, and also to transmit it undimmed.

This is why the Message from the Light is now laid down in the *German* language, for no other language could have rendered it with such clarity and severity without constricting it, in so far as it is at all possible to compress the *Living Word* into a gross material form!

Through preparations, carried out over centuries by many people; quite specially chosen and blessed for this, the German language provided at least the *possibility* that now the Bringer of the Living Word of God can make use of this language, in order to fulfill His task here on earth using this language.

For this reason, the German language of my Message, in the structure of sentences and the placement of words, is the only *exemplary* mode of expression for all time to come, because of its *pure* vibration in the Laws of Creation!

In its form and mode of expression it can and *must* one day serve as the model for teaching the German language as it develops towards its peak. This language must be made use of later on by the *leading* people on this earth, because *only* in *this* and in no other form does it contain the highest up-building and sustaining capability, which receives all of the powerful helps from out of the weaving of Creation!

Now make clear to yourselves what this means. The language in *this* form creates the greatest powers, thereby molding and forming your environment, and most of all forming it *correctly* in accordance with your Creator's Will, which is always and *only* for your greatest benefit, for peace and for happiness.

If you again distort this specific form of the language it will then no longer create *that* strength of all the powers, and will in turn make nothing but distorted forms.

Therefore, strive to grasp the language aright, and use it intuitively *in its natural rhythm*, in everything you think or form into speech. You will thereby be a *furthering influence* in the world of matter, for pure forms can be fashioned only with *pure language!*

This *pure form* in the vibration of Creation is given to you through the Message as a model! Preserve it for humanity and guard it faithfully. Never let it become distorted. Try and make this way your own, and you will *then* work successfully on earth through your exemplary life, for the benefit of all peoples!

Thus it will readily become clear to you that dialects of a language are *wrong*, and are bound to bring nothing but harm, because such a language lacks the purity which as always can only manifest *in perfection*.

The reason for any dialect is either negligence, which has debased the original purity of the language through letting oneself go, or it is due to a standstill on one of the necessary and natural steps of development of the particular language, a lack of moving forward, a resistance to the Law of Perpetual Development, toward the highest blossom of purity in all things, including that of the language.

Either possibility is reprehensible and *contrary* to the Primordial Law of Creation, as is also the *tenacious clinging* to and cultivation of dialects either from affectionate respect or...from lazy habit. *Everything* is wrong in this respect, no matter what the motives! And since what is wrong can never be constructive, but only harmful, or at least obstructive, which in itself is harmful, it must gradually be avoided, so that in the future man will work only for the good of Creation, and no longer remain harmful.

Thus also the cultivating of a dialect constitutes a clinging to the imperfect, which in turn can form only what is imperfect. And it *forms* and moulds in *any* case; no matter whether you thoughtlessly cultivate a dialect or decide to do so deliberately, it forms *with* or *without* your volition. And since, in accordance with their own nature they can form only something *imperfect*, dialects are harmful, never beneficial!

Consider what you are doing thereby and act accordingly. The effects may become *devastating*.

It is often said that there is a close relationship between the languages and the *nature* of men, and this is correct. However,

this is evident not only among different nations, but even among the German people itself, with all the dialects and various ways of speaking a uniform language!

Yet, it is not the nature of the people that moulds this manner of speaking, but rather the manner of speaking that moulds the people! The power to form and to mould rests only in the word, in the *language*, or more precisely in the way the language is spoken by the people! The very marked and striking characteristics of different groups of human beings who speak different dialects have only emerged from these dialects. In the course of time the people have developed their special characteristics through these dialects, not vice versa.

A clumsy dialect will form a clumsy people, a graceful dialect, which, however, does not exist since only a perfected language can really be graceful, can never bring forth clumsy, ungainly people, while a superficial way of speaking will produce superficial human beings.

Thus any person who is willing to learn from these things can easily enough make observations in detail. You will soon recognize the unimagined power in the influence which your human words have on the entire world of matter especially in its reciprocal effect upon your immediate environment.

However, not only can you see these consequences in the world of gross matter, but soon you will be able to recognize currents invisible to the physical eye. If your speech is in perfect harmony with the rhythm of Creation, harmony will in time manifest around you, and beauty and gracefulness will arise and blossom therein.

But the greatest beauty and the utmost gracefulness are immediately marred by a dialect or poor diction. It lacks *purity*, and this makes itself felt!

Were I to speak in greater detail of these things, the explanations would be endless, but these brief remarks will probably suffice to enable you to advance further in your observations, investigations and recognitions on your own. You will find confirmation everywhere in your experiences.

Yet there is almost nothing where you do not try with cheerful volition once more to interweave old things into the new that I have already given you! Namely advice that I have often given to you in the form of small requests.

Again and again you overlook what I have so often mentioned: True greatness lies in small and simple things!

And since in many small and simple things you try tenaciously to cling to the old, perhaps thoughtlessly so, with your gaze directed only towards great and distant things, in this way you will never actually be able to begin on the great things, or on that which seems so great to you, and which in reality is only the result of all that is small.

Therefore exert yourselves first to find the basic faults in all that is distorted. Remove these first of all, break away from them, and in them shatter all that is old, so that you may then fully grasp the new without tarnishing it with remnants from the old, which must no longer exist, in accordance with God's holy command!

You will often find the key to the greatest things in what appears to be small and insignificant. This is the result of the great simplicity of the Laws of God. Therefore become *simple* in your intuitive perception and you will very quickly obtain clarity about everything and cannot possibly go astray as you have done in the past. But it is time, high time, for this if you wish to fulfill in the All-Holy Power of God; for without simplicity you cannot receive It, much less make use of It!

---

## The Living Word (Pentecost 1935).

Pentecost! Only a few days ago we celebrated the Festival, which is the actual Pentecost, the Festival of the Holy Dove, of the Outpouring of God's Holy Power into this Creation! It is renewal, preservation, and restoration to health!

The fact that in the future this Festival can continue to exist for you on earth, the fact that this earth does not have to perish in the Judgment along with so many other celestial bodies, is owing only to the great Love of God, who helped you at the very last moment, after your false volition had already forced everything towards that end.

The time will yet come when you human beings will grasp what a sacrifice was needed, for this to save you from certain destruction. Today you cannot yet grasp it. You still cannot comprehend *what* was done for you by the Light. It stands far above all human understanding.

But you can *thank* God the Lord for His inconceivable goodness, which can be recognized daily and hourly throughout your entire existence, if only you honestly wish to! Therefore your whole life shall become gratitude!

Your whole life gratitude! If you take these words in their usual sense, in the way men think of them, it would become wearisome to give thanks continually; for man pictures a stringing together of many prayers of thanks.

But that is not what is meant. The most beautiful gratitude is pure joy! If men would live according to the Will of God they could find nothing but joy on their wanderings through the worlds of matter! That there is also sorrow is the fault of men alone, for sorrow is alien to the Light.

Men have created the darkness and thus the misery for themselves, and in their rigid obstinacy have become so

entangled in it that in the end it is no longer even possible for them to find the paths that could lead them out of it.

Under the influence of men's wrong volition the world of matter has not become a paradise but only a maze, out of which no human soul could find its way. Moreover, the faults have multiplied, and their consequences have brought about a great increase in evil volition. The start of every good volition was held fast in the jungle of distorted conceptions, and its growth was stunted so that it soon had to wither away.

Such was the picture when the Will of God descended into the worlds of matter to give final aid to those who have a deep inner longing for it.

However, you have pictured it all much too superficially, for men are very strange in this respect. Either they are quick to repudiate everything sent by the Light with their arrogant know-it-all attitude, or they go to the other extreme, and, like those of blind faith, expect fantastic impossibilities that lie outside the range of the Divine Laws of Creation.

Therefore they are very disappointed and even lapse easily into disbelief again, when so many things do not happen as *they* thought they would. They can become as unreasonable in their self-inflicted disappointments as they previously were in their blind faith, and turn into the greatest enemies of everything which, in their opinion, has disappointed them. In this they are capable of doing incredible things, although such actions are completely groundless and childish, utterly unworthy of a human being.

They have no desire to understand that there is a precisely *ordered* and *firmly structured* activity in Creation in accordance with the Will of God, Which is immutable, but imagine that God can arbitrarily overthrow and change His own Laws therein at any moment. They do not pause to think that with such an attitude they plainly admit either their doubt in the Eternal Perfection of God, or their own incredible narrow-mindedness, which can only be called wicked indolence of spirit, or stupidity arising from laziness.

With high-sounding words they try to base their arguments on the fact that in Creation, everything is subject to continuous change. This is quite true, but these changes manifest in the logical development and flourishing of what already exists, on the basis of the Laws of Creation, which have an impelling effect, while nonetheless remaining immutable and forever unchanging. Thus the big words are nothing but empty chatter and in careless superficiality are used without being thought through.

With words men scatter immense treasures like children at play, without themselves grasping these values. Therefore, they use the words wrongly and give them false interpretations.

They do not see the Truth contained in them, because they read and hear in them only *that* which *they* wish. In their indolent self-complacency they are not in the least willing to dig deeply and make every effort to understand *that* which the words are meant to express and which they do express clearly enough.

Even among *you*, many still lack the *right* understanding of this, because *after all*, you still have not penetrated deeply enough into my Message to envisage the Perfection of the Almighty Creator in its fundamental inviolability and immutability, wherein lies the unfathomable greatness in such clear simplicity as the human spirit *does not want* to realize.

However, you must always base your *entire* thinking, your investigation and your interpretation of *every* happening, strictly upon the immutability that lies in the perfection of the Divine and self-acting Laws of this Creation. Otherwise you can never advance, and must go astray!

It is therefore appropriate, especially today, for me to lift a little of the veil that still shrouds the magnitude of the sacrifice which Parzival made for your redemption and liberation. You probably think that perhaps His hardest task was His struggle with Lucifer, which ended in the chaining of Lucifer. However, that is not so. His most difficult task was *to*

*clear the paths for you out of the maze that you had cultivated through your errors!*

Even though this is only a small part of His work of redemption, nevertheless if you try to grasp just a little of *that* as it actually was, then you cannot do otherwise than to thank God unceasingly in the life that has been granted to you.

Simply imagine this: Issuing from the Light, and again taking upon Himself all of the hardships of a journey into the dense worlds of matter, which He had taken for mankind once before, Parzival came to this earthly globe, which had sunk so deeply through the guilt of man.

Coming from the Light, He did not know what faults and sorrow were, although He had already once become acquainted with the hatred of men; for the Light knows neither sorrow nor faults. Ignorant of such things, He stood at first in the midst of these human beings and their utterly distorted and false concepts. Under the domination of Lucifer *everything* around him was false, alienated from the Light, and everything was therefore strange and cold to Him, even hostile and ugly.

Now you probably think that He need only have shown the way to the Luminous Heights in order to give men what they needed for their redemption. You imagine that He had only to proclaim the Word of God as *It is!*

But men could not have done anything with *It*, for they were completely entangled in their faults, and were no longer able to lift their gaze upwards unless the path thereto was first *cleared* for them, revealing the way out, through which they could once more behold the promising Light.

Therefore, *the way* in which Parzival brought the Word to mankind was *crucial!* He had to give the Holy Word a form *suitable* for men in their distress; for the Word as such they had, at least in part, already received through Jesus. But they were no longer able to bring it to life within themselves, for they found no way of doing so. The interpretations of the churches, formed only for the purpose of their own earthly power, were much too weak to be of real help.

*The Word!* You too do not yet know how to think aright therein, for like all the others you forget what the Word of which I always speak really is. You know, of course, that It is the Living Word, but you still do not have the right conception of It.

As Jesus once said of the Word: *I am the Word!* So I say to you again today: *I give myself to you in my Word!* For in truth I, too, am the Word Itself! You were already told a long time ago: In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word!

It should be clear enough to you if Jesus then spoke to His disciples: *I am the Word* and in the Word I give myself to you! And today I repeat: I am the Word Itself which I give to you!

Just think about it calmly and thoroughly, you *have* to find what this contains.

*If I were to give the Word to mankind without forming It for them, they would not understand me!* Impress this on yourselves in flaming letters, for the Word lives, It is Life *Itself*, and in Its primordial state It is, without a form that is visible and perceptible to you. *It is!*

If, however, I wish to make It accessible to men, which means to form It so they can *understand* it, I must transform It from Its original state into one that man can comprehend. The form must be given *in such a way* as to be of use to *them*. And no one could form the Holy Word, which is God, other than the Word Itself!

And no one else can make It accessible to you in Its full power! This is to say, you would not be able to bear Its full power. Therefore you receive the Word in a form which has been prepared solely for you, you men, and which contains exactly as much power as you need for yourselves and can bear if you are open for it; for without opening yourselves to it you can receive none of the power, because your *volition*, which is equal to a petition for it, is needed for its reception.

How often do you still toy with the Holy Word in your thoughts, without really knowing what you are doing thereby.

How often has it already been called out to this mankind that, in crucifying Jesus, they nailed the Word to the Cross. However, they still continue to crucify the Word, every day anew, by daring to distort It or to interpret It only according to their own will in order to make It useful in serving some of their desires, useful in Its effect upon men!

But who considers that bitter vengeance will be exacted on the wicked who have dared to perpetrate such trespasses and that there can be no forgiveness for it! And if it was written: "Vengeance is mine! *I* will repay!" Then this applies here to its fullest extent; for the Word which earthmen have abused in thousands of ways has been the *Living* Word, is God Itself!

Never forget what the Word *is*, the Word, which I give you in *that* form which is necessary for you, and accept it as *nourishment for your spirit*, for it is the food it needs, the drink it thirsts for, without which it cannot exist! Do not seek yet again to devalue the Word through your earthly intellect! It would then never be given to you again. *Preserve* It so that It cannot be lost to you!

The Living Word of my Message is not the human expressions and sentences I use, but It is something by Itself, intangible to you, which I put into it, and which is able to enter into you through *these forms* if you open yourselves to It.

I only use your expressions and sentences as a kind of channel through which I guide the Living Word to your spirit, which alone is capable of receiving It, so that thus strengthened it can then burst all the fetters of the lurking evil.

And this impalpable life which your spirit is to drink with these word-forms and sentences *is a part of myself*, which I give you therewith, so that you may continue to live in the Grace of God!

Now you are bound to become more familiar with the fundamental necessity for Parzival to dwell on earth for a long time amongst men without being recognized by them, if humanity was to receive help once more through the *Word*.

And only the Word could give the help, because salvation lies solely in the *awakening* of a human spirit, which must be followed by recognition. The Law of God has provided no other way than this one way of inviolable justice!

For this reason Jesus once spoke: no one comes to the Father but through me! That is through the *Word*, since He came out of God and therefore also had to be the *Word*. And thus, once again, the Word came to the earth for the purpose of salvation in the *Will* of God, which, like the Love of God, *is the Word!*

Now if Parzival wished to find a proper *form* for the Word, which could *help* men on earth, He Himself had first to understand the *nature* of men, with all their faults and distorted conceptions. He first had to seek the root of all the evil in men in order to discover and clear the paths, *through the form* into which he put the Word, the ways which would really be helpful to men, provided they were willing to follow them.

This, however, He could not do until He had become *knowing* in all their faults and all their weaknesses!

An Envoy from the Light can never attain to this knowledge by observation or questioning, but only through personal *experience* because faults, weaknesses, evil and distortions are absolutely alien to the Light and will ever remain so. It can never be understood by an Envoy of the Light.

Thus it was *this* part of His mission that was the hardest for Parzival. If He wanted to *help*, only one thing remained for Him to do: He had to live for a time as a man among men, unaware of His origin or His mission; for otherwise there would never have been *experiencing!* Not only that, but He also had to come into direct contact with all the faults of this humanity, had to suffer them personally, so that through this *personal suffering* He could at least attain to a *knowledge* of them. He could never reach *true understanding*, for the distortion of human opinions and human laws would always remain alien and false to His nature and origin. For this reason He was also unable to think or to act in accordance with

the erroneous human laws. Although living on this earth, He could only carry out the *Laws of God*, to which many of the legal concepts of an extremely depraved and narrow-minded mankind were frequently opposed and hostile.

This naturally meant continual strife, worry, and suffering in earthly matters for the Stranger from the Light, who was unaware of His Mission during the necessary difficult time of learning in the stomping ground of all that is dark. .

He was therefore ruthlessly drawn into the maelstrom, which led Him *through* everything that was wrong among men. Not just *close* to everything, for that would not have sufficed; but He had to become personally involved in everything, so that amid this horrible entanglement He would recognize all the evils one by one, and through His own suffering find a way which would offer *human beings* a possibility of escaping from those fatal clutches. He was obliged first to walk the road of salvation *personally*, *thereby* blazing the way for mankind, every single one, in order then to show them in the Word *how* they can struggle to free themselves from all these evils.

For this reason He could be spared nothing, because He had to become familiar with everything that oppresses and torments human beings, and pulls them away from the Light!

Thus, *every* earthly evil was put in His way so that by suffering it Himself He would overcome it first; in overcoming it He had at the same time to tear out each particular root and trample it, and prepare the path which would lead men on toward the Light.

Thus, as He suffered among and through mankind, He had to *struggle to free this* same mankind from all the things they were using against Him, by recognizing the evil and being the *First* to walk the road of deliverance from it. With the recognition of each evil by Parzival its power was broken, and the foundation was laid for help for the humanity standing and sinking therein.

*That* was the greatest and the *hardest* sacrifice He made for men on earth, and yet, ironically enough, it is just because of

*that* time on earth that men, from out of the Darkness, seek to reproach Him! They seek to use just this hardest part of the Mission which He fulfilled through His own suffering *for the sake of men*, for the purpose of pulling Him down and defiling Him in the most disgusting way.

It was precisely *all of those things* which He suffered for them, in order to be able at the appointed hour really to help them from His own personal experience with His counsel, which needed to be born of experience. *All those things* were used again and again by the willing tools of the Darkness to discredit Him in the most ignoble manner, in order to keep or turn away others from the path to Salvation, by seeking to undermine their trust and faith in the Savior and His Mission.

This however, is the *greatest* guilt with which men burden themselves and which cannot be forgiven!

Try to imagine what it means, what it *is*, to have to get to know, *all* of the human faults and weaknesses on earth through *personal* experiences within a few decades! Try to imagine the situations that arise when *all* the consequences of men's false and distorted conceptions have to be fully experienced, in order to find a possible way of breaking free from them, and then to give it to mankind in a suitable form of the Word, for on their own they would never have been able to achieve this.

Try also to imagine how it feels to be reviled for these very things by the evil-minded. It is no different from how the Son of God, Jesus, once felt when He was accused of blasphemy and rebellion, and was crucified, He who Himself was in God and God also in Him! He who had already suffered enough for the sake of mankind, who had come only for their sake, to bring help in the Word before it was too late!

Had Parzival not taken *this* suffering upon Himself in order to bring help to the fallen and erring mankind, by finding the saving *form* for the Holy Word which men need in their distress, so that they can once again tread the path to the Luminous Height, they would never again have been able

gratefully to celebrate the true Pentecost after the Holy Judgment, which will soon descend upon the earth in order to balance all the old in the Justice of the Lord!

Therefore, give thanks to the Creator, your God, for once more graciously stretching out His Hand to you so that you need not be lost! Rejoice in His Power, which He has once again bestowed upon you, and live gratefully according to the Word in His Honor! For in the Word I give you the way, the nourishment, and the strength, and therewith you have *everything* you need for your existence and for your ascent! The Word however, I am *myself*, and with It you receive a part of me into your spirit!

AMEN.

---

## Sense of Family.

**T**he intimate home! These words vibrate in a way which indicates *what* a home that man establishes for himself here on the earth must be like.

The *expression* is quite right, as is everything given to men by the Word, but here again man in his decline has distorted the clear meaning and dragged it down with him into the dirt.

In this way, man deprived himself of one foothold after another, which could have offered him support during his life on earth. Due to men's wrong way of thinking, all that was originally pure was badly obscured, and frequently even wantonly changed into a slough which developed into a mass grave for souls.

This also includes the sense of family in its *present* form which has so often been praised in song and held up as being something noble and of high character, of especially high value, as something proffering man great support, strengthening and furthering him and making him a respectable citizen on earth, capable of stepping out secure and protected for his struggle for existence, as men like to call life on earth today.

But how foolish you are, you men, how narrowly you have constricted your outlook on everything, particularly on that which concerns *you* and your wanderings through the Creations.

It is just this sense of family, so highly valued by you, which is one of those graves that, with great certainty, demands and receives innumerable victims; for through the unwritten laws of human customs, many people are unscrupulously flung into it and held fast there by a thousand arms until, their souls withering piteously, they adapt themselves defenselessly to the indolent mass, which drags them along into the depths of dull impersonality!

And, strangely enough: it is precisely all of those people who tenaciously try to cling to such wrong forms who imagine they thereby stand before God as being especially valuable. But I say to you that they must be counted among the worst vermin, who *impede* instead of further the development and strengthening of many human spirits!

Tear open the gates of your intuitive perception at last, so that you may now recognize for yourselves the wrong that has lodged itself into *all* matters and customs which man made for himself, for he formed them under the domination of the distorted intellect led by Lucifer!

I will try to give you a picture which can bring you nearer to an understanding. It is closely connected with the great and lawful cyclical movement in Creation which, propelled by the Law of Movement, is to keep everything healthy, because only in proper movement can strength and vigor be maintained.

Let us assume for the moment that things on earth are *as they should be*, and not as they are now. Then all that is spiritual on earth would resemble a clear liquid, which is and remains in perpetual cyclical movement, so that it does not thicken or even rigidify.

Also think of a lively, babbling brook. How delicious is its water, how refreshing and invigorating, offering refreshment to all who are thirsty, thereby bringing joy and dispensing blessing along the course it pursues.

But if here and there a small part separates from this water, leaping to the side independently, then in most cases the part which has severed itself soon becomes stagnant as a small pool. Through its isolation it quickly loses its freshness and clarity and gives off a stale smell, because without movement it gradually becomes putrid, it is bound to become bad and foul.

It is exactly the same with the spiritual swinging of men on earth. As long as it circulates harmoniously according to the Law of Movement, without any blockage or haste, it will also develop beneficially to quite unsuspected strength, and consequently to continual ascent, for it is simultaneously

furthered by every species of vibration in the entire Creation with nothing obstructing it, but everything uniting joyously, only helping and strengthening its working.

Such was once the swinging a long, long time ago, and with healthy ease and naturalness every human spirit developed joyfully and rose ever higher in his recognition. He gratefully absorbed all the rays that could be sent from the Light to help him. And thus a fresh stream of spiritual power of the Living Water flooded as far down as the earth, from where it peacefully streamed back again to the Source of Preservation, in the form of grateful worship and as the outflow of continual experiencing.

Glorious thriving was the consequence everywhere, and like songs of jubilation in the happy, unhindered rotation of that harmonious movement, spontaneous chords of undimmed purity resounded throughout the entire Creation.

This is how it was until man's vanity began to introduce distortions of recognitions through the formation of wrong basic conceptions. This brought about disturbances in the wonderfully intertwined working of all the rays in Creation which through their continual intensification must finally force the collapse of everything that closely united with them.

In addition to many other things these disturbances also include the present-day rigid sense of family in its wrong form and its almost unbelievable expansion.

You only need to form a picture of it. There was harmonious swinging and rotating of the upward striving Spiritual, which radiated around the earth, invigorating it and, together with the Animistic, penetrated it with light and blessings, permeating and drawing it along upwards in strong longing for the Light, until suddenly there formed obstructions through small solidifications which rotated along only sluggishly. It is like a soup which is cooling off, where the fat congeals and separates. Perhaps you can understand it even better when I compare the process with unhealthy blood which thickens here and there, and which can only flow sluggishly through the body, thus hampering the necessary preservative pulsation.

This picture will enable you better to recognize the fundamental, serious significance of the *spiritual* pulsation in Creation, which, as a minor reflection, finds its coarsest expression in the blood of the physical body. You can understand this more clearly than the illustrations of the soup and the gurgling brook.

Another comparison which may also help is that of disturbing grains of sand being thrown into a well-oiled machine.

As soon as the sense of family, which in itself is quite natural, develops in unsound and wrong ways, it is bound to have a hampering and debasing effect in the necessary swinging of the Law of Movement of joyful upward striving; for the present idea of family cohesion is only based on upbringing, and on the preservation of *gross material* advantages and comforts and nothing else.

Thus there gradually arose family clumps, which due to their peculiar characteristics simply cannot be called anything different, and which burden and paralyze all spiritual swinging. For those who are part of them form mutual *ties and attachments*, with the resulting gravity holding and dragging them down ever further.

They make themselves dependent upon each other, and gradually lose the distinct *individuality* which distinguishes them as spiritual beings and obligates them as such.

With this they heedlessly push aside the command contained for them in the Will of God, and turn themselves into some kind of group souls, which due to their nature they can never really become.

Everyone interferes in another's path, often even trying to take control, thereby tying untearable, binding knots that chain them all to each other and hold them down.

They make it difficult for the individual to sever himself from these knots when his spirit awakens, and to stride on his own along the path on which he can develop and which fate also prescribes for him. Thus it becomes impossible to free himself from his karma for the God-willed ascent of his spirit.

As soon as he wishes to undertake only the first step on that path to the freedom of his spirit, which will be the right one only *for him* and *his* particular nature, but not at the same time for all those who call themselves members of the family, then there is an immediate outcry, together with admonitions, petitions, reproaches or even threats from all those who seek to pull this “ungrateful one” back into the constraint of their family love or concepts!

What have men done and evoked in this, namely where the most precious things a man possesses are concerned, such as the God-given, necessary power of decision-making of his free will in *spiritual* matters, for which *he alone* and nobody else in his place is held responsible by the Law of Reciprocal Action.

It is the Will of God that man develops absolutely an individuality of *his own*, with a most distinct sense of his responsibility for his thoughts, volition and actions! However, the possibilities for developing one’s own personality for the strengthening of an independent decision-making capacity, and above all the necessary steeling of the spirit and the preservation of its mobility for constant wakefulness, all of which can arise only as a result of being self-reliant, *all this becomes utterly lost in the fettered sense of family*. It dulls and suffocates the budding and joyful blossoming of what is most precious in man, of that which distinguishes him from other gross material creatures as a human being, that which is the *individual personality*, for which his spiritual origin qualifies and destines him.

It cannot develop; for if the sense of family is of an *unattractive* kind, if it lays claim to rights which do not really exist at all, then it often becomes a terrible torture, ruptures the peace and destroys all happiness. The consequence is that eventually any buoyancy dissipates.

Call up *those* people who already had to suffer under this and whose souls languished thereby, their numbers will be almost beyond counting!

And when the love of earthmen, or at least the feeling which earthmen call love, wafts in well-meaning ways through the sense of family, then this is not much better; for then everyone constantly tries to make everything as comfortable as possible for the other, and to spare him just that which would force his spiritual powers to develop... out of love, solicitude, or family duty.

And persons whose every path is smoothed are often envied, and perhaps even hated on account of it! In reality, however, they are only to be pitied; for the love so wrongly directed, or the customs of a sense of family applied in the wrong way, should never be considered a blessing; instead they have the effect of a slow poison which with infallible certainty prevents the powers of those concerned from developing, thereby only weakening their spirits.

The temporarily imposed compulsion, which is provided for in the natural course of things, is thus taken away from men. This compulsion, however, challenges the development of all of their spiritual powers, and in just this way offers the best and surest aid for their spiritual development, as a Grace of the Omnipotent Creator in which great blessings for the preservation and furthering of everything are contained.

Today's generally-known and highly valued sense of family in its wider meaning is like a dangerous sleeping potion for every human spirit, tiring and paralyzing him. It obstructs and hinders the necessary spiritual ascent, because the individual members of the family are spared the very things that can help to gain inner strength. Spiritually weary hothouse plants are raised and cultivated, but not strong spirits.

A thousandfold are the kinds of harmful, hampering customs and the evil consequences following in the wake of the wrongly-applied sense of family. You shall yet learn to recognize them very quickly and easily once you become capable of considering everything from the right point of view, which must bring life and movement into this hitherto sluggish mass of languid family clumps. These family clumps wallow about, dam and

block the God-willed circulation of healthy spiritual movement, which accords with the Laws of Creation, paralyzing and poisoning all joyous vitality, while at the same time embracing as with a thousand clutches the upward striving human spirits, so that they will not escape or disturb the long-standing routine and the self-complacent attitude of these family clumps.

You will realize with horror how you yourselves are still stuck in many such threads, similar to a fly caught in the web of a death-dealing spider.

Once you simply bestir yourselves, once you try to struggle free from this in order to attain to your God-willed spiritual independence, which is necessary since you alone have to bear responsibility, then you will realize with a shudder how far-reaching the effect of your mere attempt to bestir yourselves suddenly becomes. Only this way can you recognize how manifold are these threads into which you have been woven relentlessly, by wrong customs!

You will be seized by fear at this recognition, which you can only find through *experiencing*. However, you will get the experience quickly, it will flare up around you as soon as your surroundings see that you are *serious* about changing your way of thinking and intuitive perception, that your spirit wants to awaken and wander along its *own* paths, the paths which are ordained for its development, and also at the same time for its liberation and redemption as the reciprocal action arising out of former decisions.

You will be surprised, indeed bewildered, to see that they are perfectly willing to forgive you even the grossest fault, indeed everything, even the very worst, except the effort to become *spiritually* free and to have your own *personal* convictions in this matter! Even if you do not want to talk about it at all and leave others in peace, you will see that all this can change nothing, because they do not leave *you* in peace!

However, if you calmly observe and examine, it must only strengthen you through your recognition of all the wrong that people carry within themselves. For they *show* it very plainly by

the *way in which* they act in their sudden and newly-awakened zeal to hold you back. A zeal which only grows out of the disturbance brought about by something unaccustomed, and stems from the urge to remain in the accustomed lukewarmness and the desire not to be disturbed.

It is the fear *of* suddenly being confronted with a *truth*, which is utterly different from the one in which man hitherto lulled himself in indolent self-complacency.

In the next lecture I will explain *how* you are to act if you wish to swing harmoniously, i.e. in a furthering manner in the Laws of Creation.

---

## The intimate home.

A thousandfold are the entanglements in which men squirm with apparent ease. Only those who feel God's Law of spiritual movement within themselves, and who long for awakening, experience these fetters in an extremely painful manner, because they only hurt when the one so entangled tries to free himself from them.

And yet this struggle to free himself is the only thing that can save man from sinking into a spiritual sleep of death!

Today you will hardly grasp aright the full incisive truth of these my words, because mankind restricted themselves too tightly in these matters, leaving themselves hardly any possibility for a free outlook from this state, or a full understanding of it.

For this reason the bonds are now *cut* by the Justice of God, smashed to pieces, although this is bound to be very painful for men, excruciatingly so when there is no alternative. Only *after* the bonds and constrictions have been cut and have fallen away will you then be able to grasp my words aright, looking back in horror at your past wrong thinking!

Nevertheless, from among the many examples, I want to pick out a few small ones which may perhaps give you some idea if you already have truly internalized the Message; because without It, even the minutest understanding would be utterly impossible for you. It is only through the Message that you are now able to properly understand everything you encounter and that concerns you.

Let us cast a glance into human life as it is today:

It is right to guide children through their childhood faithfully, guarding and watching them, and to give adolescent youth the tools for their path through life on earth

by means of an appropriate education.

But then each individual must be left with, indeed he must be *given* the possibility to work *his own* way up from the smallest beginning. Not everything must be made easy for him from the very outset! And it must be the task of the leadership of a state to offer such possibilities.

In making things convenient or easy there lies the greatest danger of promoting spiritual indolence! And up until now this has always been the case in the well-intentioned sense of family.

It is already poison for a human spirit if as a child he is brought up in the belief that he has a legal right to the earthly possessions acquired by his parents.

I am speaking here of harm from a purely spiritual perspective, which is the *essential thing* in all of man's activities. He must remain aware of this in the future if he and his surrounding circumstances are to become really healthy.

A change in these matters would immediately transform much in an *earthly* respect as well, and it would do away with many an evil. For example, supposing that by law a child was *entitled* only to enjoy the protection and care of his parents, together with an appropriate education up to a certain age, after which, however, it remains purely up to the free will of the parents how they wish to dispose of their personal property.

How different would so many children turn out to be by this mere fact alone! How much more *personal* effort would then have to be made, how much more seriousness for life on earth, how much more diligence. And last but not least more love towards the parents would also be shown and could not remain nearly as one-sided as is often exhibited today.

Sacrifices on the part of loving parents would even be given much greater value, because they would then really issue only from freely bestowed love, whereas nowadays such sacrifices are often not valued by children at all, but are only expected and demanded and taken for granted, without being cable to arouse any real joy.

A change in these matters would contribute right away to raising more valuable human beings with greater self-confidence, a stronger spirit and higher energy.

Many crimes would also be avoided in the absence of rights of ownership in the personal property of others.

Children will be more concerned with acquiring their parents' love instead of insisting on their status and rights as a child, which in any case has an entirely different meaning from what it is assumed to be today. For children must be thankful to their parents for having given them the opportunity to incarnate on earth, even though redemption and advancement thereby are mutual, as is the case with everything connected with the effects of the Laws of God.

In reality these children are all spirits that are alien to their parents in any case, *each with its own individual personality*, which could only be attracted for incarnation through their homogeneity or through some former connection, as you know from the Message.

The parents on earth offer protection and help for the time which the spirit needs in order to lead its new physical body in a complete and fully responsible manner. Thereafter, however, man on earth must remain completely free and self-reliant, otherwise he can never become as strong as is useful for him in the great swinging of the Laws of God. He *must* do battle and have resistances so that in gaining victory he can ascend spiritually toward the Heights.

A change in the idea held up till now regarding children's entitlement to their parents' possessions, however, would have far greater effects than those already mentioned, provided that governments working constructively for the people would adjust themselves accordingly and pioneer the way to help parents and children alike.

Thus the acquisitive sense of each individual also must develop on a different basis. Today many people seek to increase their possessions more and more, merely to make life easier for their children, i.e., in order to bequeath it to their

children. Their thoughts and desires are exclusively directed to this aim, which becomes the basis for an egoistic accumulation of earthly possessions.

Although this will not cease entirely because this or that person will still base his whole life's activity on this idea, but many people would set higher and more general goals for their earthly activity for the benefit of many.

Thus the immoral marriage scheming would cease to exist, along with the fraudulent and deplorable practice of dowry chasing! Much evil would therewith be automatically eliminated, giving way to healthier conditions in which honesty of intuitive perception prevails and marriages become *genuine*. From the very beginning there would be a much more serious approach to marriage.

Opportunities should be offered to adolescent youth which would *compel* them rather than only enable them to unfold their spiritual powers in order to acquire the necessities of life! This alone would be the right thing; for then, and only then, will they *advance* spiritually, because they *will have to bestir* themselves spiritually.

But instead of this, parents or other members of the family make just this path, which is necessary for the children's spiritual health, too easy and *as convenient* as possible for so many of them: This is then called sense of family and love, or also family duty.

I do not wish to list the damages arising from this, even with the best volition; for every good person to become strong needs an impetus and force from outside here and there. Only seldom would he place himself *voluntarily* in a position where he is forced to exert himself, to employ all his spiritual powers, in order to master a situation and solve it well. In most cases, provided he can choose, he would select the *most comfortable* way in order to have it easy, but this does not bring him any spiritual benefit.

However, his self-respect and self-confidence are increased when he himself, with steady toil and diligence, strives

upwards in an earthly sense and when all this is a result of *his* work.

He then values his possessions, he values the work and even the smallest joy much more in the right sense; he also values any favor done him by others appropriately, and he can enjoy everything with much greater vitality than a person who effortlessly receives much thrown into his lap, and who only needs to fill in his time by amusing himself.

One must seek to support a person's ability *to strive right* if one wishes to offer real help. Without specific duties in return one must never throw into another's lap *those* fruits acquired by someone else's effort.

Of course, parents can still give everything to their children if they wish to, or they may, out of false love, sacrifice the meaning and time of their entire life on earth to them, they can make themselves slaves of their children, for they retain their free will in these matters, however, since no earthly law will force them to do so, in the reciprocal effect of the Will of God, they bear the full responsibility *entirely alone* for their own neglect in Creation, and in part also for the spiritual harm that befalls their children as a consequence.

Men are not here on earth *primarily* for their children, but for *themselves*, so that *they* can become spiritually mature and strong. But due to a false idea of love this is no longer being observed. Only animals still live in the Law in this matter!

Take a close look at family customs:

Two persons wish to enter into marriage, they wish to set up a household of their own in order to journey through life on earth together, and for this purpose they become engaged.

The engagement is therefore the first step towards marriage. It is the mutual promise and commitment, so that on the strength of the promise serious preparations for the setting up of a household can begin.

An engagement is nothing other than the earthly basis for the establishment of the new home, and the first step towards procuring everything necessary for this on earth.

With this, however, again wrong customs set in immediately.

In reality this engagement concerns *those* two persons alone who wish to set up a household together. The fact that the families or the parents take part in procuring all that is necessary for this on earth is a matter entirely by itself, which should remain a purely external affair in order to be correct. They may contribute by giving presents or help in some other way, if they so wish. All this remains an *outward* matter, and it does not connect them, does not tie any threads of fate.

The engagement, however, should be absolutely the last and *outermost boundary* for any family ties. Just as a ripe fruit falls from the tree; if tree and fruit wish to fulfill the purpose of their existence without harming one another, so must a person, after his maturity, separate from his family, from his parents, for they, like he, also still have *tasks of their own!*

However, families look at it differently, even at the *last* point in time, i.e. when two persons find each other and become engaged. In these matters they very often assume rights which they do not possess at all.

Each child is given to them through the Power of God alone, for they wished for it; or they would not have been able to receive it. It is merely the fulfillment of a wish manifesting in the intimate union of two people!

They have no right to the child, which is only lent to them but which never belongs to them! Indeed it is taken away from them without their being able to hold on to it, or first being asked about it! From this they can quite clearly see that they are not given any rights over it from the Light, from the Origin of all Life.

The fact that they also take on duties up to the time of maturity is only natural and a balancing for fulfillment of their wish, for they would not have received a child if they had not brought about the opportunity for this, which in the Primordial Laws of this Creation is equivalent to a petition. And as compensation for the duties they have enjoyment, provided

they fulfill these duties *aright*.

After the time of maturity, however, they must leave each person to journey along *his* paths, which are not theirs.

In any case, through engagement and marriage the two persons step *outside* of their families in order to form a union together for their own household. Instead of this, however, the two families imagine that they too became connected through this engagement and marriage and that they are now part of it, although when considered objectively, this is not at all the case, and the mere thought of it seems very strange.

An engagement of two people does not extend the family circles by bringing a daughter into one and a son into the other. Rather, the two individual human beings unite together *entirely on their own*, having no intention whatever of dragging their former families along.

If people had but a faint idea of the harm these peculiar opinions and customs are bound to cause, they might refrain from them of their own accord; they, however, do not realize how much damage is caused thereby.

The wrong customs are not practiced without creating ties in the world of fine gross matter. Threads thereby wind themselves around the couple preparing to set up a home of their own, and these threads gradually impede, entangle and become ever more knotted, often leading to unpleasant things, the origin of which people cannot explain, although they themselves laid the foundation for this with their ludicrous and annoying customs, in which the deep earnestness of the reality is *always* lacking.

It may be said without exaggeration that it is *always* lacking, for he who really grasps the seriousness of the union between two people, the seriousness that is attached to engagement and marriage, will utterly reject the usual family customs and prefer to hold quiet hours of contemplation which will lead to far greater assurance of a happy life together than all external bad customs; for it is not possible to call them good customs.

After the engagement, circumstances permitting, a home is

set up for the couple as well as possible which, from the very start, leaves little to be desired and is therefore bound to *preclude*, at least for a long time, a joyful ascent from the very outset, because everything was thought of and nothing is lacking.

All possibility is taken from the couple to participate in adorning their home through *personal* acquisition through diligence and hard work, to take pleasure *in the fact* that they *jointly* strive towards the gradual completion of their own home as an earthly goal, so that with pride and love they can then value each individual, self-earned piece, connected as it is with memories of many a loving word, of many a necessary struggle which they have fought through joyfully and courageously side by side, as well as of many a peaceful moments of peaceful happiness!

This joy is taken from many already right in the beginning and it is 'seen to' that things are made as *comfortable* as possible. However, the two persons will always be strangers there as long as they do not have objects which they were able to acquire for themselves among the other things.

I do not need to say much more to you about this, for whether you like it or not, you yourselves will gradually recognize what is false in these matters and, above all, what is harmful in the spiritual as well as in the earthly sense. For here, too, everything must at last become new and right, as it lies clearly enough in the Laws of God.

Give people and young couples the possibility for *personal* upward striving; only *that* will give them lasting joy because it increases their self-respect and also their self-confidence, thus awakening the intuitive perception of personal responsibility; with this you will do the *right* thing! You will give more in this way than by taking all the cares of life from them or by at least seeking to relieve them as much as possible, whereby you can only weaken them, and keep them from gaining the necessary strength.

This makes you their enemies and not the true friends that

---

you want to be. By spoiling them and making things easy for them you deprive them of more than you may think after my words today.

Many people will even be painfully affected thereby, but I am pulling them back from a mass grave by freeing them from the wrong and corrupting sense of family, which paralyses the spirit and which developed gradually, based on entirely wrong assumptions.

In this too, everything must finally become *new*, for after the purification such sources of disturbance will be impossible in this Creation.

---

## The flame of the disciple.

Both ancient and modern paintings often portray the disciples of Jesus the Son of God with tongues of flame on their heads, so that their figures resemble flickering lighted candles.

This representation originates with artists who were either clairvoyant themselves and reproduced spiritual pictures shown to them in this way, or who adopted descriptions given by clairvoyant persons.

Among them there are also others who have based their work on the accounts of the outpouring of the Power of the Holy Spirit upon the disciples, because they mention tongues of flame.

Nevertheless, most earthmen suppose that here it is only the artist's imagination which has chosen this form of representation. In this case, however, the representation depicts the truth quite well, so far as it is possible to portray it in picture form.

Yet of all the artists who have created these pictures, and of all the human beings who have come to know these pictures, or have formed their own similar conception of them, not one knows the actual *connection* and the cause of this appearance of the tongue of flame on the head. Clairvoyant people do see it, but they too do not know what to make of it; for no explanation of it has ever found its way to mankind. It can only be given from above.

Therefore I wish to speak of it today, for even the present day disciples, who are inwardly alive as such, bear on their heads the same flame, which at times may become clearly visible to many clairvoyants. Not to all, for the gift of clairvoyance is distributed diversely.

The consecration of the disciple connects the human beings of Subsequent Creation chosen for this office with Primordial Creation. This is done by bestowing upon the developed human spirits a spark from the Pure-Spiritual, in addition to their Spiritual part.

This spark shows itself as a tongue of flame on the head, however only if the disciple *uses* the spark and is not too indolent to do so. Only when *used* aright does this spark flare up and work in accordance with its nature. It always remains apart, may indeed be joined or attached to the Spiritual, but can never be merged with it.

As the Pure-Spiritual in Creation, by its nature swings, according to the Law, *above* the Spiritual, so does it also stand and remain *above* the spirit of the disciple in Subsequent Creation, without entering into him; for the Pure-Spiritual is not a more purified Spiritual species but a *completely different species* standing by itself, thus being of an altogether *different* nature from that of the Spiritual.

An *attachment* is possible between these two species, if the respective transitions exist in accordance with the Laws in Creation, whereas a fusion is not possible.

That is the reason why the Pure-Spiritual spark appears as a tongue of flame above the human spirit.

However, I will not content myself with merely explaining the process which the artists portray in their pictures, but I will go further and also give you the reason why the disciples receive a spark from Primordial Spiritual Creation, why they need it; for they would not receive it unless it were really necessary.

The disciples are to become *mediators* between the Son of God incarnated on earth and earthmen. They are to spread the Divine Word, to live exemplary lives according to the Will of God which they, as the first ones, are to *put into practice* on earth.

For this they need a greater power of perception, which will enable them to absorb the high meaning of the Word of God, and thus to understand the Son of God.

For *this* purpose alone all the disciples receive, a spark from the Pure-Spiritual Realm that enables them to receive the Message from the Light on a *higher* level than that of the developed human spirit on earth, because through the spark they are enabled to come a small step closer to the Divine, being spiritually uplifted out of Subsequent Creation for better recognition.

Otherwise, since the gulf that stretches between a Son of God and earthmen is too great, and the fall of mankind on earth, which has already taken place so far, is too deep, it would be totally impossible for mankind to receive the *Power* of the Word from the Light without the mediation of the disciples.

The spark of the Pure-Spiritual, which the disciples receive as a gift through the Grace out of the Light, enables them not only to achieve an easier and deeper recognition but also to receive higher power.

*This* power, which the disciples become capable of receiving, would have to stream past earthmen *unused* since they are unable to open themselves to it, if it were not first made accessible to their spiritual nature.

To do this is the task of the disciples!

However, a *transformation* of this power by the disciples for the purpose of being passed on is out of the question here, for a transformation of the power as such is simply not possible at all. The *power* always remains exactly the same, only the *radiation* of the particular species that is set aglow by the power also differs with the *different* species, and can thereby split into many divisions.

The power only produces the *pressure!* The *effect* of the pressure, however, is determined by the difference of the *resistance* offered by the species in Creation. Only the variations in resistance call forth heat or cold, colors, sounds, attractions or repulsions, i.e. movements, as well as heaviness or lightness, as well as the changes in these. Resistance, therefore, only gives expression to all the individual species! This word “expression” actually shows you the process in the

*right* light; for the characteristics of all the species are in fact *pressed out* by the power, that is, they come to be *expressed* by the pressure of the power, are forced to *emerge*.

According to the greater or lesser strength of the *resistance* set up by the species, so will the radiations produced and pressed out by the pressure, and their effects, manifest in their definite individual characteristics that develop during the process.

Think of it this way: The Living Power *is!* It becomes perceptible and noticeable, however, only through the resistance, which also causes and produces the pressure, and causes it to become stronger or weaker.

And everything that manifests comes into being in the *pressure* and is the basis for every formation in Creation, which must conform itself to or around and swing within the equal-armed Cross, for this Cross is the Living Power which always remains in a balanced positive and negative vibration, with the positive vibration running vertically and the negative vibration running horizontally.

However, this is only mentioned in passing today. Let us reflect on the disciples again, who bear on their heads a tongue of flame from the Pure-Spiritual.

This tongue of flame works in two different ways; on the one hand as a funnel for the human spirit standing beneath it, and on the other hand as an aerial. I thereby describe two kinds of *receiving*. The funnel gives the image of passive, negative receiving, while the aerial reflects the active or positive reception. Something has to be poured into the funnel, while the aerial itself holds on to that which it comes in contact with in a quite specific way.

The funnel receives the Word as a form, and the aerial absorbs it as the power-radiation.

Thus the effect on the disciple is as follows:

In spite of becoming connected, the flame retains its nature for itself alone, just as the human spirit on earth retains its very own nature unchanged.

Yet whatever the flame on the head of the disciple is capable of receiving resonates *in a vibrating way* in the human spirit, who then passes on to earthmen what he has *intuitively perceived* through his concurrent vibration! He passes it on according to the nature of earthmen, because in accordance with the Law of Creation there is no other possibility for him. Hence earthmen are able to understand him through their spiritual homogeneity! Thus it *appears* as though the power and nature of the Word have been transformed, since the disciple passes it on in a way different from the way he is able to receive it. Yet his spirit has not received anything directly; but in the vibration of receiving by the flame above it, it has only been able to *perceive intuitively* what the flame has absorbed.

Without this finer intuitive perception of the flame, the human spirit of the disciple would not be able to perceive anything more than other human beings.

The human spirit of the disciple however can intuitively perceive only in accordance with *his individual nature*, and therefore he already receives in accordance with this nature. This he then passes on as he perceived it himself in homogeneity with earth men.

In reality, therefore, it is not a transformation of the power; but through the flame bestowed upon him a disciple is simply able to perceive much *more* than earthmen, because the flame is like an aerial that is able to mediate from greater distances, and endows him with the ability, partially to absorb the vibration in the Pure-Spiritual.

I believe that I have expressed myself clearly enough for a picture to arise in your imagination which is as near as possible to the actual process.

You must always keep in mind that a specific species as such can never be transformed. Something may be attached to it through a higher power, but this attachment will always retain its own species solely for itself. There can only be a *working* together, always keeping strictly to the path that accords with

the Laws in Creation, without ever going above and beyond or sideways, nor veering to one side of it.

Thus the disciples receive this Pure-Spiritual tongue of flame so that they may be better able to receive the words of the Son of God on earth, whose meaning, as well as the holy Power inherent in the Word, they then transmit in accordance with the nature of earthmen.

This therefore serves to facilitate the fulfillment of the mission of the Son of God on earth, or, one might also say, to enable the activity of a Son of God on earth in the first place.

Man must thereby realize the immense importance that attaches to the disciples in their various natures as bridges to humanity, which must not be broken off, but must be used to the fullest extent.

They are bridges of *entirely different kinds*, which mankind need on account of their composition, so that the Power of the Word can reach them. For this reason the disciples are by no means chosen as being equal in their personal characteristics, rather they are totally different one from the other. Different in education and character, in their earthly knowledge and earthly position, and even in their spiritual maturity. These differences are necessary; for they provide the bridges to the various groups into which mankind has divided itself.

Each disciple receives the Word and the Power of the Son of God according to his own nature, and passes It on accordingly, thereby touching *that* group of mankind that *is homogenous to him*. However, the disciple must *perfect* his own nature to the *greatest maturity*, so that he may be an example to those who are homogeneous with him!

From this you now gain a faint idea of God's Wisdom, which surveys in love all that exists, and knows how to help appropriately. However, this will also explain many things that puzzle you, because you were not able to understand the reason for this or that action.

In each individual disciple you see personified and represented a specific group of earthmen. In this no one disciple is just like another, any more than the great groups of homogeneous species among earthmen completely resemble one another.

The entire group of disciples together, however, will represent the whole of earthly mankind... *after the Judgment!* For only *then* can mankind receive the proper help through the disciples. *Only then* will the drawbridges, which today must still remain raised, be lowered.

What counts in this matter is the *individual creature as such*, not as a race, as a member of a nation or even as the luciferian product of a power hungry intellect, called a "party" which is one of the most destructive channels of luciferian volition.

Before God, no such thing exists. There is only the creature as such! And as the *individual creature is within itself*, so and not otherwise will it be valued in Creation and before God!

Nor does it matter whether a human creature is Catholic or Protestant, or whether he belongs to any particular denomination; he is valued solely as a *human being as such*. His thoughts, his volition and his actions are decisive before the holy Laws of God!

The many-colored little cloaks in which the intellect has tried to clothe the soul on earth will be torn off before the Judgment of God; for they are but loosely wrapped. Whatever has tried to hide *beneath* them, however *that* will be revealed by the Ray of Light!

The selection of the disciples ensures that, for *each* human being on earth, there will be a disciple who can transmit the Word and the Power precisely to him in his particular nature, and no one who seeks and pleads need go away empty-handed, as soon as he really strives to find the Word. He will absolutely obtain a spiritual connection to *that* disciple who in his nature stands closest to him; he can even meet him on earth if he honestly *wants* to in order also to receive from him the ultimate: i.e., the sealing!

---

*Such* is the care provided from the Light. At present you see only the beginnings, and therefore you cannot yet receive a complete picture. Yet the time is coming when you will stand amazed to see that, even today, the whole foundation for it has been exactly formed, and that only some individual stones still have to be fitted into the remaining empty spaces with *those* disciples still to be called, in order to complete the wonderful mosaic on which the great Kingdom of Peace of the Thousand Year Realm is to rest. This has been promised by *God*, and can only be created by God alone, never by the human species, even if many a person thinks he is called to do so.

In *all* such cases the lack of success, at a time when such a person imagines he has already achieved it, will *prove* that it was only a human *being* who made an attempt!

You will experience all of this now. Therefore, look about you, men, and wake up! Pray to *God* in pure *humility* for the help you so ardently long for. Do not rely on the human intellect, even if it promises you a paradise in high-sounding words. *Only God Himself* can give the help to you, and no one else in the entire Creation! Turn to *Him*, for His Holy Word will be fulfilled in you!

---

## The weaker sex.

If you want to recognize how much wrong there is in the hitherto prevailing ideas, habits and customs of these earthmen, your search will require no effort, for you need do nothing other than to take an expression and reflect upon it *thoroughly*. It will be wrong, indeed it *has* to be wrong, because even the foundation of all the thinking done by these earthmen is already utterly distorted.

The *right* way of thinking, however, can never develop on a false basis, but, in accordance with the basis, it must be wrong as well.

Today let us take the widespread designation of womanhood on earth as being the “weaker sex”. There will hardly be anyone among my hearers who has not already heard this expression. It is used in an affectionate way as well as sneeringly, kind-heartedly and also ironically, but it is always accepted as it is, and adhered to thoughtlessly or at least without being examined.

In reality, however, womanhood is just as strong as manhood on earth, only in a different way.

In my lectures I have already often explained that the *true concept* of womanhood and manhood issues from the *nature of their activity* in Creation, i.e., that the nature of their activity is fundamental for this and determines the form which allows human beings on earth to be recognized as feminine or masculine.

The difference immediately shows itself as soon as *the human spirit germs leave their plane of origin*. Those inclined towards the active, i.e., the coarser activity take on masculine forms, whereas feminine forms shape themselves around those who wish to work passively, i.e., in a more delicate way. These are two different kinds of activity, but of equal strength; there can be no question whatever of a weaker species.

These two kinds of activities also give the meaning of the Living Cross, which is perfect in Itself! The vertical beam of the Cross represents the positive, i.e., the active life, and the horizontal beam of equal length and strength represents the negative or passive life. The Living Cross bears both within Itself!

The Cross of Creation, from out of which and around which the whole of Creation develops itself, expresses and shows the same. The vertical beam is the positive, active working, and the horizontal beam the negative, passive working.

The Elders in the Divine sphere, who at the same time are the Guardians of the Holy Grail in the Divine part of the Grail Castle, likewise show both beams, i.e. the Cross with beams of equal length, in their radiation. In their case, however, it is not the Living Cross Itself which forms their radiation, but it enables one to recognize that these Elders are perfected spirits within their species, and that they carry *both* the active and the passive within themselves, un-curtailed and working in harmony.

In Creation, however, the active is *separate* from the passive as regards their working. Every spirit carries within itself either the active *only* or the passive *only*, which is later also repeated with the spirit seed-germs.

These work either passively or actively *side by side*, and yet they constantly strive towards one another, since the two species can only achieve something which is perfect through their *joint* activity. However, it only becomes perfect when the two work with equal strength and strive for *one* goal: towards the Light!

In order to achieve this they do not need to live together in earthly marriage, or be close together gross-materially at all, they need not even be personally acquainted. Only the *goal* must be the same: towards the Light!

I mention this specifically so that no wrong conclusions may be drawn from my lecture; for marriages and physical gross-material closeness in general are things entirely for

themselves, which are not a requirement connected with striving for the Light, although if pure do not hinder it either.

But this lecture is primarily concerned with the erroneous expression: the weaker sex. I must not digress too much, for I want to show the reason why the expression one day came to be and how it endured.

Basically this is not so difficult. You too can recognize it easily if you are willing to take the trouble of closely examining everything your fellow-men speak.

You know that all womanhood on earth is to keep awake the longing for the Light in her role as guardian for the flame of the preserving-and-upward-leading longing for the Light.

For this purpose a more delicate capacity to perceive intuitively develops within woman, for in her urge towards a more delicate activity, less of the spiritual substantiality detaches itself from her than from the man, who inclines towards coarser activity.

Thus every woman is the receiver and mediator of radiations which men can no longer receive. In this regard womanhood stands half a step higher, turned more towards the Light than any man. Provided, of course, that she stands *aright* and does not fritter away or obstruct her abilities herself.

Man subconsciously senses that woman thereby possesses refinements which he no longer bears within himself, nor can he bear them within, in view of the nature of his activity, since they would restrain him from many a coarse but necessary activity. Without being quite clear about this, or at least very rarely, he perceives a treasure therein which needs to be *safeguarded*. He feels urged to *protect* this invisible treasure in the world of gross matter, because he feels himself to be the *stronger one* in the earthly, i.e. gross-material sense.

There are only a few men who do not intuitively perceive this. But these have in any case become brutalized and can no longer be counted as men in the true sense.

The unspoken desire to protect, which is only perceived unconsciously, has gradually led man to erroneously view

womanhood as the *weaker* sex, in need of his protection. Thus this term does not really originate from an evil volition or a disparaging judgment, but only from ignorance of the true reason for his own intuitive perceptions.

Along with the beginning and advancing callousness due to earthmen's false ways of thinking, and along with the ever-increasing limitation of their ability to understand things lying outside the coarsest world of matter, the interpretation of this term naturally became ever more base.

In reality man is not the *stronger* sex but only the *coarser* sex, i.e., the more gross material one and thus the denser one; womanhood, however, is not the weaker sex, but merely the *more delicate one*, the less dense one, which has nothing to do with weaknesses.

Due to his greater activity man is gross-materially more strongly *solidified*, but this is not a flaw since he needs to be this way in order to work effectively in Creation, to stand more firmly on earthly soil, and to have a more direct effect in and upon the dense gross-material world. Thus he is more firmly connected with the earth and more inclined towards it.

Woman, however, tends to be drawn more upward, towards what is finer, more delicate and less dense. In this she complements human spirituality, holding it and uplifting it... naturally only if she stands at *her* post, which the Creator assigned to her.

Through retaining a very specific species of the higher substantiality in her body the latter is not so strongly densified since her physical body remains permeated by this substantiality which keeps it loose.

This again is neither a deficiency nor a weakness, but a *necessity* for the reception and mediation of radiations; the help of which man in his activity cannot do without, but due to his coarser nature he does not have the ability to absorb these radiations directly.

All of this naturally also extends to gross-material things in the simplest way. Let us take a birth, for example. *For this*

*reason* alone a man would simply be unable to offer the possibility for a soul to approach him for the purpose of incarnating on earth, even if the organs for this were present in his body.

He lacks *the bridge* for the soul that is contained in the delicate substantiality which womanhood still carries within, and which had to sever itself automatically from manhood owing to their active volition.

Therefore even if the organs for this were present, only the *beginning* of a physical body could develop, nothing more, because then the co-operation of the new soul is missing, the new soul which cannot approach without the presence of the more delicate bridge of substantiality. In the case of some women, although a soul is sometimes able to approach, such a soul is unable to hold on if this bridge has become damaged because the woman has acquired masculine characteristics displacing the additional delicate part of substantiality of womanhood. The souls then release themselves again before an earthly birth can take place.

All this reaches much further than you can imagine. Even the earthly health of your children is conditioned, retarded or furthered through the flawlessness and purity of this higher bridge of substantiality provided by the mother.

It is not only the organs alone which are the cause of childlessness or of the fact that many births do not proceed *the way* they normally should. The main cause for the difficulties, illnesses or weaknesses very often lies only in the defectiveness of the bridges, which the souls need in order to walk along their earthly path with strength and security.

How often has a woman, either through stupid trifling or condemnable vanity, taken on masculine characteristics which were bound to weaken or push aside completely the higher part of substantiality that was given to her as a privilege. The results of this are so varied in their nature and form that people often rack their brains about why many things are the way they are.

Still worse however than with these happenings, which still become physically visible immediately in the gross-material, is the harm caused on the planes of fine gross matter by such failure of womanhood, which then also manifests on earth, albeit only after a long time.

You will hear much more about this later on when someday I will move on to these areas, and you will be struck with horror at the frivolous guilt of womanhood, which was promoted and reinforced by men through wanton activity, since it was very welcome to them!

For decades you will still blush about this, because this period of depravity will oppress you like a loathsome burden in your memories for a long time to come.

At present these happenings are still a mystery to mankind, and I will lift the veil at a time when they have matured to the point where they can grasp them; for I also work absolutely according to the Laws in these matters. Mankind can come to know *everything* from me; however I only open my mouth when their inner maturity enables them to receive. This process acts in the same way as an opening or igniting connection and is established quite automatically. For this reason mankind will get to know only as much from me as they are capable of processing, no more.

However, they need not always be conscious of this; for I perceive the *inner* awakening and stirring of the spirit, which is very different from the day-consciousness of the intellect. And for me this is the release for my Word.

For this reason it seems as if today I already give much more than you are really able to absorb consciously. But your spirit to which I speak does take it in without your knowing about this in the earthly sense. Thus it appears as if I am now giving much that is meant for later times, whilst your *spirit* has already received it.

The day-conscious understanding only comes to you later, perhaps only decades from now, so that only *then* will you become capable of knowing how to apply it also *in the earthly*

*sense* with perfect understanding.

As soon as you vigorously stride along with me spiritually I can reveal the entire Creation to you. It is always up to you alone, you men! Therefore remain awake and alert in your spirit, so that I need not withhold anything from you!

I give gladly and joyously, but I am bound to the Law since I am the living Divine Law myself as well as the Word which the Almighty sends you! I am allowed to give to you according to your ability to receive and no more! Bear this in mind. Therefore make use of the time as long as I am with you so that you will not miss anything; for no one but I is capable of giving it to you. When I am no longer with you on earth then the revelations for this humanity on earth will also be ended for all time!

Guard my Word and make use of It; It can give you *everything*!

AMEN.

---

## The destroyed bridge.

**I**n the last lecture I spoke of the absence, in the greatest part of today's earthly women of the white race, of *that* bridge which makes women into women in the first place.

It is pitiable to see how diligently man on earth works at his retrogression and thus at his destruction under the delusion that he is thereby striding upwards.

Earthman! A bitter taste is attached to the name of this creature for everything in Creation weaving in the Will of God, and it would seem better for man if this name were no longer uttered, because whenever it is mentioned indignation and anxiety penetrate the entire Creation, laying a burden upon mankind on earth; for this indignation, this anxiety, are a living accusation which forms automatically and must confront all mankind on earth adversely.

Due to his wrong activity, which became noticeable in this Creation by hindering, disturbing, and continually doing harm, man on earth of today has finally become ostracized through himself, through his ridiculous know-it-all attitude. He has stubbornly and forcibly brought about his own expulsion since he made himself incapable of simply *receiving* God's blessings in humility. He wanted to make himself the creator, the one who fulfills; he wanted to force the activity of the Almighty into complete submission to his earthly will.

There is no word which could properly describe such conceited arrogance in its boundless stupidity. Just reflect deeply on this hardly credible behavior and imagine man on earth, how he pompously wishes to place himself above the mechanism of this marvelous work of a Divine Creation, which has up till now remained unknown to him, in order to direct it, rather than to willingly fit himself into it as a small part

thereof... you will not know whether to laugh or to weep!

A toad standing before a high rock wanting to order it to move out of its way does not produce quite so ludicrous an effect as does present-day man in his delusion of grandeur towards his Creator.

This image must arouse disgust within every human spirit who now awakens in the Judgment. He will cringe in shock and horror when, through recognizing the Luminous Truth, he suddenly sees everything before him just *as* it has *really* been for a long time, although in the past he was unable to notice it in this way. Filled with shame, he then wants to flee to the end of all the worlds.

And the covering veil will now tear, its grey shreds chasing to and fro will be ground up until the Ray of Light can stream freely into the souls which are deeply tormented with remorse and who, in newly awakened humbleness, want to bow before their Lord and God, whom they were no longer able to recognize through the chaos which the earthbound intellect brought about at all times when it was allowed unlimited domination.

But you must thoroughly experience disgust at the deeds and thoughts of the earthmen both *upon* and also *within* yourselves first, before you can be delivered from it. You must suffer from this disgust just as every Envoy from the Light always had to experience it through the villainous depravity of mankind on earth, which is hostile to the Light. You cannot obtain redemption in any other way!

It is the only reciprocal action which is redemptive of your guilt with respect to the Envoys of the Light, and you are now *compelled* to live through it yourselves, since it cannot be forgiven you in any other way.

You will enter upon this experience very soon already; the sooner it touches you the easier it will be for you. May it, at the same time, open up the way for you to the Luminous Heights.

And again womanhood will have to feel the shame *first*, since her downfall now forces her to expose herself to these things.

Frivolously she has put herself into a position where she will now be forced down at the feet of brutalized manhood. It is with anger and contempt that manhood on earth will now flare up and look down upon all women who are no longer capable of giving *that* for which the Creator had chosen them, that which man so urgently needs for his activity.

It is *self-respect*, the only thing which makes every true man a man in the first place! Self-respect, not self-conceit. However, man can only have self-respect in looking up to *womanly dignity*, the protection of which gives him respect for himself and also upholds it!

*This* is the great secret between woman and man, the secret which has never been expressed before, which is able to spur him on to great and pure deeds here on earth, which glows purifyingly through all thinking, thus spreading a sacred luster of high longing for the Light over all of life on earth.

But all this has been taken away from man by woman, who quickly succumbed to Lucifer's temptations through the ludicrous vanities of the earthly intellect. With the awakening of the recognition of this great guilt, man will from now on regard womanhood only as *that* which she was really bound to become because of her willfulness.

However, this painful disgrace is merely a strong help for *those* feminine souls who awaken under the just blows of the Judgment, and who through their recognition see the enormity of the theft they committed on man with their false vanity; for they will have to muster all their strength to regain the dignity they thus lost, the dignity which they themselves threw away like some worthless possession which was a hindrance to them on their chosen path downwards.

And this volition finds its strongest support in the power currents of Divine Purity which were sent out on the occasion of the Festival of the Pure Lily for the aid of all those amongst earthly womanhood who at long last still seriously and with all their remaining strength strive to joyfully fulfill God's All-Holy Will in Creation.

In spite of my last lecture you have not yet become quite clear about the magnitude of the harmful consequences which were bound to fall upon all of earth's humanity when earthly womanhood, through wrong actions, zealously sought to destroy, for the greater part, the bridges that connected her with the streams of Light.

The harmful consequences are a *hundredfold* and of a variety of forms working in all directions. You need only try and place yourselves into the course of the inevitable ramifications that accord with the Laws of Creation. The recognition will then not be difficult at all.

Once again think of the simple process which takes place in strict lawfulness:

As soon as woman tries to become masculine in her thoughts and actions, this volition already takes corresponding effects. First of all upon everything about her which is closely connected with substantiality, then also with ethereal substance, as well as, after a certain period of time, with fine gross matter.

The consequence is that with her attempts at positive activity, which is contrary to her task, all the finer elements of her womanly nature, being passive, are repressed, and finally detach from her, since through lack of use they gradually lose strength and are drawn off the woman by the same basic species.

The bridge which enables earth woman in her passive nature to absorb higher radiations and to mediate them to the coarser world of matter in which she is anchored through her body with a very specific firmness, is then cut off. But this is also the *very* bridge a soul needs for earthly incarnation into the physical body. If this bridge is missing it is impossible for any soul to enter the growing body; for the soul cannot of itself step across the gulf that was bound to arise in this way.

If this bridge is only partly broken, however, depending on the nature and strength of woman's desire to become masculine in her activities, it is nevertheless possible for souls

to incarnate which are in the same way neither completely masculine nor completely feminine, and which therefore form ugly, unharmonious mixtures. Later on these hold all sorts of unquenchable longings, always feeling misunderstood during their life on earth; they are thus a constant source of anxiety and discontent to themselves and to their surroundings.

It would be better for such souls, as well as for their earthly surroundings later on, if they had never found an opportunity to incarnate; for they only burden themselves with guilt and will never redeem anything, because in reality they do not belong on this earth.

The opportunity and possibility for such incarnations which are not willed by Creation, thus by the Will of God, is proffered only by *those* women who through their capriciousness and ridiculous vanity, as well as through the degrading craving for sham recognition, are inclined toward a certain masculinization, no matter how this manifests.

Delicate, *genuinely feminine* souls are never incarnated in such unfeminine women, and thus the female sex on earth is gradually completely poisoned, since this perversity has become ever more widespread, attracting more and more new souls of this kind, souls which can neither be wholly female nor wholly male, thus spreading spuriousness and disharmony on earth.

Fortunately the wise Laws of Creation have drawn a sharp line in such matters as well; for through a distortion of this nature, forcibly brought about by a wrong volition, there first of all occur difficult or premature births, vulnerable, nervous children with fragmented intuitive feelings, and in the end, after a certain period of time, sterility sets in, so that a nation which allows its womanhood to strive towards an improper masculinization is condemned to slow extinction.

Naturally this does not happen from one day to the next, so that it would become glaringly obvious to the people living at the time, but a happening of this kind must also proceed along the path of development.

Slowly but surely! And it takes a few generations of perversion before the consequences of such an evil on the part of womanhood can be halted or redeemed in order to restore a people from a state of decline back to health and save it from total extinction.

It is an adamant Law that wherever the size and strength of the two beams of the Cross of Creation are unable to swing in perfect harmony and purity, i.e., where the positive masculine as well as the negative feminine do not remain equally strong and undistorted, whereby the equal-armed Cross would also become distorted, there, decline and finally destruction are bound to follow in order for Creation to become free again of such absurdities.

Therefore no people can ascend or be happy unless they possess genuine, unadulterated womanhood, in whose wake alone genuine manhood can and must develop.

There are thousands of things which corrupt genuine femininity in this way. Therefore all the consequences manifest in quite different ways, more or less severe in their harmful effects. But they will always manifest without fail!

I do not yet wish to speak here of the frivolous imitation of men's evil habits by women, of which smoking probably counts as the first; for this is a plague entirely by itself, forming a crime against humanity such as man of the present time hardly dares to imagine.

With a closer recognition of the Laws in Creation, the unjustified and thoughtless arrogance of the smoker in indulging his vice even outdoors, thereby poisoning God's gift of fresh, restorative air, which is meant to be available to every creature, will very soon vanish, especially when he must learn that this bad habit is the seat of many a disease under the scourge of which today's humanity groans.

Quite apart from the smokers themselves, having to breathe in such tobacco smoke hampers the normal development of many an organ in infants and children, especially the necessary firming and strengthening of the liver, which is

particularly important for every person, since when it is healthy and functions *properly*, it can easily prevent a site for cancer from forming; which is the surest and best means of fighting this epidemic.

In most cases the woman of today has chosen a wrong path for herself. She strives for *de-feminization*, be it in sports, in excesses or diversions, but mostly through participating in *positive spheres of activity* which fall to and must remain with manhood if there is to be genuine ascent and peace.

Through this, everything on earth has already fundamentally been shifted, has lost its equilibrium. Even the ever-increasing controversies, as well as failures can only be traced to the willful *intermixing of* the positive and negative activities amongst all people on earth which creation intended to *remain pure*, and which will have to entail downfall and demise in the chaos forced about thereby.

How foolish are you human beings that you do not want to learn to recognize the simplicity of God's Laws, which in their absolute logic are so easy to observe.

It is true that you have wise sayings which you like to quote! This one sentence alone tells you much: Small causes, great effects! But you do not heed it! It never occurs to you first of all to look for the small cause in everything happening around you which threatens, afflicts and oppresses you, so that by avoiding *this*, the big effects cannot even arise in the first place. This is much too simple for you. Therefore you prefer first to tackle the severe effects only, if at all possible with a lot of noise, so that the action will also be fully valued and bring you earthly prestige.

But in this way you will *never* attain victory, no matter how well you believe yourselves to be equipped for it, unless you make the effort yourself to look for *the causes* in all simplicity, so that by avoiding all causes you will banish the severe consequences forever!

And again you cannot find the causes unless you learn to recognize in humility the mercies of God, who gave you everything in Creation to protect you from every misfortune.

As long as you lack the humility to receive God's mercies gratefully you will remain entangled in your wrong actions and thoughts until the final fall which must inevitably lead you to eternal damnation. And this last moment lies before you. You are already standing with one foot in the gate. The next step will let you fall into bottomless depths.

Consider this well, pull yourselves back from and leave behind the insipid earthly life without form and warmth, which you have preferred to lead up until now. At long last become *such* human beings, as the Will of God will continue to tolerate in Creation in the future. In doing so you fight *for yourselves*, since your God, whose Grace granted you the fulfillment of your urge for a conscious existence in this Creation, does not need you! Remember this, at all times, and thank Him with every breath which you are allowed to take in His boundless Love!

AMEN.

---

## Overview of Creation.

Many readers do not yet have a clear picture of the gradations between the Primordially Created Beings, the Created Beings and the developed beings.

Some conceptions thereof still appear fraught with confusion. Yet it is all quite simple.

The confusion only arises because man mixes up the expressions somewhat, and pays insufficient attention to the strict boundaries that exist.

For this reason it is best if he simply imagines Creation as explained to him *so far* as follows:

1. The Pure-Spiritual part
2. The Spiritual part
3. The material part

It can also be described as:

1. Primordial Creation
2. Creation
3. Subsequent Creation

This leads quite naturally to the thought that the Primordially Created Beings are in Primordial Creation, the Created Beings in Creation, and the developed beings in Subsequent Creation.

These designations are not wrong as such in describing the whole of Creation in broad outlines only, but when going into more detail the divisions must be more sharply drawn and expanded upon, while the basic terms remain the same.

More accurate explanations show up any intermediate steps which cannot be avoided in order to present a gapless picture.

Today, I will refrain from mentioning the Substantiate part, since Substantiality is present in all parts anyway; except to say that between the Spiritual part and the material part there exists a large layer of a *special* kind of Substantiality which, however, need not be regarded as a separate Creation part; for in its activity this layer serves primarily to promote motion, thus to generate heat and form the material worlds; it therefore does not form a distinct Creation part in itself.

This layer of Substantiality does not need to be named as a Creation part, but as a Creation *species* which, driving and forming, belongs to the material Creation part.

I purposely speak of the basics of Creation as it has been explained *so far*; for I have not yet finished with it by a long chalk, and gradually I must expand everything I have said much further, just as I have always done, a little at a time. This necessitates inserting new divisions into that which I had explained before, thus extending your view. To have stated everything at once would have been too much for the human spirit. Even with this method as prepared by myself, the human spirit will still have to summon all his strength in order to be able to internalize this knowledge to some degree.

Let us not speak today about Primordial Creation, Creation and Subsequent Creation, but, fundamentally, simply about the Primordial Spiritual part, the Spiritual part, and the material part. Then man can no longer mix things up so easily.

I myself, however, *had* to mention *all* the possible designations, so that they may be used for stricter divisions of the gradations.

Gradually they shall penetrate human knowledge ever more clearly and firmly and, in spite of their comprehensiveness, they must no longer cause any confusion.

First and strongest in Creation is the *Pure-Spiritual* Creation part. This consists of *two* basic sections. The

uppermost, highest section of the Pure-Spiritual Realm bears the actual *Primordially Created* Beings, who arose from the radiations of Parzival immediately as *fully matured*, and did not need any development. This section reaches as far as Vasitha, whose activities lie at the lower boundary.

The second section holds developed ones in the *Pure-Spiritual Realm*. Therefore children are to be found there for the first time, which do not exist in the uppermost section; for children can only exist where development takes place.

Both sections, however, have the *Pure-Spiritual* in common. But only the *uppermost* section can be called *Primordial Creation* in the right sense, and the Pure-Spiritual Beings dwelling therein can be considered the true Primordially Created Beings!

With this I spread out Creation a little for the better understanding of the human spirit in Subsequent Creation.

Thus we actually cannot speak of a Primordial Creation reaching down as far as Patmos, as we have done in the past for the sake of greater simplicity. But to be more exact we must now speak of an uppermost *Primordial Creation* which came into existence in a state of full maturity, and of a subsequently developed Primordial Spiritual Creation, while both sections together form the *Pure-Spiritual Realm* or the Pure-Spiritual Creation part.

Pure-Spiritual, or the Pure-Spiritual Realm, is therefore the great collective designation for the uppermost part of Creation, considered as a Creation *species*, while the designation Primordial Creation in the stricter sense applies only to the highest part of it.

If we now wish to penetrate further into the knowledge of Creation, then we must no longer take the Pure-Spiritual and Primordial Creation as *one* conception, as we have done until now.

It is true, Primordial Creation is Pure-Spiritual, but in the Pure-Spiritual Realm there is also a world of development which is below Primordial Creation proper and which, in

connection with this forms the Pure-Spiritual Realm, where there are Pure-Spiritual Primordially Created Beings who were immediately able to be fully matured without any transition as being the strongest and most powerful ones; and following this there are Pure-Spiritual Developed Beings, who must begin their life as children.

The first section, Primordial Creation, comprises three principal steps or planes; the second section of the Primordial Spiritual Realm contains four. Consequently there are *seven* basic steps, which again are divided into many sub-divisions.

Since I had not intended to go this far with my explanations, I simply called the previous lectures on the subject “The spiritual planes” with the intent of covering therein everything that was not material.

But since I do mention additional details after all, I must now more clearly delineate and give the previous lectures about the Pure-Spiritual Realm the title “From the Pure-Spiritual Realm of Creation” in order to place greater emphasis on the differences.

This Pure-Spiritual Realm comprising so many sections is followed by the great *Spiritual* Realm.

The Spiritual is not just a weaker species issuing from the Pure-Spiritual, but a species *alien* to the Pure-Spiritual which, however, is weaker in itself, and therefore needs a greater distance from the Primordial Light in order to be able to form and become conscious to some extent.

Therefore it sinks down further in order to be able to form a realm at a greater distance from the Light; however, it has no part of the Pure-Spiritual but exists by itself.

It is all so easy and natural and yet difficult to explain in a way that will introduce the human spirits to knowledge which lies above their origin. However, you must now grasp the connection between all the happenings so that you do not dangle about as an ignorant appendage in the rotation of this Creation, like dissonant bells in a spinning top, because you do not manage to obey as trusting children do.

You do not wish to fulfill the word "Become like children!", and so there remains only one way as the last of all help for your salvation: the *knowledge* of Creation!

You must have at least enough knowledge to enable you to adjust yourselves to the lawful swinging, which will uplift and carry you along, or fling you far away as chaff, into disintegration.

The swinging is intensified at present for the purpose of the great purification, and is borne by the Omnipotence of God! It therefore irresistibly forces each creature to swing harmoniously or to perish in the wild pain of immeasurable despair, which, as a consequence of stubborn self-will, arises out of the hopelessness brought about by a final recognition that it is on the wrong path without any prospect of turning back. For this reason seek to assimilate the knowledge of the Truth, which grants you support and without detour leads straight to the goal.

If you look around you in an alert manner you can immediately recognize the fact that you really have the Word of Truth in my Message; for your entire life on earth up until now, as well as the new experiencing of every moment outwardly and inwardly, will become absolutely clear to you as soon as you shine the light of my Message on it.

Not a single question remains unsolved for you; a great understanding arises within you of the working of the adamant Laws in Creation which have so far been a mystery to you, the Laws which guide you with the consequences of your volition; and as a crown for all your effort there comes the wonderful sensing of a Wisdom, of an Omnipotence, of a Love and of a Justice that can only issue from *God*, whose Being you therewith discover!

But let us return to Creation.

The Pure-Spiritual Realm is then followed by the *Spiritual* Realm, the Spiritual to be considered as a *different* species, not as a weaker residue of the Pure-Spiritual.

After crossing the boundary of a certain distance from the Light necessary for the possibility of forming the Spiritual, there also arise in the Spiritual, immediately and without transition of development, fully matured spirits which must be called *Created Beings* in contradistinction to the Primordial Beings in the Pure-Spiritual.

Thus the Created Beings are the strongest and most powerful in the Spiritual, similar to the Primordially Created Beings in the Pure-Spiritual, which was already able to form earlier.

And just as there was previously in the Pure-Spiritual, there is also a second section in the Spiritual which requires development, and where consequently there are children alongside those who have matured through development. These two sections together form the Spiritual part of Creation.

This Spiritual part is then followed by a large ring of a very special Substantiate species enclosing the material part, influencing it, penetrating it, moving it, and thereby bringing heat and formation.

The material Creation-part in turn also has two sections. The first part, the world of ethereal matter, forms immediately through the influence of the Substantiate, since it can be penetrated easily. The second part, gross matter, due to its greater density must first go through a process of development with the help of the Substantiate beings. Naturally these two basic sections also fall into many sub-divisions.

Each section of the Creation-species splits into many planes, of which each individual plane is again so varied that it appears like a huge world in itself.

However, I shall only accurately explain to you *that* which exists within the boundaries of your human spirit! This is already so vast that your spirit must bestir itself and make every effort continually and without interruption, in order to grasp aright even one *part* while here on earth. This part, however, gets you to a point where you cannot get lost easily.

Only with the true *knowledge* and with arduous effort will you be able to work yourselves out of the swamp of your intellectual conceit, for you can now no longer become *children* in spirit. Today you lack any capacity to unquestioningly, like worry-free children, submit trustingly to high guidance for the misguided, overstretched activity of your earthly intellect no longer permits this!

Thus there is only *one* way left to you for your salvation; *the path of true knowledge* which leads from faith to conviction!

So that you are able to walk this path, *to that end*, I will help you with the Message which I have given you. However, strive to absorb this knowledge inwardly and to keep it alive so that you will never lose it but take it along with you on all your paths!

The word will then come true which has remained alive in people's sayings since olden times:

"The more man becomes capable of advancing in true knowledge, the more clearly he recognizes the fact that in reality... he knows nothing!"

Expressed in other words:

"One who is really knowing becomes small within himself before such greatness, the traces of which he finds in the process of becoming knowing! This means that he becomes humble and loses the conceit that keeps the human spirit imprisoned, he becomes free and rises up."

Try to impress upon your mind today that which I have already said in my lectures, but of which you nevertheless do not appear to have formed the right picture, at least not all of you, namely, that in the gradation the Created Beings do not immediately follow the Primordially Created Beings of the Primordial Spiritual Realm, but that first the developed Pure-Spiritual Beings in the lower part of the Pure-Spiritual Realm form a big intermediate step.

Only thereafter follow, as the uppermost in the Spiritual Realm, the Created Beings, which are not Pure-Spiritual but Spiritual, as an entirely different species, which are then again followed by developed Spiritual beings.

But from there we are still far, very far away from the worlds of matter, before which there swings the ring of the special kind of Substantiate forces, which I will discuss more closely only later, because their activity is very closely connected with you and you could not remain in the world of matter at all without their help.

Without this help your development would be impossible. You would have to remain spirit-germs with the burning desire to be able to become conscious through the Grace of God, the Only One, the Almighty!

You however, show only ingratitude for the necessary activity of those beings from the substantiate ring around the material spheres who are always ready to help by making the insane assertion that they must belong to the realm of legends and mythology because you obstructed your ability to see and hear them.

So often you have smiled scornfully when this matter was discussed, and you have no idea what fools you made of *yourselves in* so doing, and how repulsive you must have seemed to the helpers you so urgently need!

There is much you have to make good and make up for in order to mend the rungs in the ladder for the upward climb of the spirit, the rungs which you have so frivolously and presumptuously broken. But without them you cannot stride upwards! The foot of the spirit *needs* this support and cannot skip any one of these rungs.

In these brief explanations I have not at all mentioned the sphere which is in the immediate radiation of God and which we called the Divine sphere; the sphere which surpasses by far the magnitude of all the rings of Creation combined. I shall probably never again return to this subject, since man is and always will remain too far away from it. He only needed the descriptions I have given so far in order to be able to at least form a coherent picture going downward from the Origin of all Life.

Learn, you men, for it is high time!

## Spirit-germs.

Spirit-germs! I have often spoken of them already, explaining their genesis and path. I have also said that earthmen are developed from spirit-germs. Thus it is *your* development, you human beings that I will describe here.

Today I want to bring the starting point of your development towards consciousness a little closer to you still.

In my last lecture I spoke about a second, lower section in the Spiritual Creation-part, in which the spiritual beings could not come into existence fully matured immediately, but must develop from children.

The developed ones of Subsequent Creation, to which you human beings also belong, do not *yet* originate from this part, rather they come from only a precipitation thereof, which does not possess the strength to develop itself without outside stimuli.

This precipitation consists of the spirit seed-grains, the spirit-germs, from which the developed human spirits of the material worlds originate.

The precipitation sinks down from the Spiritual Creation part and thus enters into a Ring of Substantiality surrounding the worlds of matter.

I shall not yet speak about the concurrent process of attractions, of being set aglow which takes place according to the Laws of Creation, and the consequent changes in radiation. Instead I will only speak of the *helpers* active therein, and of individual happenings that can give a *picture that is* understandable to you.

For as soon as I show you tangible *forms* in my descriptions you will be able to imagine something quite specific that nearly corresponds with the facts and provides support to your earthly understanding.

Thus, I will not explain *how* everything is fulfilled as it swings in the Law of Creation, but how it *manifests* in the process of forming itself.

In this Ring of Substantiality, into which the spirit-germ sinks, there exist beings of very different species, not intermingled with each other but standing on individual planes below one another, according to the nature of the activity in which they swing.

Coming from the Spiritual, we find at the uppermost point of the Ring wonderfully delicate feminine beings, who, swinging in the rays of Love and Purity, receive the spirit-germs with maternal care and cover them with a cloak of Substantiality. They then forward the thus-cloaked spirit-germs, which still slumber in complete unconsciousness, into the hands of other feminine beings which stand nearer to the world of ethereal matter.

These in turn cover the germ with a second cloak, again of a different nature and corresponding with the *particular* environment in which these entities dwell. They then accompany the germs, which through this process have become a little heavier again, downwards to the topmost layer of the ethereal world.

In a helping way all these delicate feminine beings *support* the lawful, automatic happenings. They are of perfect beauty and in former times were already known to many men, to whom they would show themselves here and there.

They were called kind fairies, caring for and furthering the developing human souls.

At the border of the ethereal world there are again different feminine beings awaiting the descending spirit-germs in order to *tend* to them lovingly. There are also beings of a masculine nature here for *protection* whose activity is not of a care-taking but of a more positive nature.

Thus the spirit-germ is well tended and cared for by helpers of Substantiality while still unconsciously following its urge towards becoming self-conscious, moving ever further onwards

until it meets a density in the ethereal world which no longer permits it to continue its journey following its unconscious urge. Its downward glide thus comes to a halt. It must linger in order to awaken to development before continuing on its journey.

This is again a quite natural process, conditioned by the nature of the environment, yet a great turning-point for the spirit-germs. They are now in a plane of the ethereal world, the density of which holds them back, thus ending their unconscious wandering.

Thus they suddenly lie softly embedded in a layer which halts their progress. Only an awakening volition, already *conscious*, albeit weak, can muster the strength which will enable them to wander through and recognize their surroundings and travel further.

Just at this point I must proceed slowly and especially carefully with my explanations, so that men can form the right picture thereof without anything getting shifted.

For here, where the spirit-germs in their initial unconscious wandering must literally become stuck, due to a very specific density of the ethereal substance that is permeated with currents of substantiality, much happens affecting the path of the human spirit as it descends into the worlds of matter for the purpose of development, and also concerning the path upwards again after reaching maturity through development.

Just *this* layer is an important boundary plane in the existence of the human spirit. Therefore I want to dwell upon the subject a little, and speak more of it.

To the ascending human spirit this plane already appears immensely high and wondrous in its beauty. Bathed in a mild light it stretches before the eyes in a light which appears mild, yet is much brighter than our sunshine here on earth. The rays have an awakening, furthering and strengthening effect.

This plane appears like a single endless series of gardens. One flower garden follows another over vast distances, each filled with beautiful flowers of all sizes and many colors;

flowers which are tended by delicate beings and preserved and guarded by earnest, masculine figures, striding through the rows arranging, watching and sifting.

There are flowering arbors all around, inviting to rest and recover and to quiet, grateful inner reflection.

The denser mass forming the ground is the ethereal substance which has held fast the spirit-germs, the mass in which they became stuck on their journey.

And then the miracle happens: The delicate feminine beings had shrouded each one of the spirit germs as they exited the spiritual realm into a substantiate cloak. This Substantiate cloak develops under the radiations of this plane, anchored in the ethereal soil and cared for by the Substantiate feminine gardeners into a magnificent flower. Resting in the cup of this flower the spirit germ sleeps and becomes stronger and stronger.

Aroused through the effects which, in spite of the delicacy of this plane, are of a coarser nature than in the Spiritual Realm, and through the stronger sounds of all movement in the happenings, the spirit-germ can at a definite stage of maturity, simultaneous with the bursting open of the bud, awaken to become gradually conscious. This coming into consciousness, however, is not yet self-consciousness.

It is still a big step from the *consciousness* of the awakening spirit to the *self-consciousness* of the matured spirit. An animal is also conscious, but it is never self-conscious! But let us not dwell upon this subject now!

Thus the bursting open of each bud is caused by the maturity of the spirit-germ and is a natural, automatic effect, and the sound of bursting open simultaneously awakens the spirit-germ to consciousness of its existence.

These processes can be explained accurately later on in all their details in order to find the lawfulness also inherent therein, through which everything becomes simple and natural, as can be recognized ever again in the whole of Creation.

The flower in whose cup the spirit-germ ripened needed only part of the spirit-germ's substantiate cloak, whereas the other part remained round the spirit-germ and, during the awakening to consciousness, took on the form of a human child. Thus when the bud bursts open a child in human form lies in the cup of the flower.

Here, too, I must insert a few explanations before I can proceed further:

The spirit-germ had already passed through the care of *two* different feminine entities before it came into the hands of the feminine gardeners. Both species may be called fairies. The first one, which received the spirit-germ as it left the Spiritual Realm, veiled it with a delicate cloak of the finest substance of this plane or ring, the second adding a cloak of a different species.

Therefore when the spirit-germ became stuck in ethereal matter it had already received two different cloaks, i.e. two gifts, from the fairies!

These happenings are the origin of stories of fairies giving gifts at children's cradles.

The outer cloak now developed in the denser ethereal world under the vitalizing radiations as a protective flower-bud, and the most delicate inner cloak developed, as it awakened, immediately into a small body in human form. I also wish to explain why the finer cloak was bound to form into a *human body*.

In my Message I have already stated that upon becoming conscious the *spirit* takes on a human form, since the special nature of the spirit conditions the human form. This statement is made in broad outline. Now I must also enlarge upon this explanation and point out the fact that during this awakening to initial consciousness the spirit-germ as such does *not* yet take on human form but only the delicate, substantiate cloak which the spirit-germ received through the first fairy does so.

This cloak takes on human form since, in awakening, the spirit-germ already unconsciously sets this cloak aglow.

Therefore, since it is set aglow by *spirit*, albeit unconsciously, the cloak, in accordance with the way it is being set aglow, naturally takes on human form.

The spirit itself, however, receives a human form only gradually as it becomes *self*-conscious in its wandering through the worlds of matter. The human form will be more or less beautiful depending on the nature and goal of its development. In this process the spirit's outer substantiate and ethereal cloaks also transform correspondingly.

As long as the spirit-germ remains in its merely conscious state, the substantiate and ethereal cloak is *always beautiful*, since it can be *deformed* only when the spirit becomes conscious of *itself* whereby it also receives its free will.

Just think this one sentence over carefully. You will find the solution to very many things contained therein.

You will then also find the explanation as to why all beings that consciously swing in service to the Will of God are, without exception, of the most delicate beauty and perfect shape; for they all bear spiritual substance within, but they cannot misshape their forms through a self-consciousness that goes astray.

With this explanation you will also find a difference in that which in the past we have described under the great collective term "Substantiate Beings". Today for the first time I give you a very definite gradation in this matter which, however, for the moment can only be given in very broad outlines so as not to go too far afield.

There are Substantiate Beings who bear the Spiritual within them, and swing and serve consciously in the Will of God; and there are Substantiate Beings who bear only Substantiality within, but lack anything of the Spiritual. Animals, for instance, belong to the latter!

In order to prevent unnecessary questions in this regard I will mention that many divisions have yet to be made among the substantiate helpers in Creation in order to give men a proper understanding. However, I shall always and only deal

with each case individually as soon as an opportunity presents itself. In this way it will be easier to grasp. Later on, men can compile this information from the Message on their own.

Now I only wish to add that various classifications can also be made among the substantiate beings who bear the Spiritual within themselves, of whom the largest part by far swings and serves *only in the Will of God*, and is completely independent of everything else.

A small part, however, which exists far from the Luminous Heights and works in close connection with the coarsest world of matter, such as gnomes, etc., were, like many other things, subject to the temporary influence of developed human spirits living in the world of gross matter. But this possibility of the human spirit to influence has already been *suspended*, and even these little substantiate helpers at present stand only in the service to the Will of God, during the Judgment and the Kingdom of the Millennium.

However, I must not yet go into these details; for I should divert you too much from the basic features, whereas now I wish above all to form a *basic knowledge* for you, which will give you the support you need for your ascent and for perfecting your spirit for its maturity for the Luminous Heights.

All else must for now be left aside until the great purification is over. Until then, however, you no longer have time for details leading you into vastness that will make your head swim!

You must first be able to *save* yourselves from the maze of pseudo-knowledge. This is the most necessary thing for you to do now, as you will recognize for yourselves later on.

But you must not take all this in too earthly a way when forming a picture of these happenings for yourselves, for earthly density is absent from them. And yet you will find similar happenings even in this *coarse* material world on earth.

Just take the butterfly developing under the protection of the

cloak of the cocoon, which it bursts as soon as it has come to the necessary state of maturity.

In the case of the spirit-germ the protective cloak receives the form of a flower, which must develop in combination with the qualities of the soil in the ethereal world. The why and the how can also be precisely explained according to law, so that you will recognize that it can only occur in this manner and form, and *not in any other way*.

But years of explanations are still necessary to get to the point that you human beings will recognize with amazement the great simplicity running through Creation albeit with thousands of different effects yet ever again precisely the same in all things, developing according to *one* basic Law.

You will be astounded to realize that the difficulties of recognition have only arisen through you. You yourselves have prepared them and made everything difficult for yourselves. You followed detours and wrong courses which were bound to tire you, and which prevented you altogether from reaching the goal without help from the Light!

But if your intellectual conceit had not played such a terrible, albeit well-deserved, trick of contrived confusions on you, you would, with childlike trust and faithfully guided by the Light, have attained to full maturity easily and quickly on a path that held nothing but joy for you.

Now, however, you have a very hard time; for now you must first remove all of the stones again with which you walled up the path. Nor can you get on the right road with one leap, but you must retrace your steps over all the detours and wrong courses to the place where you made the wrong turn, so that you can then start out once more at the beginning of the right road.

For this reason I first had to follow you on all your diversions and wrong courses so as to catch up with you and call out to you, and carefully lead back those who would follow my call, since you are unable to find a way out of the maze on your own.

If I wanted to bring you help, I had to come to you not from

the Light directly, but on your *own paths*.

Soon you will understand all this through recognition, it will not be very long till then. Then many things will become easier for you.

Although *everything* in this Creation is important and has purpose, yet there is one straight line which offers you support as you become knowing, a support by means of which you can stride securely upwards.

And this support alone I want to give you *first of all*, since it is urgently needed.

Today I offered you an entirely new picture of that plane which remains the actual starting-point for you earthmen, and which therefore plays a great role. Now you know *how* and *where* you awaken.

And this plane which mediates and enables your coming into the world, thus granting you a foundation stone for your personal existence as a human being, is also important for the mature spirit which has developed aright in accordance with the Will of God and becomes capable of ascent.

Just as here the first cloak blossoms forth in human form, so the mature spirit sheds the same cloak on this plane. In ascending this first cloak then becomes the last to be shed.

It remains behind on this plane in order to dissolve again, to disintegrate, to merge with the same species from which it first arose through the gift of the fairy.

However the cloak of a mature spirit brings along new energies to refresh and strengthen the homogeneous species, due to the fact that it had been strongly penetrated by the glow of the self-conscious spirit in the proper ascending sense and bears this glow within!

As a result this species of cloak becomes all the more powerful in the substantiate ring round the worlds of matter, and is able to help even more strongly with the new development and awakening of many human spirit-germs.

After the last cloak of delicate substantiality has been laid

aside, the spirit as such, being conscious of itself, leaves this plane of gardens to return to the Spiritual Realm which it once left as an inert, unconscious spirit-germ, merely yielding to its vague urge for development produced by the longing to become conscious.

Strive to be able to enter the Spiritual Realm as fully matured spirits, you earthmen! You will then be united with *those* who were able to develop in the Spiritual without having to plunge into the worlds of matter first.

You will then be no less strong than these, for you have overcome many obstacles, and through the efforts of overcoming have become a flame! There will then be joy over you, as indicated in the parable of the prodigal son.

---

## Substantiate-germs.

**I**n my last lecture I spoke of the awakening of the spirit-germs to a consciousness of existence.

Just as there are spirit-germs as the last precipitation in the Spiritual sphere, so there is finally also a precipitation of unconscious substantiate-germs in the Substantiate sphere; and just as the spirit-germs sink into the most delicate layer of ethereal matter, so the substantiate germs sink into the most delicate layer of gross matter, where later on they work as developed substantiate helpers. These substantiate-germs are also veiled with cloaks and, having thus become heavier, they sink into a somewhat denser layer of gross matter, where they too remain literally stuck.

Before proceeding with explanations, however, I must mention something of which I have already spoken briefly, but about which I so far intentionally avoided giving closer descriptions, because if I say too much prematurely it might easily lead to confusing mix-ups for the human spirit.

I once pointed out in my Message that, in addition to those things which have taken on form, there are also flowing *currents* which permeate Creation.

But with the expression “currents” we already have the form itself again, for it is actually so: they are streams that flow through Creation just as rivers flow upon the earth, and also like the air currents!

And just as these two differing gross material species of currents exist on earth, so we also have two species that stream through Creation; substantiate currents and spiritual currents!

There is nothing in Creation which is not formed. We have individual forms and collective forms. To the collective forms

belong the currents of the species which work beside or, better said, *with* the special forms or individual forms. Each of these currents has very definite tasks which precisely correspond with their species. We may also say that these tasks issue from the species.

Thus it is a spiritual current which among other things also guides the spirit-germs, as long as they are unconscious, along the path which brings them to where development may begin.

On this path three things play a role for the spirit germs: first, the spirit-germs' inner urge to become conscious has a *pushing* and *pressing* effect upon them, second, the effect of the stream of the spiritual current is to *carry* them along, and third, the homogeneity of human spirits already developing in materiality has a *pulling* effect.

For some of you this will immediately give rise to the question: but how was it at the time when no developing human spirits were active in the material sphere, i.e. when their attraction of homogenous species could not be effective yet?

At the time when the first spirit-germs approached that part of the world, the world of matter was not yet as dense as it is today; for it was only later on through men's volition developing in the wrong way that greater density and heaviness came about, resulting in a greater distancing from the Light and a more sluggish and hampering movement.

In view of the lightness of the world of matter at that time, the spirit-germ's inherent urge, together with being carried along by the stream, were sufficient for it to reach the first goal for development. Further development was also easier, since even the *faint* beginnings of consciousness provided a sufficient impulse to proceed along another stretch of the path.

All this has become considerably more difficult today.

Here I must again insert something. The sinking down of spirit-germs is a process which proceeds *without interruption* for Creation.

When I formerly stated that a very definite stage of maturity must be present in the world of matter for the reception of spirit-germs, and that this can no longer be repeated as the maturity increases, this did not concern the whole of Creation, but only *individual* celestial bodies such as *the earth*, for example.

Finally, only such human souls as were older, and which had already been previously incarnated, could come to the earth; those which have to complete their course in the closing of the cycles, but not spirit-germs, i.e., souls which have never before been in the dense world of gross matter.

But there are always parts in Creation prepared to receive spirit-germs which have already attained to consciousness of their existence, but which must first develop towards self-consciousness through experiencing.

As long as the human spirit leads a life of merely being conscious of its existence it must retain the name spirit-germ, although its cloak may already bear the human form. Only with its further development towards self-consciousness does it cease to be a human spirit-germ and become a *human spirit!*

It is necessary to say this here in order to avoid misinterpretations or erroneous conceptions. That is why I have already mentioned in my last lecture that it is a big step from consciousness of existence to human self-consciousness, which latter alone brings in its train the *free* and conscious will to decide, but also the full responsibility for it.

As I proceed with my explanations I must make ever more distinct divisions in the conceptions, whereas in the past I could still leave many things under collective conceptions. This is by no means a sort of play upon words, which many clever intellectuals in their spiritual indolence were ready to call certain passages in my Message; with which, however, they plainly enough showed nothing but their utter ignorance and lack of comprehension for the seriousness and greatness of the matter. Instead, it is an urgent and unavoidable necessity if man wants to fathom the movement of Creation at all.

He then cannot get along forever with a few earthly expressions, but must bring himself to gradually learn ever more exact divisions and clearly weigh the real meaning of each individual word.

We must also do the same if we want to advance, and not come to a halt or leave unqualified areas behind us.

There must be movement in this, too, instead of rigid and stubborn adherence! When I first explain something in broad outlines I can name it differently than when I go into details and have to make more and more distinctions where at first I could use collective concepts.

And I must *always* give collective conceptions first in order to go into details later on, once your capacity to comprehend has gained to some degree a clear picture of the collective conception; otherwise you would never be able to come to an understanding in view of the vast magnitude of Creation. You would quickly lose the firm ground of real knowledge, and fall into the desultory obscurities which are customary among men, and which characterize the adherents of the numerous sects and of the churches as well.

For this reason let such persons continue to talk. They only give evidence of their superficiality and of shying away from the effort of penetrating into things more deeply. Follow me joyfully *in the way* in which I give it to you. Then you will only gain benefit therefrom, for not only do I make it easier for the human spirit, but I make it possible for him to even grasp the magnitude at least in *those* parts with which he is connected and upon which his activity remains dependent.

Just as the spiritual currents carry the *spirit*-germs, so the substantiate currents carry the *substantiate*-germs along their courses. Only later on can we speak specifically about the starting-point, the species and the activities of all these currents. As a beginning today let us simply accept the conception that all these currents, like the air and waters of the earth, are fructifying, preserving and purifying — in short furthering in every respect. Moreover these currents were also

in part already known to earlier man; for the river “Styx” in Greek mythology for example, belongs to this.

But let us now return to the purpose of today’s lecture after these digressions.

The substantiate-germs are carried by currents of a substantiate nature. Despite the *basic substantiate species* of the currents there are, however, quite different and varied individual species; and for this reason ever more side-currents seeking their own path gradually separate from the original main current as it follows its course through the various planes. For as the distance from the Light increases the various individual species separate as side-currents, which ultimately contain the whole of only *one* very definite species of being; and in obedience to the Law these side-currents only carry along with them the corresponding homogeneous species of substantiate-germs.

In this way such substantiate-germs proceed towards their destinations, fulfilling the Law of Creation. They are divided into such germs as are closely connected with flowers, with other plants, likewise with water, air, with the earth and rocks, with fire, and with many other individual things in the worlds of matter as well.

On every individual plane and indeed on each intermediate plane, with the flow of the currents, beings are always deposited which are appropriate to and homogeneous with the respective plane, i.e., they remain behind where they have to work since this is where they become conscious. All this takes place through the natural and most simple operation of the Laws, in such a way that it could not possibly be any other way.

In each intermediate plane specific kinds of beings awaken to consciousness in a manner that in each case corresponds with their strength, and they begin to work there in a forming, protecting and tending way.

Finally there remain merely those beings in these currents which can come to consciousness only on the celestial bodies of

the *coarsest worlds of matter*. And as the last deposit thereof there are also substantiate-germs, which cannot immediately awaken in the coarse world of matter, but which need a special development.

However, this again is only a large picture I am giving you for the time being, which you can best take in at first as if you were looking at a *flat* map, observing the courses of the streams, rivers and brooks with their many branches and apparently self-chosen paths.

Only *then* can you *round off* the picture and imagine that water veins also stream through the interior of the earth, not merely on the surface, and the same with air currents. In this way you will eventually have gained in picture form a part of *this* kind of happening in Creation.

If men of the earth would swing and serve *aright* in the Will of God, the earth would actually be a harmonious albeit a coarse reproduction of Creation. It is only due to the perversity of mankind that this has not yet happened.

Now let us at last speak of *substantiate-germs*, which we had taken as our subject. Those that are most closely related to the spirit-germs of earthmen as regards their development are the small flower-elves of the earth. From your perspective, these awaken in the cups of earthly flowers, although not in the way you imagine it! It is true that they are in the flower-buds which form their coarsest protective cloak until they awaken, but there is something else in addition.

In reality they lie softly embedded in a layer of fine, delicate gross matter, not visible to you in the earthly sense. At the same time however, they also lie in an earthly flower-bud. Invisible to you, the delicate layer of gross matter not only penetrates the bud but also the entire earth and its surroundings.

It is in this layer that the actual development to consciousness of the flower-elves takes place, while the earthly flower-bud remains but the coarsest *outer* protection, of which the flower-elves are pretty well *independent* despite a certain

connection.

Nor do they die as the flowers wither, but their development continues through their helpful tending of new earthly flowers, and partly also of new elf-children. Their strength grows with their ability.

So it goes on and ever onwards to the point where they can lift themselves in full maturity to another, new field of activity; for as with the spirit-germ so with the substantiate-germ... both are subject to the *one Divine Law* of development which is uniform in its effect!

Nor are the small elves left unprotected from danger as they develop, so that their habitation, even while a flower-bud, could be eaten by animals or destroyed by an inconsiderate human hand, as it would seem in the gross material sense.

The flowers are, of course, *tended* by developed elves, but not every flower has an elf-child living in it, only those that are specially protected and inaccessible to danger do, as far as one can speak of inaccessibility. Also in cases where danger approaches they are immediately carried away as long as they have not yet become conscious.

I first mention the flower-elves because they have always been and still are standing in the swinging of the Will of God. They *cannot* be influenced by the will of men, but they always weave and breathe in the vibrations of the Light!

In this fact lies the secret as to why *every* flower, even the simplest one, is radiant with beauty; for the flower-elves stand in the Light! Owing to their delicacy they have feminine forms and, because they are attuned to the Light, they are of the most exquisite beauty.

On the basis of the Message you will now already be able to deduce that there are also elves which have masculine forms according to their activity.

These are denser and more positive, because they occupy themselves with a harder material. The tree elf, for instance, has a masculine form.

The form and density always correspond with the activity.

Thus, because they are working with earth and rocks, the gnomes also have masculine forms. They are denser, while the nixies or water sprites of the liquid element bear feminine forms on the other hand.

You yourselves can draw further conclusions and will always hit upon what is right, if you use the Message in which you find the Laws of Creation as a basis.

What is said here concerns the developed substantiate beings of your surroundings on earth! Everything which is closely connected with the *coarsest* world of matter can really only count on quickly visible success through positive activity and in greater density. Therefore that which is masculine is always the part inclined towards what is denser and thus lower, the part which acts positively. On the other hand, that which is feminine is the part inclined towards the more delicate and thus higher, the part which receives negatively!

Such is the arrangement of Creation according to the Will of God, and only when man also adjusts himself accordingly and swings therein will real ascent come to him, which he cannot achieve in any other way! For then all his activity swings in the Cross of Creation, in which positive with negative, working actively and receiving passively, hold the balance!

And ever again it is still the *woman* of humanity who does *not* fill her post in Creation!

If you reflect upon all this calmly you can come to undreamed-of conclusions, and to clarifications that have so far seemed almost insolvable to you. But your intellect will not acquiesce so readily and quietly, but will ever again want to sow doubt in order to confuse you and thus hold you fast in the spell which it was able to inflict upon you almost without opposition during past centuries.

There are probably many people in whom the questioning thought arises: And the furies? Do they not also have feminine forms even though their activity is of a very positive nature?

Therefore I will already deal with this subject now and explain to you:

The furies exist in both masculine and feminine form, yet both have *one* aim alone in spite of their diverse effects: destruction!

The furies, however, are *not substantiate beings*. Such a thing does not originate from the Will of the Light! Furies are nothing but the products of men's volition. They belong to the demons that must immediately perish when men's volition improves and turns to the Light!

True, they are very dangerous, and in the Judgment they are set free so that they can rush upon all mankind. But they can only do harm where they can attach themselves, i.e., where they find homogeneous evil or fear in a person.

Through this the furies must also serve the Light, for they do away with evil men on earth and thus further the great purification. As soon as this is completed the furies also obtain no further nourishment, and must automatically perish.

But whoever has fear in the Judgment lacks conviction about the Word of Truth, and thus also confidence in the Omnipotence of God and in His Justice, which so often manifest in the helping Love!

Such a person will then *rightly* fall victim to his lukewarmness or indolence. He is *meant* to be seized and destroyed by the furies during the Judgment! Therefore in the end *that* is also a simple happening which in its dreadfulness must proceed along the paths of the Holy Law of God!

The furies unleashed! This means they are not restrained, but for a time will be allowed to have completely free reign.

Men will not be protected from them, but will be abandoned to the raging.

However, it is quite natural that *those* people who have the right inner conviction and who are connected with the Light cannot be attacked, for no resonance can be found within them to which the furies can cling in order to confuse them.

During this upheaval those connected with the Light stand as if in a cloak which cannot be penetrated, and upon which every attacking evil volition injures itself. This cloak has grown automatically during the hours of danger through the firm

trust in God.

But men who in their conceit or presumption think they are faithful, and yet have faith only in their church but not in *God*, and who are thus not inwardly alive, will be tossed hither and thither like a withered leaf in a storm. They must also perish in this turmoil unless, through this happening, they recognize in time that they have been hollow in their rigid belief, and ardently exert themselves to absorb life from the Light of Truth which shines above all the storms.

Remain wakeful and strong so that the furies cannot find resonance within you! In your deeds become like the many small substantiate helpers which in their faithful service are an example for men!

---

## Forerunners.

When you, mankind, will come to recognize your entire burden of guilt toward God then you will hardly have hope for mercy or clemency; for you truly do not deserve it.

The more the view about the past expands, the more does one threatening reproach after another arise accusingly against you from past millennia, joining together to form a dense, gapless ring which, becoming tighter and tighter, closes in on you.

Eventually this ring will fall down upon you and crush you, unless you thankfully grasp the rescue rope which will lift you out from these clutches which hold destruction, and with it the end of your guilt, which at the same time must now also bring about your end.

Therefore awake, you men, and pull yourselves together! As a help to you all the veils are being lifted from the past by the Light, which thereby lets you recognize where you have failed, and how wrongly you have always acted!

You cannot say that in past ages *other* people burdened themselves with guilt, and that you have no share in all of it. This is a great error, for it was you *yourselves*, one here, the other there, not always at the same time and not always in the same place; but in some way or other the threads have already connected you with *every* happening! Even if you have not hitherto become conscious of it.

Absorbed as you are in earthly things, you are not even aware of all the help that the Light has given you over and over again, at *all* times and without fail, so that you had no need to stray from the right path... but your spirit knows of it, because it has so often been part of it!

Only your deep fall through voluntary enslavement to the intellect has brought you to the point where you can no longer perceive any of this, and your spirit is unable to penetrate to your day-consciousness on its own, because you keep it walled up in your present earthly heaviness.

Moreover, you do not even give your spirit an opportunity to bestir itself, because in its place you have sinfully raised its tool, your earthbound intellect, to the leading position.

This has automatically closed all the paths from the Luminous Heights to you. You yourselves desperately keep away everything that might disturb this unhealthy twilight state of your spirit, just so that you need not be aroused from the self-complacent comfort of your know-it-all attitude, cultivated through the conceited false over-estimation of your own worth!

How terrible must the true recognition for such people be now!

*This* is primarily what holds back many from receiving the Truth from out of the Light! Fear and apprehension, while still trying to stay deeply hidden, already make their slight shudders noticeable without many being aware of it, until suddenly sharp blows from the Light relentlessly force them into an involuntary awakening!

Indeed, apprehension and fear of any ray of the clear cold Light that brings the Truth and which in its incorruptibility clearly exposes the errors and faults of these earthmen; *that* is the reason for the reckless hesitation of many to step courageously into the luminous ray!

None of them will readily give up the comfort of their own conceit which flatteringly follows their desires. For this reason they still prefer old habits to the disturbance which my Word is *bound* to cause them at first, until gradually they find in It true peace, and arise spiritually as *new* human beings, swinging joyously and knowingly in the Laws of God.

Then they will perceive the Holy Will of God as only beneficent, helpful and furthering, but never harsh or

oppressive, as their wrong attitude today must still make it appear to them.

It is a clear sign of a wrong attitude and proof of being on the wrong path for *those* people who *are offended by* the Word of Truth because It *does not please* them!

This “does not please” is one of the best ways of expressing the rejection by those people who think that they can *choose* the Truth, and need take from It only what *pleases* them, or, as they so aptly put it, what “*appeals*” to *them*! You see yourselves what damnable vanity and self-complacency of personal arrogance lie in this very term, in the whole *manner* of approaching the Word, if indeed they condescend to consider it at all!

There is no real earnestness; much less the humility that is necessary in order to find anything in It at all; for Truth is never obtrusive.

However, I say to you, men have *no choice*, but will now have to bow down and descend from the throne of their self-glorification of a false concept of who they are!

If in the course of thousands of years men had not *always* acted as they still do *today*, if they had not time and again distorted everything that was intended to help them, in order to adapt it to their human way of thinking and their earthly desires, there would now be only *one uniform* teaching here on earth, issuing from the Will of God. There would not be so many different creeds in existence.

All the teachings that have come to earth in the past would, *united*, form a *single flight of steps* to the pedestal on which the Truth is to stand according to the Holy Will of God, as it has so often been proclaimed to mankind in various revelations.

There would be no differences in the interpretations, much less in the teachings themselves!

For all teachings were at one time willed by God, precisely adapted to the individual peoples and countries, and formed in complete accord with their actual spiritual maturity and receptivity.

Originally they all led in a completely straight line to the Holy Divine Word of Truth, which you find in the Message. Even at those times everything was leading up to the time of the Final Judgment, which *is* today! The Bringers of all the individual teachings, with the exception of those coming down from the Light Itself, were Forerunners of the Word of Truth Itself.

And these Forerunners have made great efforts, very often amid intense inner struggles, to fulfill their tasks loyally, despite all the obstructions that men sought to put in their way again and again.

However, even in those days, men as always completely failed in every case, in that soon after the passing of the heralds who prepared the way, they always distorted their words, or else completely left out and withheld from posterity anything they could not quite understand.

But that which they tried to withhold, since at the time they themselves could not understand it, was actually the most *important* of all!

Since these most important proclamations naturally always spoke of the highest in every teaching, which had always become accessible to only a very small circle, because the masses would not yet have grasped it anyway, it was not difficult to hold them back at first, and it was also explainable, as a result of which however, they were completely forgotten in time.

But a wise Providence did not let them vanish altogether. The time is coming and already near, when tidings will come from all countries of written records which tell of these olden times and rise as witnesses against the distortions brought about by a conceited mankind.

It will then become evident that later followers of the teachings are no longer in touch with the original teaching as such, which was totally different from what is practiced and taught today! Indeed even the Truth Itself brought by Jesus was distorted in Its expressions, and its meaning.

Alas, much energy and much good volition was wasted by many of the faithful on errors which formed in the course of the millennia such that today one sees in a completely *strange* form, even the teachings of all those wise men who had already been forerunners for the Word of the Truth Itself, such as Krishna, Lao Tse, Buddha and Zoroaster. The contents of what those Prophets themselves taught in their time is different. Even the descriptions of their earth-lives were distorted in the course of time. They do not accord with the reality.

With unspeakable forbearance and inconceivable loving Kindness, the Light has already spent thousands of years, even hundreds of thousands of earth-years in painstakingly developing and preparing you for the time when you must judge yourselves, in order either to perish in the process or to be able to ascend gloriously into the Luminous Gardens of Eternal Joy.

And now, at the dawning of this time, which has been pointed to continually, mankind stands further from the Truth than ever! They stubbornly pursue only the products of their own imagined knowledge, thereby falling into the abyss of disintegration at the last sword-thrust of the God-willed, purifying separation! — — —

Men, what do you think awaits you now? I shall make no further reference, for you will soon experience it yourselves! — — —

Yet even in this time of the most hopeless chaos, the Light helpfully pours forth in abundance ever new blessings from the fountain of Its inexhaustible Omniscience, blessings that must still automatically develop as the cycle of each and every happening draws to a close, and which are available to all those who recognize their value, and gratefully make use of the help given.

Once more the Light removes from all things the veils that have been woven around them by the human mind and were bound to thereby cause the present chaos.

During the Judgment the Light restores the *Truth* to you, and with It recognition of the continuity in the great guidance, which wished to lead humanity *step by step* and with great care to the recognition of the Light, which purpose all these teachings were to serve.

Only due to petty human thinking and human vanities did such *differences* and sometimes even contradictions develop from what was originally always only *one* and was never meant to lead apart!

Here, too, the Darkness very cleverly recognized and exploited the weaknesses of earthmen in order to achieve its goal, which is hostile to the Light.

And these earthmen, who were ever and again given so many aids from the Light, have followed all of the enticements of the Darkness through their vanity and self-complacency, only too willingly and even joyfully!

And *you* too were once among *these* human beings, although today you completely dismiss any such guilt, and, if possible, seek to lay the blame only onto others.

Every single human being incarnated on earth today has once, and in most cases even *several times*, had the opportunity to follow the call of the Light faithfully! At least *once* he received the unadulterated teaching of a Forerunner.

Yet in spite of mankind's continuous transgressions in this respect, the Light, with the Judgment and the associated closing of the cycles of all happenings, once more brings the opportunity to recognize all that It has done for men up until now, to save them from their final downfall!

With the closing of these cycles, the experiences of all the Forerunners, their development and also their work in the ray of the Light, is revealed once more as it *really* was, in order to straighten out all that has been distorted, and to protect it for all time from the sinful ambitions of self-acclaimed possessors of knowledge.

The earth-lives and the work of the known Forerunners, from Hjalldar up to Krishna, Lao Tse, Buddha and

Zoroaster, and some others as well, will come to life again, because *every* beginning must now be joined to the end, thus completing the cycle in order thereby to judge itself, to ascend or to fall.

In the stories of *all these* you will once more clearly see the great, consistent guidance from the Light, but you will also see the loathsome struggle of the Darkness against every help that was intended for mankind.

In the past man has been able to play the decisive role depending on whether he accepted or rejected this help. However, when he distorted the pure teachings through thinking that he knew better, he rendered service only to the Darkness, not to the Light! Thus he brought confusion and enmity as consequences of those teachings which should actually have *unified* if they had remained *pure* at that time; as pure and as clear as they were given.

That such evil results could ensue merely shows that the present forms of these teachings *must* be the *work of men*; for what comes from God, or what is carried out in purity at His behest, knows neither hate nor enmity!

Take *this* truth as the touchstone for all things! Wherever you find intolerance and malice, or even hostility and agitation against others who are not of the same faith, wherever men seek to harm those of different belief, either *the teaching is not from God* or it has been falsified! And such people serve only the Darkness, *never the Light!*

A teaching that permits this *must* be distorted, whatever it is called; for a teaching that has not yet been distorted will swing in purity in the Laws of God. It does not produce human beings who wish to harm their fellow-men!

Of course there are also people who, although they avail themselves of a pure teaching, then misuse it for *their own ends*, as you may often find in world history, and in the history of many individual nations, who are always eventually driven to their downfall through this, although here and there they sometimes appear to rise.

It is striking how those who act thus are *always* the *servants of such teachings* themselves, who since olden times have always called themselves priests or servants of *God*. And they have always presented these teachings in such a way that their interpretations would advance the fulfillment of their selfish desires. Through this, however, the sense of the teachings was already distorted, and without realizing it, the adherents and believers served only the *temples and churches, but not truly God!*

And these so-called servants of God have always jealously guarded the maintenance of their earthly influence over the faithful, and constantly sought to extend it, because to them it meant, and indeed it was, both authority and... their livelihood, their subsistence!

Thus it became a struggle, which they carried on with *every available means*, but it was a struggle for earthly survival, in which *any means* seemed to be justified to them! Indeed even today you can very easily see this fact demonstrated everywhere!

Naturally this eventually also produced hatred and hostility, intolerance and agitation against their fellow-men. However, nobody serves God with this for God *forbids* such evil things, which moreover, even if considered from a purely earthly perspective of *justice*, reveal only the unclean mindset of *the one* capable of such actions; but which cannot harm the one at whom they are aimed, in the eyes of those *who are still of an upright mind!*

Thus there are *two* different reasons for what is false: Either the teaching as such has been distorted by human hand and mind, or else its servants seek to use it in a wrong sense for purposes that are primarily of a very *earthly*, selfish nature. The *application* of the teaching is then distorted and exploited for selfish purposes.

The one is just as reprehensible as the other. Yet to make use of a pure teaching primarily for selfish purposes is even worse than if the teaching itself is distorted out of ignorance.

All this will now be revealed in the Judgment! But on men themselves who have thus sinned against the Spirit, who has again and again given to all of them only the *one* teaching, as a basic concept of a God-Willed existence in this Creation: *Love thy neighbor*, which means *respect* him as such! *Therein* lies the adamantine command: that you must never *consciously* harm him, either in his body or in his soul, either in his earthly possessions or in his reputation!

He who does not keep this commandment, and acts otherwise, serves not God but the Darkness, to which he gives himself over as a tool!

He knows neither God nor His All-Holy Will, which lies in His Word. Consequently he does not know the Word of God in Its *true meaning*! This everyone clearly proves through the nature of his activities, that is, in his speech and in his deeds! You can immediately see who truly serves God, or only the Darkness!

Take *this* with you as guidance into the fight that you must win against everything that serves the Darkness and that is itself of the Darkness.

If you stand firmly in the Word it will not be difficult for you to remain victorious at all times; for the Light is forever *stronger* than the Darkness, and the Omnipotence of God is with you if you serve truly!

---

**When the need is greatest,  
God's help is nearest you!**

**W**hen the need is greatest, God's help is nearest to you! These words have been quoted through all the lands for a long time.

From the lips of many people they come as words of comfort, but alas often thoughtlessly, and just in order to say something when sorrows oppress others.

This beautiful saying, which contains a *promise*, has become an empty phrase of social politeness.

Those, however, who do not wish to, or who for any one of a thousand reasons are hesitant to name God, and there are many of these, will instead say: "Rain is followed by sunshine!" or utter some other common phrase that signifies the same thing. Indeed there are plenty of those.

Yet not one of them bears within it the deep earnestness and also the power, as does the word:

When the need is greatest, God's help is nearest to you!

Anyone thinking of these words in times of deep distress will feel the uplifting power that flows from them. There is something special about them which none of the other numerous comforting phrases possesses. It stands out like a triumphant hero, and you perceive this without clearly understanding the cause of this reassuring effect.

However, he who stands in the Message knows the power of the word when it swings in the Law of Creation. Therein lies the secret of this effect. The phrase quoted here is firmly linked with the vibrations of the Light and therefore transmits a power that must surprise *if it falls on fertile soil*.

As with everything, however, the basic condition is: The soil must be prepared for it!

In times of great distress the soil *is* often prepared through experiencing shock. Through those experiences, the words can form a bridge for the help from the Power of the Creator, which is available for every creature, since it vibrates throughout the entire Creation. A creature only needs to look up to the Lord trustingly; for trust always forms the best channel for help from the Power.

When using this phrase the process is as follows: The words "When the need is greatest, God's help is nearest to you" *awaken trust in the human being who believes in God.*

In this way the words form a bridge; for the trust they instill rises like a petition, a prayer, because the human spirit *feels it* intuitively. The spirit then opens itself to receiving new strength, which in turn streams through it to those points which afflict and oppress it.

Thus these points of approaching evil volition come into the ray of the Light, which conquers that evil.

But where a person does not believe in God's help, these words cannot awaken *that* trust that is needed to admit the Holy Light-Power, and direct it to those places that cause the distress.

Do not think, however, that you are to transmit the Power of the Light striking you through selfish thoughts of hatred and schemes of destruction. These would be impure channels, through which even the Power of the Light cannot flow without being dimmed.

And any such dimming has a weakening effect. You would thereby lessen the effect of the help intended for you. Only if you are capable of receiving the Power in *pure* trust in God, which asks for God's help and leaves it to His Wisdom as to the way in which He will help, only *then* is it right and possible to use the power undimmed to avert and eliminate evil.

You need not and may not harbor ideas of your own as to the nature and form of the outcome! Await in calm confidence.

Your suffering will surely point the way to the Power! And thus even the most severe suffering will eventually have to turn away from you, without your burdening yourselves anew through thoughts of rash anger or hatred.

This is why these words are given to you as a warning: Vengeance is *mine*, I will repay!

They are intended to indicate to you how to conduct yourselves according to the Will of God, and therewith as is inherent in the Law of Creation, so that then the Power of the Light can really help you! Indeed, it is you who must form the channel for it.

Wherever you look you see help all around you, help envelops you, so that you simply could not fall, if you *want* to see. And you can only see, that is to say “know”, through the knowledge of the Laws of God in Creation which bear the Will that helps you wherever you fall into distress, provided you yourselves do not close yourselves off from the helping power!

The time will soon come when you will stand deeply shaken before the Greatness of God and before His Love, which lies in and works through His Will! You will feel like dying of grief in the recognition of your neglect, your guilt, which not only repulsed all this help, but in its conceit tried to raise itself above it. And conceit always springs from smallness; for greatness does not know conceit, since it no longer has the need to be conceited.

Therefore conceit is always a sign of inner smallness, and expresses the awareness that smallness needs conceit in order to *appear* somewhat greater than in truth it is! Especially the awareness of one's own smallness is the best nourishment for conceit.

In reality you human beings have been so cushioned by your Creator that nothing could happen to you. You are guided and led so that nothing can throw you off the right course, unless you *yourselves* wish it!

And yet you have sunk so deeply, have turned away from the Light. What was impossible in all simplicity, you have achieved

and forcibly brought about through frivolous vanity: straying from the right path, which was leading upwards in a perfectly straight line!

You *wanted* to be in the swamp, and the decision of your free will pushed you down, ever deeper, exactly that free will that was meant to lift you upward, in yearning for the Light.

As yet you do not realize the full weight of your guilt! But it now rises against you a thousandfold from all sides and bursts upon you just as was to be expected.

From now on, the dense veils will be lifted more and more from one week to the next; for you must *come to recognition* and then perish, unless you still choose to exert all your strength in order to cling imploringly to the last help, and are ready to begin a completely new life, humbly striving to recognize the Greatness of God in Creation, in order to obey the Holy Will through service and to ascend in It to the Luminous Heights.

Thereby you will also slowly uplift your surroundings and, in the purity of beauty, strive towards perfection, which, as the manifestation of the condition of your spirit, comes about in the growth and blossoming of its maturity.

Indeed, you have urgent need of this help! All of you, without exception. Therefore today I make a special call to you once more, that when the need will be greatest, God's help will also be nearest to you! But you must prepare within yourselves the soil that is able to receive this help, which is a condition necessary for everything that comes to you from the Light!

Do not be flippant in your trust in God or superficial in your faith; for you can receive help *only* if this trust is anchored within you strongly and firmly.

And to you bearers of the Cross, let it be told one more time: Whenever you have to suffer from tribulations the Darkness seeks to cause you, do not in your distress harbor any thoughts of hate, but remain free of such and lift your eyes confidently only to the Light, to God, who will never forsake you, and who can help you in *any* affliction!

Then you will receive aids which will amaze you, and which *are* miracles to human beings; for God will then reveal His Holy Will, tangibly and visibly to all men who *wish* to perceive It in this help! He will speak through His Omnipotence!

Bear in mind, however, that you may not trifle with this! Jesus, the Son of God, did not cast himself down from the parapet just to show mankind how God protects Him! Take this as an example and a warning.

How often do you thwart the plans from the Light through your thoughtlessness and superficiality, through interposing many a wrong and selfish volition, or by continually making new mistakes.

When the consequences of your behavior then strike you, you lament and call on God to help you! Even though you yourselves have acted against His Will, simply because you have not yet immersed yourselves deeply enough, and have not paid sufficient heed to the calls, hints and warnings from the Spiritual Realm. They are presented to you in rich abundance.

Even the literal observance of the spiritual warnings alone should have sufficed to spare you half, and still more of your sorrows and tribulations. It should always have been your task in all earthly matters to act only in such a way as to make it impossible henceforth for the Darkness to launch earthly attacks! Specifically, however, you have taken your speech and your writing much too lightly!

In that respect you have to make a change. How often have I pointed out that even the best volition can bring about great harm, and that just good volition especially has already done grave damage when a human being acts exclusively according to his own ideas.

If you imagine that often things could not have worked in any other way, you are greatly mistaken. You must not assume that the Lord would not have found other ways than the ones you thought out, if you had fervently implored Him to do so. And *this* is what you still lack, the fervent, child-like praying!

You think that if you have the desire to serve God, He would have to approve all of the ways *you* choose. That is simply an unjust *demand*, and has nothing to do with trust in God.

Learn to pray with all your heart! If you need a solution, then it will most certainly be given to you as an answer in one form or another. But *first* pray that it may be given to you to act *aright* before you commence, and do not pray for success if you have already begun to act in accordance with your own ideas!

Each one of you has the strong guidance from the Grail which you should *ask* to help you! However, this will rarely happen, because you think of your guidance as being in service just as you are, and that it would therefore *have to* help you in the service.

You may also often remember your guidance with *gratitude* when you have successfully completed work which you hardly thought yourselves capable of.

Turn inward seriously and, without delicately sparing yourselves, ask your spirit how you stand in this matter! Many of you will be ashamed to realize how much they have neglected in this regard.

All the books with their accounts from past eras which you are privileged to read, show you clearly and unmistakably how men should live, how they must act in order to achieve success therein.

The purpose for which all of this may be given to you at the present time is not merely to enrich your knowledge now, but once more to show your spirit the paths which it must tread in order to attain to recognition step by step.

In the experiences of others you are shown what the Message proclaims to you and what it demands of you.

Above all, never forget that the Darkness always harbors hatred against the Light and only waits for opportunities to harm it. If there is no other way, it even tries to build up opportunities, either through unscrupulous lies and slander, or through false witness. Any and every method is acceptable to the Darkness, its tools and voluntary helpers, if only it can hinder the Light in Its advance.

For this reason you must be doubly watchful, and try to avoid everything that might make it possible to cunningly form a wrong picture of this.

And where you are hard pressed nonetheless, remember that God's help is nearest to you when the need proves greatest.

However, not to everyone are these words the promise that they *are*. For they must not be taken one-sidedly with the desire to receive only, as is mostly the case with man, but the words also impose a *condition*!

They mention *God*, which presupposes that they are meant for *those* human beings who believe in God and in His Help, His Power. A denier of God would shut himself off from this help from out of the Light!

Now consider the lawfulness that takes effect in these events. It is not difficult to clearly recognize it.

He, who truly believes in God and in His All-Holy Will in the right form and manner, will not malevolently and sinfully act contrary to the *Laws of God*. Hence the way for God's help will always remain open to him!

When he gets into earthly distress, then the cause of this can only lie in *human* works or in human ideas, which *do not* always swing in God's Will, but issue from human selfish calculations.

If he offends *these*, God's help will not be denied him.

For often there is a great difference between what is considered to be guilt in human opinion and before human laws and that which is truly guilt before the Holy Laws of God!

Reciprocal action in Creation can never be deceived in this and never conforms to the wording of *earthly* laws; rather it acts in accordance with the Will of God exclusively.

As soon as an earthly law maker, while drawing up *earthly* laws, does not exactly and meticulously consider whether his laws are actually *in accordance* with the All-Holy Will of *God* in which they will continue to swing, without leading away from It, then every effect will fall heavily on him and hold him tightly bound, even if he is of the opinion that at his time here on earth it would not be possible to do it differently.

This also applies to all who, acting in these laws, aggrieve and bring harm upon others.

All of this is actually so simple and clear that it should not even have to be discussed; for men see it over and over again in all of world history, if they pay attention to it. They could find therein the swift rise of individuals and entire nations who, from an apparent height, had to vanish in a sudden downfall!

This was then always the effect of the reciprocal action resulting from *wrongful* actions, and from many a decision which was not in accordance with the Holy Will of God, which remains forever immutable.

However, when working out earthly laws, he who seeks to derive them from the Will of God will build upon *solid ground* and his works will endure in the blessings and the peace they bring to all who will have to observe these laws!

There is no difference in the effect, regardless of whether these processes concern individuals who on their own sought to establish certain guidelines by their own decisions, or whether they concerned entire nations, by rulers who held the fate of a people in their hands: every decision has to be firmly anchored in the Will of God if blessings are to come from it!

A decision must not be born of a person's self-will, regardless of the goals he pursues. His thoughts must rest in the Will of God; *for God alone is true ruler over everything!*

Every human being remains dependent on Him, be he king or beggar. Protection, help and blessing can come to him only if he attunes himself to the *Will of God*, not to his own! This is how it will be at all times and in the end it always manifests visibly in the effects.

For this reason first weigh within, carefully and minutely, everything you intend to say and do, so that the reciprocal action may bring you only blessing.

It is better for you to consider something ten times, trying to weigh the pros and cons exactly, rather than to say and do anything without reflection even just once, or to consider some things superficially.

Considering something ten times does not require much time. Once you accustom yourselves to it you need only a few seconds; for your intuition weighs with the speed of lightning.

In the beginning it will naturally cost you some effort, until finally it becomes second nature to you in the consciousness of your responsibility!

*All* men must reach this goal, regardless of what they do on earth, where their present existence has placed them.

Then unified, joyful activity will ensue, which has always been the silent longing of *those* human beings who have sought to serve God alone with their earthly life!

---

## Purifying flames.

**A**t this time many people who know about Jesus the Son of God, and who believe in Him and His Mission, are once again celebrating Holy Night.

Although the nature of His Mission has not been recognized in the right way by men, since many think that He had merely come in order to suffer and to die for them here on earth, yet there are also some among them, who in *purest volition*, pray to God and thank Him for sending His Son.

*These* people shall be helped because of their pure volition, albeit through pain and sorrow if they cannot otherwise be brought to recognition of their error!

In that case pain and sorrow are an act of the greatest Love ready to help them once more, lest their pure volition be lost simply on account of a wrong concept they learned in schools and churches, and which they are now unable to give up of their own accord because they are afraid of losing support and incurring earthly hostility.

*These* people shall be helped! However, not those who, similarly led astray, lack the great and pure volition, showing nothing but apathy, superficiality and indifference towards anything connected with this Festival. Nor will help be given to those who from habit regard it merely as an earthly, but not a spiritual Festival!

For them the Ray of Love, which today and for the Festival of the Radiant Star penetrates through the flames of the Judgment, does not hold joyful help but rejection so that they must fall in the Judgment!

The Ray of Love which today reaches the earth again for the first time since moons ago, is harbinger of God's Love Itself, which is slowly moving towards its earthly cloak again,

following the path of the Star which in the primordial force of its spiritual nature, demandingly draws ever nearer to earthly humanity.

Soaring, it approaches as a Herald of God, a witness to Him who was sent to fulfill the All-Holy Will!

Thereby it makes everything *new*; for through it, that which has been marked for collapse in the Judgment implodes and collapses! It triggers the *release*. In its ray you will now experience the *gross material effects*!

In accordance with the Laws of Creation, this is the long-promised release in gross matter of the Judgment which has already taken place! Every human being has already been *judged* according to his works that reveal his innermost being.

This does not refer to his works in the gross material world, which he allows men to *see*, but to the effects of his *true* volition, which he often conceals from others.

The effects of man's volition manifest as his works, which in the lawful and automatic weaving of this Creation remain at first invisible to men, as I have already described in the Message; but they are connected with their author, and must eventually become tangible and visible in gross matter.

And this Divine Judgment has already taken place everywhere! Spiritually it took effect immediately and now it has also taken place ethereally.

The onrushing Radiant Star is the key that unlocks and consummates in gross matter that which has already taken place in the spiritual and ethereal spheres.

The power of the Star *shatters* the walls that man has built around himself; it lets him feel the Judgment, which under the gross-material protection of his earthly body he has hitherto been able to sneak past.

The Star is the key to the gross material happening, for which full preparations have been made by the substantiate helpers!

At the same time, however, it now becomes the last call to all mankind on earth, the last warning, which in quick succession also brings the end. The end which can be a new beginning

only for *those* human beings who are henceforth willing to submit to the Laws of God quite unconditionally, in humble worship of God the Father, who alone is their Lord in all eternity!

*Those* who in their self-will sought to turn away from Him and set up idols of their own choosing will be crushed in the collapse of what they themselves raised up; for these self-chosen idols will now be hurled from their pedestals by the Omnipotence of God.

Men, you live in times of great severity for which you must thank God; because only severity can save you by shaking you out of the deep sleep into which you have fallen through your own volition!

Shock upon shock will now strike you, both in the earthly and the closely linked spiritual sense. Today many people's soul can be affected only if they have to experience *earthly* suffering in the *most severe* form; because they are already far too insensitive in everything, and their walled up souls lie as though paralyzed, dreaming towards the sleep of death.

The stone structure is the work of the earthly intellect; and this must be breached and shattered *first of all* before the soul can perceive anything of the radiations of the Light.

The work of the earthly intellect, which oppresses the spirit, extends across this entire earth, hardening everything, and in many individuals it is especially built-up. At the first thrust of the Light, however, it will very quickly begin to waver.

With the appearance of the Radiant Star however, there will be collapse all around amid the hue and cry of those attached to it, under their curses and mutual recriminations.

All of this mad chaos will then be adorned with acts of madness everywhere but also mixed in with rising prayers of desperation!

For the very reason that the evil work appears to be so firmly established and strong on earth, its downfall will inevitably be the more terrible; because, due to the force of its resistance, the thrust of the Light will become even more powerful.

Then *you* will stand fast in this chaos, with your eyes turned joyfully to God; for if you truly live in the Word, you will be cared for and protected in the Grace of His Omnipotence!

And your steadfastness will provide protection and help for all who pray to the Light in the recognition of God. *You* can explain to the seekers the way that will lead them out of the snares and pitfalls of the collapsing Darkness; so that they are not dragged down with it when, at the last moment, their souls, in a *genuine effort*, seek to grasp the Word.

The fact that the Ray out of Divine Love is being sent already now, along with all of the rays of wrath, is again an act of such immeasurable Grace as men will be able to understand only much later. Today the ray of Love provides the possibility even now for many people to save themselves in the midst of the Judgment, for people who would otherwise have to be lost because their strength would have been insufficient to free themselves from the Darkness, which in its downfall seeks to hold them fast in its clutches.

The Ray of Divine Love is the harbinger of Love Itself! That Love which is closely linked with Jesus, and which in part, comes from out of Him.

Therewith the foundation is *once more* laid *anew* today, as it was once laid through the birth on earth of Jesus the Son of God, so that our Festival of the Radiant Star may again become a Festival of Thanksgiving for the well-nigh inconceivable Love of God!

As on the seventh of September of every year the Festival of Divine Purity, the Festival of the *Lily*, is joyfully celebrated, so through this new Act of the Lord's Grace, the Festival of the Radiant Star has now become the Festival of Divine Love, the Festival of the *Rose!* —

Wherever the Radiant Star sends its pure, spiritually glowing flames into the Universe, there, at the same time, a great Act of Grace of God's Love is always fulfilled!

And if now here on earth it releases the *Judgment*, then this too bears God's Love; for it brings redemption and deliverance

from the Darkness and from all evil volition for those creatures who strive towards the Light!

That the flames of this Star must bring about a *Judgment* is solely on account of mankind, who, with their evil and God-adverse volition, their conceit and egotism, has brought forth evil works, which do not withstand the purifying ray of the Light but waver and crumble beneath it!

In reality this Ray bears in its fire only the purest power for the uplifting of all earthmen and of the earth itself which is now due to take place in the World Happening! thus the radiation of the purest Divine Love, which can be endured only by *him* who swings in the Love of God.

And everything that *cannot* swing in It will be painfully seized, scorched and consumed by the purity of these radiations; for the cleansing flame of this Star is not intended for the spirit only, but for all creatures and for the gross material world also. Part of this purification is the destruction of everything that cannot swing in the Love of God! — — —

The Star would have come at this time *in any event*, to pour out the abundance of its incandescence over the earth, thereby, with its strong spiritual power, pulling both mankind and the earth itself high up into a new realm, where, according to the Law of the Divine Will, it now belongs!

Were earthmen as matured as they now should be in their development, had they sought to observe all the Laws in Creation, the advent of the Star would evoke a jubilant welcome from mankind, and joyous grateful adoration of the Lord who sent it!

However, since this is not so, but mankind on earth, in their failure, have instead sunk even lower than can be considered possible, the appearance of the Star now has a *different* effect. Its effect must first be one of overthrowing and destroying, before the uplifting and constructive power of its radiation is able to have its purest effect; for it will then fall on *that* soil which has been prepared through great distress to receive it worthily!

For *this reason* alone does the Star become the Judgment for humanity and for all that is not in accord with the Will of God. And only that which swings in the *Love* of God is in harmony with His Will, because God *is* Love!

Men, do you now understand the great simplicity that lies in all world events? Whatever takes place therein can always only be *Love!*

You, however, have formed a completely distorted picture of the Holiness of Love, and have dragged the conception of It down into the mire.

This again was solely on account of the earthbound intellect which is incapable of comprehending the intuition of a pure spirit. By its very nature it only understands earthly love which is based on gross material feeling. What is more, it has distorted this gross material feeling into coarse instinct!

As if this were not enough, the intellect, in the course of its over-cultivation, felt urged to degrade this coarse drive even further until it became sin, although, it could well have remained pure, as it has in animals!

To reduce earthmen to the level of an animal was much too petty a goal for the scornfully sneering Darkness. It intended to bring the human race down *much lower still*, even *below* that of any animal!

Human beings had developed slowly under the careful guidance of so many who were chosen by the Light and were designated and prepared for this purpose. And those human beings who had already managed painstakingly to work themselves out of the initially present, but *pure* animal instincts in their bodies, they were not simply to sink to that level again in spite of their already awakened spirits, but they were to be forced lower than where they had stood before.

Over-cultivated by men themselves under the stimulation of the Darkness, the intellect became its willing servant. Endlessly questioning and speculating, it no longer provides a firm foothold for those having thus become dependent on their

intellect, gradually turned a pure animal instinct into a most base and subtly *calculating lust*, thus poisoning in themselves even the animal's naturalness!

Thus everything was fundamentally corrupted and man on earth was effortlessly reduced to being the lowest creature in all of Creation; for, after the fall of man, this was *bound to* happen as the result of the one-sided over-cultivation of the intellect, which automatically grew into all kinds of evil, as long as man did not listen to the many aids from the Light!

It was obvious to the Darkness that man would *not* heed these aids, as it knew his *vanity*, which inevitably continued to increase through the arrogance of the falsely and rampantly growing earthly intellect.

Thus, through the wrong cultivation of the intellect, not only was a deep and deadly soul-trap set for man, but his simultaneously burgeoning vanity became a powerful bar preventing his soul from escaping this trap. For conceit and a presumptuous know-better attitude would no longer easily allow these small-minded earthmen to listen to help from the Light in the Word!

It is right that you should be seized by shudders as soon as I express how deeply man has fallen!

However, it has to be stated now and dragged out of its murky hiding place into the light, so that it can finally be destroyed by the ray of the Star, unless the awakening individual himself burns it in the fire of his awakened spirit. Especially today, on this day of God's Holiest Love, I will fulfill it.

I call this out to mankind, so that they may recognize and extricate themselves from the evil to which they have succumbed as to the strongest narcotic, through the wiles of the utterly perverted intellect! For this, and this alone, has brought them to it.

The Tempter knew only too well that it *had to* come to this, after mankind took the wrong course temptingly offered by him!

Indeed it could not have come about in any other way, for the intellect, which was intended to become merely an executive instrument of the human volition, now *impairs* all volition, thereby establishing itself as a false leader who can have no connection with the Holy Will of God, and is thus cut off from God's Love.

Today especially, at the Festival of the Holy Love of God, which henceforth it is again to become, I have had to show you this picture once more, in order that you may realize what, for the most part, is the nature of *your* present form of love; so that, shuddering, you may reflect and be able yet to receive a spark of pure Divine Love!

I bring out this picture so that it may now be shattered, together with all that is false and can no longer be allowed to exist in Creation after its great purification!

It would never have come to this if mankind had paid attention at least *once* and with a *lasting* effect to the many aids from the Light!

At various times people did listen while a prophet dwelt among them, but after his departure they soon began to speculate about his teaching, and in their rising doubts and intellectual arrogance, to dissect, distort and reshape it according to their own taste. And so mankind on earth sank slowly but surely ever deeper into the morass formed and spread by its own thoughts.

But now pull yourselves together with all your strength! For such happenings will no longer be permitted. It is over, but only *for you* if this time you refuse to listen to God's words, which should raise you to *that* point where man must stand *as a human being* in Creation!

No longer will he be permitted to remain as a monstrosity, neither quite human being nor quite animal, in the perfect work of the Creator, so that he can continue to distort its beauty and hinder and disturb the swinging of pure harmony.

You earthmen, the Holy Judgment approaches! Become *human beings* therefore, or perish in the flames of the Radiant Star!

---

But you who bear the Holy Cross on your foreheads, give *thanks* to the Lord for this great cleansing; for to you who carry the Word of the Message in your souls with purity and a strong volition for the good, and who strive towards the Luminous Heights, to *you* the Star will grant great strength to become *new* within, according to the Will of God!

Under the strong protection of the Light you will pass through these hard times, which will purify you and steadily increase your glowing until you become flames, which in honor of God will shine on earth in the purest worship, and work helpfully among men everywhere, attracting any spirit spark which, in awakening, still seeks to rise towards the Luminous Heights!

Therefore go forth now with confidence in the Word, which will show you the right paths you have to follow, and also give you strength for the hours when it seems you would despair. Remember that everything that happens, whatever it may be, is an Act of Grace of God's *Love*, which enforces the purification!

In future every Festival of the Star, with the hitherto known Christmas shall become a Festival of *Thanksgiving* for the working of God's Love.

Do *your* part toward this end through the help you give to men who will soon turn to you in the distress of their souls.

Bring help to them *in the Word!* For this will remain as the only thing which they need *first* of all!

---

## The gulf of selfish desires.

Whenever words from the Light are offered to an earthman, he alters their meaning in his desire to grasp them, and makes them conform to his earthly-human customs, drawing them therewith into the narrow circle of *his* expectations and desires. Without altering their *wording*, he nevertheless debases them, because he forgets that such words do not issue from the human mind, but come from *that* height which is inconceivable to his understanding.

He does not make the slightest effort in such cases at least to *transpose* his way of thinking, to try to some extent to follow *the path* on which these words *come down* to him, or at least to make this the basis of his desire to grasp them. Instead, in his conceit, he simply assumes that God must speak to him from the *human* standpoint, if He wishes to convey something to him that is for his salvation.

It is in vain to argue against this fact, for it is so, as *is* demonstrated over and over again every day!

But just *this* will be man's ruin; for he has thereby never accepted the hand held out to him for ascent, and now, as a result of the final reciprocal effects he must experience for himself that the hand, which he heedlessly ignored until now, only to proudly pass it by under the delusion of his presumptuous self-knowledge, is withdrawn.

Just *when* in his hour of need he would like to grasp this hand, then he will no longer find it!

Yet it is *so* decisive and so important for every human being to cease this indolence and this conceit, that I must speak of it time and again in order to try to teach men so that they will understand me; for without this change *from the ground up*

they are unable to ascend again spiritually, although in various forms they try to pretend to themselves that they can.

The forms that they themselves devised are really all false, and must now fall to pieces. In the process mankind will be plunged into despair, and then perish, sick in body and soul, unless they first still bring themselves, *like obedient children*, to submit to the Word of Truth, and use *all* their remaining strength to climb laboriously back one step after another, which they had, without noticing, slipped down through their stubbornness in thinking they knew best!

False thinking, owing to the distortion of the earthly intellect!

It is so unspeakably sad that everywhere just *this* cardinal fault of men comes so conspicuously to the fore in all their thinking, and thereby dims the clarity of their outlook.

Whatever man thinks, wherever he tries to investigate, his self-conceit prevents him from finding the Truth, because he thereby stands upon a false foundation from which he is *unable* ever to think rightly, however honestly he tries to do so.

Thus the greater part of all mankind will now sink into the abyss without realizing it, without noticing it at the beginning of the downfall.

But this moment does not lie in the future, it is already here. Most people have already been falling steadily for some time, and will no longer be able to arrest this fall, because their recognition will come far too late; for they did not listen in time to what could still have helped them towards salvation, because in keeping with their vanity, they directed their eyes, in hope and expectation, in the *wrong* direction.

However, when they eventually want to turn back they will no longer be able to attain salvation; for in the meantime a gulf has opened up which cannot be bridged, while they themselves have already drifted too far towards the vortex of destruction, whose sucking maelstrom will never let them go again.

Thus great masses will succumb to their self-willed errors, because in reality they followed most faithfully only their own selfish desires, and paid less attention to everything else.

And this selfish desiring, which has now dominated for thousands of years, and which man has grown and cultivated with great diligence, is *so* deeply rooted through this cultivation that it now thrusts itself into *everything*, so that even as the best volition comes into being it is saturated with the evil, without man's noticing anything of it.

He does not believe it, even when it is pointed out to him, nor does he consider it possible, and yet it is there, it is always lying in wait and suddenly breaks through, often bringing its influence forcibly to bear just when it is necessary to be unselfish, as the service to God demands.

And since in the Kingdom of the Millennium there shall only be service to *God* as the foundation for all work, as the fundamental condition of being permitted to exist at all, you can well imagine what the outcome must be, and what is in store for such humanity! It is something which even the most serious among seekers, or among those who think they have already found, are unable to imagine. And yet it will become deed, far-reaching, sifting, and judging!

You are all included in this; for you too have *not* yet recognized the seriousness of the coming events, and of the demands that God makes upon you.

For this reason I shall once more explain these matters in greater detail; for the time has now come when you must prove yourselves in everything, and also in this.

To me the ever-recurring need to admonish you is dismal indeed; for seldom do I find understanding, and you human beings become used to it. Since it happens so frequently it seems too familiar to you, and therefore you think you have already grasped these things. But the words lie unused in a completely hidden corner of your soul, still waiting to be resurrected.

You do not heed them because you can have them over and over again, or so you think at least, and above all because they do not really suit you. They make you feel uncomfortable, and therefore it seems to you that they weary you or that they could give you nothing new. For this reason you pass them by without gain, and quickly turn again to other thoughts. I know this very well. Nevertheless I shall once again deal more closely with this need for change which is so important and indispensable for you, although you think you already know all about it in detail.

You do *not* know it! Time after time you give fresh and unmistakable proof of this lack of knowledge.

Let us first consider the Word, the Message! I do not single out individual cases from amongst you, but rather, with greater or lesser variation, it is basically always exactly the same with all of the people, even if in these cases the outer forms sometimes manifest quite differently. They are then merely adapted according to the particular earthly circumstances of the individual, to their educational level and to their experiences.

Let us completely ignore the conceited scoffers and the spiritually indolent in this matter; for in any case these pass judgment upon themselves therewith and can no longer be taken into consideration for the future. Thus we need not speak of them at all.

Let us therefore deal with those who are seriously seeking the Light and those who are still *spiritually* active.

Imagine that such a man comes in contact with the Word of the Message. It *must* and *will* touch him somehow, because nothing else is possible with the *spirit* as soon as that Word which comes from out of the Light penetrates to him. Unless it is too heavily walled in or already asleep, every *spirit* will listen to It.

Man will feel either joy or apprehension. He will become absorbed in the Word, and in so doing perhaps come to recognition. Let us consider those who, for their salvation,

*do* come to recognize.

As the Word penetrates them they are deeply moved, they feel liberated and uplifted. Ready to realize their faults and to better themselves, they ask for advice, for strength, and are eager to draw attention to their problems, either verbally or in writing. Their problems are mainly of a mundane and rarely of a *spiritual* nature. They are problems for which they are at fault and which are of their own making.

And mark my words, these are the *good ones*, those who accept the Word and who wish to change! See for yourselves: As soon as they come to recognition they immediately bring wishes which hold the expectation of fulfillment! This they call wanting to *serve* God!

In their opinion they have the great “good volition”, and the power of the Light shall do the rest. Or... must do? Yes, in their opinion the word “must” is quite right, that is, in their innermost opinion! And according to their expectation the Light must help in such *a way as they wish* and think! Indeed their thoughts are wishes, and their silent wishes are their unspoken thoughts that have hardly become clear.

Man thinks that the best and greatest tribute he can give to the Creator and Preserver is to kneel before him and exclaim submissively:

“Here is my soul, Lord. Do with it as You please!”

This is the highest that man is able to achieve, at the same time the most humble and the best, also the right thing... *according to his earthly opinion!*

But this is *not* so! Such activity contains and expresses only the complacency and indolence of his spirit!

God does not want to have to act for man in these matters, but *man* alone must always act *personally* for himself! He must exert himself with all his strength at last to fulfill the Laws of God! to set out on the road which the Word of Truth points out to him once more.

How foolish men are, and yet how clever in deluding themselves about what should be and also must remain the

most precious thing to them, if they wish to be permitted to continue enjoying the blessings of their God.

What is false and distorted in *all* the thoughts and deeds of these earthmen is so terrible that one would have to despair and fear for them, if one did not know of the purifying storm that is now going to rage in the Power of the Light for the salvation of those who still have a small spark of their *spirit* hidden away and smoldering under the coming ruins of all the human errors.

Such a spark will either be kindled into a flame by the storm or extinguished according to the longing and the volition of that spark.

Yet in spite of the deep seriousness of the present time, man still tries to insert his own small desires and his own knowledge into the machinery of the great working of Creation, in order to mold *those* fulfillments which issue from the Omnipotence of God according to his own ideas!

But they will absolutely never admit any of this to themselves! On the contrary, they cling to the thought that their wrong actions *are already* the first step towards transformation. And they call this step humility. They are proud of their confidence in the help from the Light, for which they pray and wait.

In reality, however, they have again mingled their destructive and selfish desires with this first step, and thereby greatly dimmed its will to rise!

Men do not notice any of this. They are disappointed if help is not forthcoming immediately and visibly, although they themselves have only thrown their "volition" into the balance, and nothing else! With them the "volition" was already the deed, which however amounted only to a "*petition*", and which they regard as something especially great already.

Certainly, the "good volition" *in this* is already something great and also rare in the present day distortion, but it does not suffice to fulfill the *demand* that God now makes on mankind for their salvation! Only the most severe and

unrelenting *demand* can still bring salvation to mankind at all; for otherwise they will not come to an awakening, and will soon sink back into the old wrong ways and spiritual indolence.

And God *demands!* He now *demands* from you before He will again give something, because you did not want to resolve to make use of *His* paths voluntarily, which He caused to be woven in Creation for you, and which alone are in accord with *His* Will.

Mankind's good volition is of no avail unless this volition is transformed into *deed*, transformed into deed by men *themselves*, before they step before God with renewed requests!

This is quite clearly stated in the Message as the *fundamental condition*. Men themselves must now *prove* for once, through their own energetic efforts, how serious they are about their own salvation!

Only *then* will the Lord in His Grace once more receive them. However, this is something different, entirely different from what even well-meaning human beings try to imagine! And more than once I have already pointed this out explicitly.

He who refuses to *exert himself* in order to fulfill and to struggle on his *own behalf*, is no longer worthy of help!

Only through honest exertion and toil does help come in the Power, otherwise it will fail to come.

Only through struggle, through *deed*, does every man open himself *aright*, so that Power, and with it help, can stream into him.

The Power *is* help if it is turned to good account, that is, *if it is made use of!* But never otherwise than in his *deeds!* Men must change themselves and *then* come, but they must not come in order *to let* themselves be changed!

*How* man has to change and *what* he must do in the process is clearly explained in my Message!

If he *wishes* to find it therein he *will definitely* find it. In every situation, whatever it may be, my Word will never fail to enlighten the seeker.

Therefore, he who comes and asks has not understood the

Message. He has not gone into it deeply and seriously enough. Thus he is not taking his *seeking* seriously enough! He does not take *that* trouble which is a condition if he is to receive help. Consequently, he will have to wait for help in vain.

Impress this upon your minds, all you who call yourselves seekers! You will find this to be a measure of the liveliness of your spirit itself, a measure with which you will never go wrong.

Asking questions is indolence in a person who has the Message in his hands. He does not bestir himself enough, or he would not have *one* question left.

*Seek* and you *must* find what you need for yourselves! But seek, i.e. exert yourselves, you must.

And through *exertion* you will find *that spiritual experience* which you need if you wish to profit for yourselves from my Word! For if I were continually to explain all your questions, if I were to teach each human being for a hundred years, he could not profit by it; for in spite of this he would not have *experienced* anything!

If he constantly strives to learn more, he simply cannot come to the experiencing of what he learns. Each word he has learned must first become deed! Through activity alone, albeit purely spiritual, can it become the *possession* of the individual!

For this reason it is of no use to always wish to hear new things from me. I have already said enough, so much that your entire earthly existence is not enough to put into practice internally that which I have told you, much less *externally!*

Act first according to what I have said to you *so far!* But you hesitate, thinking you would first like to learn much more, possibly *to know everything*, before you make a real beginning with yourselves.

For you will always be busy committing to your understanding that which is new so that no time is left for experiencing that which you have already been told. And thus you miss *everything!*

From now on give up the pursuit of what is new; for after all

you can only begin with *small things* if you really wish to fulfill everything *completely*, as it *must* be.

In this entire Creation there is no fulfillment whatsoever without a beginning, which is followed by a continuous growth, culminating in flower and fruit which in turn bear new life within.

As the physical body becomes sluggish when it is overly satiated, so it must be with you in your *present state!* There is no alternative. Just set out vigorously, modestly and humbly, and only *then* slowly but surely go *forward* in the knowledge!

Otherwise you can achieve nothing, because *everything* in the Message is *new* for earthly mankind, although some of it may seem familiar to you. But it only *seems* so because you try to deal with it too superficially.

If you consider it *rightly*, through the diligent exertions of an active spirit, it is *new!*

Just exert *yourselves*, and do not immediately come with questions about the hindrances and burdens you have to suffer at the moment. First of all absorb my *Word* aright and seek to *experience* It within yourselves, then everything will surely change!

Therefore observe yourselves closely, and see to it that in your service you can become capable of laying aside your propensity for selfish desires, which naturally you can only achieve if you manage to recognize this fatal fault of yours.

This is not difficult, as soon as you examine yourselves in the Word of the Message with the relentlessness that every serious seeker and everyone striving for the Luminous Realms *must use towards himself*, if he is sincere in his seeking and his striving.

That is the first difficult step, the fulfillment of which will then make all the others easier. Just gather your strength and also your courage and take this step, then help will blossom forth for you everywhere without you still having to especially ask for it.

You will then reach the point when you will only have to

mutter thanks, and ever again thanks to your God, while any petitioning will become unnecessary of itself.

Go forth and act accordingly, so that peace and joy may soon dwell with you! — — —

---

## Soul.

**M**any people who have absorbed my Message very well are nevertheless not yet quite clear about the expression “soul”! But it is necessary that there be clarity about this too.

It is just about the soul that mankind have always talked much too much, thus forming an everyday picture which in its superficiality has become a common concept without any substance at all.

When the word soul is mentioned, an image similar to a washed-out, time-worn painting arises before man. Faded and devoid of meaning, it passes quietly by them. It tells the individual nothing because it has been used too much.

For this very reason, though, since it can no longer mean anything, it was gladly appropriated by *those* people who, with meaningless eloquence, wish to let their false light shine in areas that could not be opened to human knowledge because the human being of today keeps himself closed off from them.

*Those* people who pretend to deal seriously with the subject also fall into this category. They keep themselves closed off on account of their wrong way of seeking, which is not seeking, because they approach such work with preconceived and much too narrowly limited opinions, wanting to confine it to the perception of the earth-bound intellect, which on its own, can never attain to the possibility of absorbing anything of this.

Give a magnifying glass which has been ground for short-sightedness to a far-sighted eye... you will realize that the eye cannot recognize anything with it.

It is no different with the activity of these seekers whose work is based on erroneous principles from the start. If they can find anything at all it will only appear blurred and distorted, and in no case will it correspond with the facts.

The term "soul" was relegated into this unknown area which appeared blurred and always distorted for lack of adequate tools, but it was presented as if it were based on firm knowledge.

Man dared to do this by telling himself that there was no one to refute the assertion anyway.

However, all this has become so deep-rooted that nobody wants to let go of it now, since this unfounded and undefined picture presents itself ever again in connection with the word soul.

In this regard men probably think that as long as they leave as broad a picture as possible, they cannot go wrong as easily as when strict boundaries are drawn.

At the same time, however, a broad picture does not convey anything specific, it is confusing, if not unfounded and blurry, as it is in this case. It does not mean anything to you, because it is not right in itself.

For this reason, I will explain once more in clear words what the *soul* actually *is*, so that at last you will see it absolutely clearly and no longer flounder in the use of expressions the true meaning of which you do not really know.

The fact that people have been speaking so much of soul is partly due to the fact that the *spirit* of man was not sufficiently active to show that it exists, *too*.

That people have always spoken of their soul only and preferred to think of the spirit as being a product of the earthbound intellect was really the best and most striking evidence of the true and sad condition of all mankind of the present time!

The soul was considered to be the deepest, the innermost, and it went no further than this, since the spirit is indeed asleep, or at least much too weak and indolent to make itself noticeable as such. For this reason, it played a subordinate role with apparent justification. The spirit itself which is really *everything* and the only thing that really *lives* within man or, better said, that *should* live but alas, is asleep.

That the spirit had to be content with a subordinate role is clearly shown in many of the known terms. For example, spirits are primarily understood as ghosts. We say that they “ghost” around.

Wherever the expression “spirit” is used in common parlance the connotation is always either of something unwelcome and which one would rather avoid, or of something a little dubious, not quite clean or even malicious, in short, something which manifests and works in an inferior manner. That is unless the term “spirit” is associated with the intellect.

In such cases, where the expression is used in connection with the intellect, it even contains a kind of respect. So badly distorted is the pseudo-knowledge in these fields. You only need to consider these two expressions by interpreting them according to today’s conceptions:

*Spiritualized and soulful!*

Here too, according to old habit you will instinctively place the expression “spiritualized” closer to earthly, i.e., masculine activity, namely to intellectual knowledge, and you will intuitively perceive the expression “soulful” as being more feminine, more elevated, but at the same time also vaguer, not to be bound in words, and as being less earthly. In other words: more introverted but vaguer, and therefore without strict boundaries, being more unearthly!

Just try it, you are sure to find the confirmation within yourselves! These are the fruits of men’s present opinions, which have been so wrong and bound to produce wrong conceptions, since the *spirit’s* connection with its spiritual home had been cut off, and consequently it was also cut off from the supplies of power from the Light!

It was bound to become stunted and also forgotten, because here on earth it remained immured in the physical bodies, and thus as a matter of course all views were also bound to be altered correspondingly.

A person who disappears in lifelong imprisonment is soon forgotten by the public, while all those who did not at one time

live in his immediate vicinity know nothing about him whatsoever.

It is the same with the spirit during its captivity on earth!

However, from the Message you already know that it is the spirit *alone* which makes man a human being, that only through the spirit can man become a human being!

This again is proof to you that all creatures on earth today who keep their spirit imprisoned, cannot be regarded as human beings by the Light!

The animal has nothing of the spirit, therefore it can never become a human being. And a man who buries his spirit and does not allow that which makes him human to be active is in reality not a human being!

Here we touch on a fact which so far has not received adequate consideration: I say that it is the spirit which marks a man as a human being, which makes him one. The expression “to *make* a human being” implies that *only* through its *activity* does the spirit form the creature into a human being!

Therefore, in order to be human it does not suffice to carry the spirit within, rather a creature becomes a human being only if and when it allows the spirit to *work as such* within!

Take this as the foundation for your life on earth! Take this as the basic conception for your future life here on earth! Outside of the coarse world of matter it will become evident automatically, as soon as you no longer wear your physical body.

But whoever allows his spirit to work as such within himself will never again be able to allow the Darkness to arise anew, nor would he allow himself to be ensnared by the Darkness.

You were allowed to recognize, and you must now also see the end to which everything leads when the spirit within men cannot become active, because it is suppressed and kept away from any supply of power from the All-Holy Light of God!

Just as only *he* who allows the spirit to work within himself is considered a human being by the Light, so shall it also

become henceforth on this earth! *This is the foundation for ascent and for peace!*

For whoever enables the spirit to become active within himself can *only* walk on the path to the Light, which ennobles and uplifts him ever more, so that finally he will spread blessings around him wherever he goes.

Now I wish to repeat once more what the soul is, so that you will drop all the old views and have a firm support in this matter henceforward.

It is best if you first of all tell yourselves that it is the *spirit* that makes man a *human being* before all the gross material creatures on earth.

We may equally well and justifiably explain that the *spirit* is the real *human being*, which must develop in various cloaks from germ to completion, since it always carries the urge to do so within itself.

The outermost point of its development, namely *that* point, which as being the furthest away from the Light, is thus also the point where the spirit, under the pressure of the heaviest, densest cloak, must develop its own volition most intensely, whereby it can and is meant to become aglow, so as to be able to ascend again, closer to the Light. In Ephesus this point is the gross-materiality of the earth.

Through this, the sojourn on earth becomes the *turning-point* of all the wanderings! Thus it is quite especially important.

And it was just here on earth that the spirit was fettered and walled-in by men themselves through wrong volition, under the influence of the creeping Darkness. Thus at the very point where it was meant to achieve the most resplendent radiance through the most intense, animated activity, the spirit was compelled to inactivity from the very outset, which brought in its train the failure of mankind.

Therefore, the activity of the Darkness is most intense at this turning-point which is so important for the human spirit, and consequently the battle is fought *here*. The end of the struggle

must bring the complete defeat and destruction of Darkness if humanity on earth is ever to be helped again at all, so that they will not be lost completely.

Thus the activity of the Darkness has always been most intense here on earth, for it is here that the turning-point of the wanderings of the human spirit forms itself; and secondly, it was easiest for the Darkness to interfere just here, since it is here that man is furthest away from the origin of the helping Power of the Light, and can therefore become more easily susceptible to other influences.

Nevertheless, this is no excuse for the falling human spirit; for he only needed *to have the volition* in genuine prayer in order immediately to receive a pure connection with the Power of the Light. Besides, it is exactly his physical body which, on account of its density, gives him a special protection against influences of a nature different than those which he himself seeks to attract through his desiring.

However, you are already familiar with all this through the Message, if you *wish* to find it therein.

Therefore, think of the *spirit* as being the real essence of man, which as being the core wears many cloaks for the purpose of development and of unfolding its inherent strength, which must increase to withstand the most severe endurance test through the physical body in order to attain to victorious perfection.

Through their reciprocal action, however, these ever-increasing endurance tests are at the same time also the furthering stages of development, in which the earth is the outermost turning point.

Thus let us simply say that *the spirit is the actual human being*, all else being only cloaks. By wearing them the spirit becomes strong, and through the consequent need to bestir itself it becomes ever more aglow.

The glow into which the spirit is thus transposed does not die once the cloaks are laid aside, but it raises the spirit and leads it upwards into the Spiritual Realm.

For it is just through the need to bestir itself under the weight of its cloaks that the spirit finally grew so strong that it can bear the stronger pressure in the Spiritual Realm and remain conscious, something it was unable to do as a spirit-germ.

Such is the course of its development which proceeded for the sake of the spirit. The cloaks themselves are to be considered merely as the means to an end.

Therefore, nothing changes when earthman lays aside his physical body. He is still the same human being, only without the physical cloak and the so-called astral body which remains with the physical body and which is necessary for forming the gross material earthly body and originates from medium gross matter.

As soon as the heavy earthly body together with the astral body has fallen away the spirit remains clad in the more delicate cloaks only. In *this condition* the spirit is called "*the soul*" in contradistinction to the earthman of flesh and blood!

In his further ascent the human being also gradually lays aside all other cloaks, until finally he only keeps the spirit body with a spiritual cloak, and thus enters the Spiritual Realm as a spirit without cloaks of any other species.

This is a natural happening, for no alien cloak can then keep him back any longer, and consequently he *must* in the natural course of things be uplifted through the nature of his specific species.

*This*, then, is the difference which very often causes you difficulty in your desire to understand, since you lacked clarity and thus the conception of it remained vague.

In reality, in the case of human beings, it is strictly a matter of *spirit* alone. All other designations depend purely on the cloaks he wears.

The spirit is everything, the *essence*, thus the human being. If together with the other cloaks he also wears the earthly cloak he is called earthman; when he lays aside his earthly cloak he is thought of by earthman as soul, and as he sheds even these

delicate cloaks he remains solely spirit, which species he had always been.

Thus the various designations merely refer to the species of the cloaks which could not be anything without the spirit, which sets them aglow.

It is different with animals; for they have something of substantiality in them as their soul, a species that man *does not* possess!

Perhaps so many errors arose *through* men thinking that animals *also* have a soul which causes them to act. For this reason, they think that, since man has spirit in addition, spirit and soul should be separate and perhaps should even be able to function separately.

However, this is *wrong*, for man does not possess any of the species of the animal soul. In the case of man, it is the spirit alone that sets aglow all the cloaks, even when it is walled-in and bound. When the spirit is fettered through the intellect, the animating warmth of the spirit is directed into wrong channels, which the un-perverted spirit itself would never choose if left a free hand.

However, the *Message* gives clear information about all the distortions and faults of men, especially about how man must think and act if he wishes to reach the Luminous Heights.

Today it is only a matter of clarifying the expression “soul” once more, so that wrong ideas about it may come to an end.

It would be best for human beings if I now go another step further in this, and tell you that *only the animal has a soul* that guides it. Man, however, has spirit!

This describes the difference *precisely* and in the right way.

If up until now I have still used the expression soul it was only because it is so deeply rooted within you that you cannot give it up so quickly.

Now however, I see that errors will remain unless I make a sharp, separating cut in this matter. Therefore, as a foundation, impress firmly upon your minds:

The *animal* has *soul*, but man has *spirit*!

In this way it is correct, although it now appears strange to you because you have often extolled the soul. But, believe me, it is only a matter of being tied to the known expression which gives an uplifting feeling when you hear the word soul, as a consequence of the songs which you always sought to weave around the expression soul.

Now sing praises to the *spirit* instead, and soon this expression will rise brilliantly before you, much clearer still and purer than the expression soul ever could.

Accustom yourselves to this and you will have advanced another step further in the knowledge leading to the Truth!

However, it is only as the *foundation of your thinking* that you shall now carry the knowledge of this difference within you. Otherwise you may continue to also use the expression soul in connection with man, since otherwise it would be very difficult for you to keep the necessary steps of development properly segregated.

The soul is the spirit already detached from the world of gross matter *with* ethereal and substantiate cloaks.

For your conception the spirit must remain soul until it lays aside the last cloak, and then is able to enter the Spiritual Realm, being purely spiritual.

If you carry the knowledge within you *in this way*, then the expression soul may also be used and retained in connection with man.

It is best if you form the development of the spirit-germ into these three sections:

Earthman – human soul – human spirit!

As long as you have the right conception thereof it may be alright, otherwise it would not be advisable, since in reality the animal alone possesses a “soul” *in the truest sense*, i.e. a soul which is something all by itself! Besides his spirit, however, man does not have a soul which is independent in itself.

However, in connection with man, you cannot very well say: the spirit of man with cloaks, or the cloaked spirit instead of soul; nor can you say later: the spirit without cloak, the uncovered spirit.

Although this would actually be right, it is too cumbersome for the purpose of forming a conception.

Therefore, we will retain the former expression, just as Jesus did when He spoke of the soul. You will now understand even better His reference to the necessity for the soul to detach itself; for to sever the soul means nothing other than to lay aside the still existing cloaks which hold back the spirit and severing it from their heaviness so as to free it for further ascent.

However, Jesus could not speak to earthmen of that time in such an intellectual manner. He had to express Himself in a simpler manner and therefore He retained the customary way.

It may remain in this way even today as long as you are familiar with the precise facts.

Engrave upon your minds:

Animal has soul, but man has spirit!

---

## Nature.

In the same way as the expression “soul” became a vague general conception among men, so is it also with the expression “nature”. This word has also been used far too often as a great catchall phrase for anything man likes to deal with in an easy manner and without having to rack his brain; namely, however, for those things about which he knew in advance that he would not be able to arrive at a clear solution.

How often is the word “natural” used without the user having anything definite in mind at all. Man speaks of being “close to nature”, of beautiful nature, of nature in turmoil, of natural instincts, and so on in countless terms, by which he seeks to define in broad outlines something that can be more or less related to nature.

But what *is* nature! This basic expression must *first of all* be understood quite clearly before applying it to all sorts of things. However, when you raise this question you will no doubt receive many explanations, presented with a greater or lesser degree of precision as to the details; but from all this you can clearly see that men’s conceptions in this matter are of a great variety and lack uniform knowledge.

Therefore, let us also pave a way in this matter to a definite picture in our conception of this word “nature”.

It is best if we imagine the concept about this as divided into *sections* in order to arrive more easily at an understanding of the whole.

Let us first take the *coarse form* of “nature”, thus the outward appearance! For the sake of simplicity, I will make an exception and begin with the thinking of earthman, and only at the end shall I reverse everything so that the correct course, i.e., from above downwards, is again put before your eyes.

When nature is considered in the coarsest sense, i.e., viewed with your physical eyes on earth, it is material substance which has been set aglow and consequently animated and formed. By material substance you must imagine the various layers of the world of matter.

This includes, in the first place, all of the images which you can perceive with your physical eyes, such as landscapes and all of the stationary and mobile forms of plants and animals; expressed more comprehensively: everything you are able to perceive through your physical body with your gross material senses.

Excluded from this, however, is everything *men have formed artificially* whereby they introduce changes into what exists, as with houses and any other constructs. This has then ceased to count as nature.

Here we automatically come closer to a fundamental distinction: that which man *changes*, i.e., that which he does not leave in its basic constitution, no longer belongs to nature in its *real* sense!

However, since I also say that nature in its outermost manifestation is the world of gross matter set aglow and thus animated and formed, and since you already know from my Message that substantiate forces set aglow the worlds of matter, you yourselves can readily conclude from this that only *that which* is most closely associated with *substantiate forces* can be *nature*.

Here I am referring to *those* substantiate forces which surround the worlds of matter as a ring.

This is a very special species of which we must speak in the near future to come, since as a special species of Creation, it must be separated from the great general concept of the Substantiate, which exists as a foundation in *all* spheres, reaching right up to the boundary where the Unsubstantiality of God begins.

Gradually, I will have to draw still further apart the present conceptions of the Substantiate which I was already able to

give you, if I wish to complete the picture which, with the increasing maturity of your spirit, you will be able to absorb.

Nature is thus everything from the world of matter set aglow by the substantiate forces, which was able to form and combine and was not, in its basic nature, altered by the human spirit. These substantiate forces I will yet have to describe to you in more detail.

That there be no alteration of the *basic species* given by the Substantiate, is the prerequisite for the *correct* expression: Nature!

Thus the term “nature” is quite inseparably linked with the *substantiate* which permeates the world of matter. From this you can also rightly conclude that nature is not necessarily bound to matter but only to the *substantiate*, and that to be natural, and nature in general, are the effects of substantiate activity remaining undistorted!

Thus, step by step, we come ever nearer to the Truth; for in going further we can now also conclude that nature and spirit must be considered to be separate! Nature is based upon the activity of a very specific substantiate species, while the spirit, as you know, is something entirely different.

It is true that through incarnations the spirit is often placed right into the middle of nature, but it *is* not nature, nor is it a part of it, any more than nature is a part of the human spirit!

I know it is not easy for you to realize clearly from these brief words what this is about, but if you delve into it aright you *will be able to* grasp it, and after all your spirit *must* become *nimble* in the effort of penetrating into the Word which I am able to give you.

The very *effort required* to achieve this brings you the agility that protects your spirit against slumber and death, and pulls you out of the net of the creeping Darkness.

Although people often try to reproach me insidiously and maliciously, claiming that through my Word I threaten and depress men with my references to the ever-lurking danger of spiritual slumber and death only in order to gain influence, I

shall nevertheless never cease to illustrate the dangers threatening your spirit, so that you will know them and no longer fall blindly into snares and temptations; for *I serve God* and not men! With this I give what *benefits* men, and not merely what pleases them in the earthly sense while killing them spiritually!

The very thing that is used in malevolent attempts to attack my Word by those in service to the Darkness in its desperate struggle to fight back *is clear proof* of the fact that I serve *God* in truth without regard to pleasing men in order to win them for my Word!

Men *must* indeed be torn out of their self-chosen spiritual comfort, which can only put them to sleep instead of strengthening and invigorating them. Just as Jesus already said, admonishingly, that only he who is born anew inwardly can enter the Kingdom of God, as well with His repeated reference to the fact that everything must become new in order to stand before God!

And men themselves always speak about these profound words with utter sincerity of conviction as to the truth contained in them. However, if they are confronted with the demand that they must *first* allow themselves to become new in spirit, then they raise a hue and cry; for they never thought about themselves in this respect!

Now they feel harassed in their comfort, when they were hoping to be admitted to Heaven with jubilation without doing anything themselves except to enjoy all the pleasures!

Now they try to drown the inconvenient voice with their clamor in the conviction that they will once more accomplish what they did with Jesus, whom they first morally branded and murdered as a criminal, a rebel and a blasphemer before all men, so that thereafter, with the apparent justification of human laws, they were able to sentence and kill Him.

Although today it is different in many ways, still there is no lack of cunning intellectual cleverness on earth serving the Darkness for the purpose of skillfully distorting even that

which is most simple and clear, and thus influencing the guileless and non-involved, in the same way as there have always been false witnesses who, because of envy and hatred, or for the prospect of gain, are capable of anything.

But the Holy Will of God is mightier than the actions of such people. It does not err in Its Unbendable Justice, as is possible among men! Thus *in the end* all Darkness with its evil volition must serve only the Light, in order thereby to bear witness for the Light!

But those men who sincerely strive to grasp the Truth of God will learn from this and will recognize the Sublimity of God, His Wisdom and His Love, and serve Him joyfully!

Beware of the indolence of your spirit, of comfort and superficiality, you men, and remember the parable of the wise and the foolish virgins! It is plain enough in its great simplicity, so that *everybody* can easily grasp its meaning. Act upon it inwardly, then all else will come of itself. Nothing can confuse you; for you walk your path calmly and with firm strides.

But now let us return to the expression “nature”, the conception of which I wish to mediate to you as being necessary.

The first and densest section thereof I have already explained in broad outline. As long as man in his activities will allow nature to really remain nature as the basis, and will not seek to alter it by interfering with its species, but will simply achieve up-building by fostering a healthy, i.e., an undistorted development, *then* he will find and receive the crowning of his works in everything, which previously he could never have hoped for, since everything that has been forcibly perverted from its natural state can in its growth only bring forth distortions which possess neither firm support nor lasting existence.

Someday this will also be of great value as a foundation for the sciences. Up-building power and radiation lies *only* in the way in which nature, in its substantiate activity in accordance

with Creation Laws, creates the combinations of material substances, whereas in the case of other combinations devised by men, which do not precisely accord with these Laws, radiations form which are mutually harmful, perhaps even destructive and disintegrative, the actual final results of which men are totally unaware.

Nature in its perfection in accordance with the Laws of Creation is the most beautiful gift that God gave His creatures! It can bring *only* benefit as long as it is not distorted by being altered and guided into wrong channels by the conceit of these earthmen's own knowledge.

Now let us pass on to a second section of "nature" which is not immediately visible to the physical eye.

This section consists mainly of *medium* gross matter, i.e., not the densest and heaviest kind whose heavy nature makes it immediately perceptible to the earthly eye.

As regards medium gross matter the physical eye can only *observe* its *effects* in heavy gross matter. To these belong, for example, the strengthening of everything that was formed through being set aglow, its unfolding as it grows and its ripening.

A third section of "nature" is propagation which occurs automatically at a very definite stage in the process of development and of being set aglow. Propagation in the glowed-through gross material substance has therefore nothing to do with the spirit, but belongs to *nature!*

Therefore, the urge for propagation is *correctly* designated as a *natural instinct*. A very definite state of maturity of the material substance set aglow by the Substantiate results in radiations which, upon a coming together of positive and negative kinds, unite and reactively press upon gross-materiality causing it to become active.

The spirit has nothing to do with this, rather this activity is a *tribute to nature!* It stands quite apart from the Spiritual, as I have already touched on before.

Therefore, if we call this exchange of radiations and uniting a

*tribute to nature*, then this is right; for this is the way of the entire world of matter which has been set aglow to a certain definite degree by the Substantiate. The world of matter thereby always seeks to bring about renewal in accordance with the Laws of Creation, this renewal bearing within itself preservation on the one hand and the condition for *propagation* on the other hand.

This Law of nature as it manifests itself is the result of certain radiations. It brings about preservation through the accompanying stimulation and renewal of the cells.

This is the *first* and main purpose of this tribute which nature demands from the freely moving creatures. Nature knows no distinction therein and all effects are useful and good.

But here again man has escalated everything for himself to an unhealthy degree, thus distorting and twisting it, although he particularly should be able to find a normal balance in certain specific kinds of earthly activities.

He, however, pays no attention to what nature demands of him through its quiet reminder or warning, but by exaggerating everything abnormally he wants to direct or master nature with his own ignorant, stubborn volition. He wants to force nature in a manner that will often harm and weaken gross-materiality or even destroy it, and thus, also in this, he has brought about devastation, just as he has done in the entire Creation.

The human being who was at first only a disturbance has now become a *destroyer* in everything he thinks and does, wherever he is.

He has therewith placed himself *beneath* all creatures.

First thoroughly get to know *nature* from which you have turned away long ago, and then it will be possible for you to become *human beings* again, human beings who live in the Creative Will of God, thus reaping health through nature for a joyful, up-building activity on earth, which alone can help and further the spirit towards its necessary maturity!

## The Ring of Substantiality.

I have spoken several times already about the Creation Ring of Substantiality, which wraps around the worlds of matter as the transition from the Spiritual to the material world.

This substantiality is a very special species by itself and actually forms the terminal ring for the entire Creation, and simultaneously also the bridge for Subsequent Creation.

Once again let us imagine everything outside the Divine sphere, thus below the Grail Castle, in three great sections:

We will name Primordial Creation as uppermost and first, Creation as second, and Subsequent Creation as the third.

The Grail Castle itself is strictly speaking not part of Primordial Creation, but is something entirely by itself and stands *above* Primordial Creation. It *stands*. I deliberately choose this expression, for the Grail Castle does not float, but is firmly anchored!

Also the part which is outside the Divine sphere, from which Primordial Creation issues, is firmly connected with the Grail Castle in the Divine sphere like an annex, and is thus anchored immovably in the Divine.

Down to that point the only activity is that of Divine Light Waves streaming *downwards* and *upwards*. A change in this occurs only in the Grail Castle, and then outside the Castle, streaming downwards, the *rotational movement* sets in, which brings forth and moves all the Creations. Here, too, they are *held* by descending and ascending waves!

Such is the big picture of the form of all movements.

I have already spoken in greater detail about the Primordial Creation and in doing so named the two basic sections. They are Primordial Spiritual. The one part immediately took on

form and consciousness, while the other could first develop to this state. It is exactly the same in Creation, which, as being Spiritual, we conceptually separated from the Primordial Spiritual.

It too is divided into two sections. Again, the first could immediately take on form, and the second one had to develop to that state.

This is followed and concluded by the previously-mentioned Ring of Substantiality of which you have no clear picture yet since in my past explanations I have always merely touched on it.

Today let us designate it as a separate part of Creation: *The Ring of Substantiality!*

From now on we must understand this *Ring* to be something quite different from that which we simply had called *the substantiate beings*. What I had named Substantiate beings up until now are the *upward* and *downward* streaming Light Waves which have taken on form in their activity and which are connected in a straight line or chain with the Grail Castle. They are not the *rotational forces!*

Therein lies the difference. The rotational forces are also formed in their working, but they are of a different species which could only come into existence where radiations *cross* each other. You do not yet know anything about this, although much of it is already familiar to you.

This rotational movement has its origin or beginning in the separation of the positive from the negative, thus of the active from the passive, which occurs in the Grail Castle and which, at the beginning of my explanations of today, I called the *transformation* of the currents, resulting from the separation in the Castle.

As the Light radiations of the Light begin to cool off, the positive separates from the negative thus forming *two* kinds of radiation, whereas down to the Grail Castle only *one uniform* ray stands in its activity and constitutes the Divine sphere, where all that has become form bears both positive and negative within itself in harmonious union.

Picture all this to yourselves just as I sketch it with very simple strokes, then you will grasp it in the quickest and surest manner. Only then can you try to penetrate ever deeper in your desire to understand.

If you act in this way then the whole will gradually become alive before you, and in your spirit you can let the wafting and weaving of Creation pass before you as knowing onlookers.

However, if you should wish to try to do it the other way around and seek to follow me already at first hearing with the power of your intellect, then you will already become stuck on my first sentences and will never be able to attain to a goal.

You must absorb it *simply* and only *then*, by gradually following the individual strokes, you may bring everything to life within you. In this way you will succeed.

Thus, today we will talk of the Ring of Substantiality which forms the terminal point of all that is *mobile*.

Just as the precipitation of the Spiritual is known to you as spirit-germs, so is the Ring of Substantiality also to be called a precipitation, albeit one of a very different kind, which out of the *rotation* of the self-moving Creations trickles down and drips from the substantiate waves, in order to gather and maintain itself at the end of the Creations through the attraction of the similar basic species.

With this we again arrive at an expansion of the Creation concepts.

Thus, we have *self-moving* parts, which include Primordial Creation and Creation and then follows Subsequent Creation, which is not capable of moving on its own accord but needs to be propelled.

The self-moving parts are propelled by their own warmth; Subsequent Creation, which must be moved, is propelled by the influence of external warmth. Thus individual parts thereof can also cool down when that which supplies warmth is withdrawn, something which is quite impossible in Primordial Creation and in Creation, since they possess their own innate warmth.

Pay strict attention to all the details I tell you herewith; for they lay the foundation in preparation for many further explanations, which will be of great use for every aspect of man's earth life.

This Ring of the Substantiate precipitate is below the spirit-germs, therefore *below* the Ring of the Spiritual precipitate, and forms the final border of all that is mobile; for also the Ring of the Spiritual precipitate as the last of the Spiritual, and the Ring of the substantiate precipitate as the last of the Substantiate, have their own innate movement and thus warmth, although still unconsciously in the beginning! *This is important to know.*

Then follow the different materialities. They are so named because they can only serve as cloaks and possess neither innate warmth nor movement. They must first be permeated with warmth before they transmit warmth, and they are again cold and immobile when the provider of warmth is withdrawn. *This characteristic exists only* in the worlds of matter.

Now, the expressions matter and world of matter have not been named according to the materials with which man on earth covers himself, but the reverse is the case. Earthman picked up these designations and transferred them according to their proper meaning also to his earthly products with which he covers himself.

The Ring of Substantiality, however, not only forms the *final border* of that which is mobile and possesses inherent warmth but, since this ring also possesses warmth and movement in itself, it presses even further into the world of matter, thus warming it and driving it from this state of inactivity into the rotational movement, which in turn warms it more and more and causes it to glow through friction conditioned by the density of its nature.

In the movement thus forcibly brought about it *takes on form* and allows the radiations of the warming of the driving substantiality itself, which increases with this activity, to pass

through very easily in order to spread ever new warmth and thus movement for the forming activity. After this big picture let us now go into details. Thus we return to the Ring of Substantiality, which serves as the bridge for all the layers of materialities that are without warmth and thus without movement.

In this Ring of Substantiality specific homogeneous species of all Substantiate germs draw closely together in accordance with the Law so as thereby to form groups that can also be called centers or accumulations.

Thus for example, there is a separation between the groups of *those* germs which, as they penetrate the world of matter, contribute in their development and their awakening to the forming and preservation of fire, water, air and earth, then of rocks, plants and also animals.

I have already spoken of the process of *penetration* of the Substantiate germs, and I only want to specifically point out *the fact* that this entire happening is carefully guided by substantiate helpers, who *serve* as a chain in the Light waves streaming straight downward from the Castle and they also help to guide upwards again.

All this you already know; you can easily assemble the basic knowledge of this from my Message, but you must proceed in this matter like children who make the effort of *correctly* putting the parts of a jigsaw puzzle together until a very definite picture arises from this.

It is *in this way* that you must make use of the knowledge from the Message, for it contains the foundational stones for *all* knowledge, and gives explanations for *every* happening in the whole of Creation.

If you want to achieve clarity about something in Creation as it relates to the effects of Primordial Creation Laws which bear the Will of God, you first only need to take from all of the gemstones that are contained in the Message as a treasure to be lifted by you, any one of the many little individual gems that contains something of the question that moves you.

As with a game of jigsaw puzzles or building sets, you then seek to *add something from the Message* that fits with this first little individual piece. In this way you will eventually obtain a big picture, standing on its own and complete in itself which gives you a precise answer in the form of a picture of the particular Creation weavings which you desire to know.

If you follow my advice you will always succeed in obtaining a solution to everything in a form which will *most certainly* become understandable to you, and which will never let you go astray.

Just place the individual stones *in such a way* that they will fit in *precisely with the first stone* which you take from the treasure for your question. It makes no difference at all whether this gem is the center or belongs only to the periphery. The others belonging to it can always be fitted in or placed only *in such a way* that the final result is the very picture you need in order to answer and clarify your question.

The stones can never be placed in any other way, and you immediately realize when you have put just one part in a wrong place. This part simply does not fit in with the whole, and thus compels you to put it where it belongs, or to leave it out altogether if it does not belong.

When you do this, just think of a jigsaw puzzle, which results in complete pictures or constructions when the individual parts given in a definite form for this purpose are put together logically.

*This* is the way in which I have given you my Message, which contains *everything*, but which forces you *to co-operate in this yourselves!* It cannot be absorbed indolently as pre-fabricated, but in answer to each one of your questions you must exert yourselves in extracting from it and putting together the perfect picture.

This is the nature of *the Living Word*, which forms and educates you and forces your spirit to move!

Should you put a picture together wrongly, through error or superficiality, you will quickly come to a stop and realize that

it lacks harmony, because perhaps you put just one little stone in the wrong place or, according to its form, put it in such a way that it cannot fit *that* picture or construction you are striving for. Thus you cannot complete it, and must try again and again until it stands before you firmly and correctly put together.

Each stone can be used for *many* pictures, not only for one, but through its unique character you are forced to place it differently for each picture, always only in such a way that it will fit in precisely with the other stones. If the individual picture results in a complete whole, then you may be sure that your work in seeking was right!

You will never lack a stone in this, not the smallest part; for the Message contains *everything* you need! Just try it until this work becomes familiar, then you yourselves will stand firmly in the entire Creation!

In my Word of the Message I give you the perfect construction kit consisting of the best-cut precious stones, so that you yourselves can use it for building. From the very beginning they are precisely arranged to meet all your needs. But you must construct the building yourselves, for such is God's All-Holy Will!

Now you know how you have to act, and I can proceed with my explanations about the Ring of the Substantiate and its effect upon the material worlds, to which it is actually the final border of all that is mobile while simultaneously forming a bridge through its working.

In this ring, among other species, there is now also a concentration of a species of *that* substantiate precipitate from which the animal soul with its many branches is formed.

Just this part, however, needs a very special course of instruction, which must be combined with *observation*, in order to evoke complete clarity in earthman, but I will give at least a few hints about this.

The soul of every animal *forms* itself, it constructs itself first, which lies in the expression "to form".

In contradistinction and for easier understanding I refer once more to the human spirit. The spirit of earthman already contains everything within itself, inside the spirit-germ, and only needs to develop toward consciousness.

The soul of the gross material animal, however, needs to construct itself, it *forms* itself and only then it gradually develops and gains strength. As it becomes strong it is able to form ever more firmly and stably.

The soul of the animal belonging to the world of gross matter can only gradually receive a permanent form. In most cases, following severance from the physical body, after a short or sometimes longer period the animal soul again loses its form and is absorbed by the accumulation of homogeneous species which indeed brings *increased* warmth, but which does not yet remain in a stable form. Hence the expression "group soul".

Only one thing can maintain the form of the animal soul, the strongest thing there is: i.e. *Love!*

An animal that loves a human being is thereby uplifted, and through the voluntary connection with the spirit it receives a supply of power which also keeps its soul together more firmly; but more about this later. For there are not only animals from the final bordering Ring of Substantiality but also those in higher, even up to the highest planes.

Then, in the very highest planes there are *knowing* animals which are perfectly pure in their serving.

It can also occur that animals from the higher planes are incarnated on earth for very special purposes. We will not deal with this now but remain with the animals that are known on earth, the souls of which form out of the Ring of Substantiality around the worlds of matter.

I only want to give *one more* hint about this concerning your nearest visible earthly environment, thus your gross material surroundings.

*All forms on earth that are tied to a place have no soul of their own, for it would indeed become too dependent upon what*

approaches it and would thus be at the mercy of any arbitrariness in the world of gross matter.

Such a lack of balance is utterly impossible in the wise provisions of the Creator in His Work.

For this reason, such forms have no souls of their own, but merely serve as dwellings for beings which are quite independent of the forms, which they merely protect and care for.

These forms include plants and rocks! Thus you will gain further enlightenment which can benefit you and help you clearly recognize wrong opinions.

Only those creatures which are *independent of a place*, such as animals which can move freely from their location, have within themselves *a mobile core of their own* that guides them.

With animals this core is the Substantiate soul, with men it is the Spirit! Plants and rocks, however, merely serve as dwellings for alien autonomous entities, which therefore cannot be called the soul of the forms concerned.

---

## Do not fall in the temptation.

Watch and pray that you do not *fall* in temptation! Up till now men have regarded this warning from the Light merely as kindly advice given by the Son of God Jesus, in view of the soft nature falsely imputed to the Son of God as a consequence of mankind's pronounced conceit.

Today I must repeat this warning!

But it is more than simply advice; for it is God's *demand* of you, men, if you want to save yourselves from the poisonous fruits of your wrong opinions and conceptions.

Do not imagine that God will now simply lift you out of the loathsome swamp which keeps clinging to you with great tenacity, the same tenacity that you applied in forming such a swamp through your rigid stubbornness against the Will of God in the first place.

God does not lift you out in gratitude for you perhaps finally wanting to, oh no, *you* must work *yourselves* out of it, just as you allowed yourselves to sink into it!

*You* must exert yourselves, exert yourselves with honesty and great diligence, to be able to come up again on to sound ground. Only when you *do* this will you *then* be given the strength you need, but always and only in the same measure of your volition, as is inexorably demanded by the Justice which lies in God. — —

And *therein* lies the help which is promised you, the help you will receive in the very moment when your inner volition has at last become deed, not before.

To help you achieve this, however, the *Word* has been brought to you as a *gift* from God, the *Word* which shows in all clarity the path you must follow if you wish to save yourselves! In the *Word* lies the Grace which God gives in His

incomprehensible Love, as has already happened once through Jesus.

The Word is the gift. God's great sacrifice, however, is the deed, the act of bringing the Word as far as to the gross material worlds, to you men here. This is always connected with great suffering because of man's attitude, which due to his stubborn conceit is one of hostility towards the Light. And nobody else can give the true Word to mankind but a Part of the Word Itself. The Bringer of the Living Word must therefore also *be* from the Word *Itself!*

If, however, the Word had *not* been given to them after the darkness had taken hold among men on earth, they all would have to be lost and sink into disintegration together with the Darkness which closely surrounds them.

And for the sake of the small number still carrying within themselves the yearning for the Light in spite of the Darkness which men formed for themselves, God in His Justice and Love once again sent the Living Word into this Darkness, so that for the sake of Justice the few should not be lost along with the others, but may still save themselves by following the path shown to them in the Word.

However, so that the Word could describe the path leading out of the Darkness, It first had to get to know and experience the Darkness, had to immerse Itself into this Darkness in order to tread the path out of it first, and thus open up the way for those who want to follow It.

It was only by walking the path out of this Darkness that the Word was able to explain the path and thus make it accessible to mankind!

Men would never have been able to do this of their own accord without this help. Understand then, you men, that such a resolution, which became necessary only for the sake of a small number of men, was indeed a great sacrifice of love, such as *God* alone can accomplish through His unswerving Justice!

*This* was the *sacrifice* which *had to be* fulfilled in complete accord with the Laws for the sake of Justice and Love in the

inviolable and adamantine Perfection of the Will of God.

But this is no excuse at all for men, since the need for this sacrifice only arose out of the failure of mankind which turned away from the Light.

Although the sacrifice was a result of the lawfulness of the Holy Will of God, the guilt of mankind is not any less but rather more severe still, since they sinfully *forced* it to be carried out through the distortion and perversion of all that God had entrusted to them.

Therefore, the great sacrifice stands all by itself as a consequence of the God-Perfection of the All-Holy Will.

Whether you really still wish to save yourselves is solely *your concern*; for this God-Perfection, which made the great sacrifice of God a necessary consequence, now also demands the destruction of everything in the entire Creation not capable of voluntarily adjusting itself to the Laws of His Will.

There is neither mercy nor escaping in this matter, no exception or deviation, but solely the outworking according to the Laws in Creation through the first closing of the cycle of all past actions.

Hence the demand: Watch and pray so that you do not *fall* in temptation!

First comprehend these words aright, then you will indeed learn to recognize the strict demand they contain. *Watch* calls upon the alertness of your *intuitive perception* and thus demands mobility of your spirit! This alone harbors true vigilance. And *here*, too, womanhood again must take the lead, because she is given an enhanced and more delicate intuitive perception.

Womanhood must be vigilant in the strength of her purity, which she must serve if she faithfully wishes to fulfill the task of womanhood in this Creation. But this she can only do as a priestess of purity!

Watch and *pray* are the words which you are once more given on your path by me. *Watching* concerns your life on earth, during which you must at any moment be ready of your own

accord to perceive clearly the impressions assailing you, to weigh and scrutinize them, as well as to first examine carefully anything issuing from you.

*Praying*, however, ensures the maintenance of the connection with the Luminous Heights, and the opening of oneself to streams of holy power for earthly application.

*That is the purpose* of prayer, which compels your mind to turn upwards, away from this earth. *Hence* this demand, the fulfillment of which will bring you nothing but inestimable benefit through strong help, to the supply of which you otherwise close yourselves by not observing the Laws in Creation.

If you fulfill *both* you can never *fall* in temptation! Read this advice correctly as well, for when it is said to you: “that you do not fall in temptation” this does not mean that you will no longer be afflicted by temptation, if you watch and pray, i.e., that no temptation will ever befall you, but it means: if you always remain alert and pray, you can never fall when temptations approach you, you are able to face all dangers victoriously!

Lay the emphasis of this sentence such as it is intended. Thus place the emphasis not on the word “temptation”, but on the word “*fall*”, in which case you will have automatically grasped the right meaning. It says: “Watch and pray so that you do not *fall* in temptation!” Thus watching and praying is a protection against *falling*, but here amid the Darkness it does not rule out the approach of temptation. Indeed, temptations can only strengthen you if your attitude is right; under the compulsion of the necessary resistance they will kindle your spirit to become more aglow and aflame, thus bringing you great benefit.

All this, however, will no longer be a danger to mankind but a joy, welcome spiritual activity which only furthers rather than hinders, *as soon as womanhood faithfully fulfills the task* granted to her by the Creator, for which she was equipped in very special ways.

If only her volition is honest at last, then it will not be difficult for her to really fulfill. Her task lies in the priesthood of purity!

This she can apply *anywhere*, at any time. She does not need special responsibilities for this, but she can cultivate it readily in *every look* and *every word* issuing from her lips, even in every movement; it must become quite natural to her; for to swing in the Light of Purity is her real element, the element from which she has kept herself closed off till now through frivolity and ridiculous vanity.

Wake up, you women and girls! In fulfillment of your human womanhood proceed along the path which the Creator has precisely marked out for you, and for which you are allowed to stand in this Creation in the first place!

Then, very soon, miracle after miracle will be revealed before you; for wherever you direct your gaze everything will begin to blossom, for God's blessing will stream through you abundantly as soon as the purity of your volition makes smooth the path for it and opens the gates within you!

Happiness, peace and joy such as never existed before will spread across this earth radiantly when womanhood forms the bridge to the more luminous spheres, as is intended in Creation, and when through her exemplary being she keeps alive the longing for the Light in every spirit, and thus becomes the guardian of the Holy Flame!

Oh woman, how much was given unto you, and how have you wantonly abused all the treasures of God's High Grace!

Bethink yourself and become a priestess of the purity of deepest intuitive sense, so that filled with bliss you may stride through a flourishing land in which human beings with bright and shining eyes give jubilant thanks to their Creator for the grace of their existence on earth, which they use as a step to the gate of the Eternal Gardens!

See your task before you, you women and you girls, as the future priestesses of Divine Purity here on earth, and do not rest until you have acquired what you are lacking towards this end!

## Christmas.

**H**oly Night! Exultant singing in jubilant gratitude once streamed throughout all the spheres of Creation when the Son of God Jesus was born in the stable in Bethlehem. And shepherds in the fields, from whose spiritual eyes the bandage was removed during this joyous upheaval of the Cosmos, so that they could bear witness to this unfathomable happening and call people's attention to it, fell upon their knees *fearfully* because they were overwhelmed by what was so new and incomprehensible to them.

It was *fear* on the part of the shepherds, who for this purpose were temporarily made clairvoyant and also clairaudient. Fear of the greatness of the happening, of the Omnipotence of God thus made manifest! For this reason, the herald from the Luminous Heights first spoke to them reassuringly: *do not be afraid!*

These are the words you will always find whenever a herald from the Luminous Heights speaks to human beings, for it is fear that earthmen unfailingly first feel upon seeing and hearing heralds from on high. The cause of this fear is the pressure of the power, to which they are also opened to a small extent in such moments. But only to the smallest part thereof; for anything more would surely crush and burn them.

And yet there should be joy, not fear, as soon as the spirit of man strives for the Luminous Heights.

This did not manifest to all mankind during the Holy Night! Except for the Star which became physically visible, nobody on earth saw this luminous herald and the luminous hosts surrounding him. No one saw and heard but the few shepherds chosen for this purpose!

And such great revelations can never take place here on earth but through a few who are chosen for the purpose! Remember this always; for the lawfulness in Creation cannot be set aside on your account. Therefore, do not build up any fantastic figments of your imagination about various happenings, which can never be *as you* imagine them to be. These are tacit demands, which never issue from genuine conviction, but are a sign of hidden unbelief and spiritual indolence, which has not absorbed my Word of the Message *in such a manner* as It demands in order to be able to come alive in the human spirit.

In those days people *believed* the shepherds, at least for a short period of time. Today such people are only derided, considered eccentric, if not impostors wishing to obtain earthly benefits thereby. For mankind has sunk far too low to still be able to accept calls from the Luminous Heights as genuine, especially when they themselves cannot hear or see anything.

Man, do you really believe that on account of your great downfall God will now overthrow the perfect Laws in Creation just to serve you, to bridge over your faults Himself, and to compensate for your spiritual indolence? The Perfection of His Laws in Creation is and always will remain inviolable, immutable; for they bear the Holy Will of God! Thus the great revelations which you expect cannot possibly ever take place on earth except in that form which you have already known for a long time, and which you *accept as* long as they lie in the distant past.

A so-called good Christian would, without any hesitation, label *that* person a blasphemer and great sinner who would dare to assert that the announcement to the shepherds of the birth of the Son of God Jesus is a fairy tale.

Yet the same good Christian rejects with zealous indignation the announcements of the present time, although these are given *in the same way* through persons divinely gifted for this; and without hesitation he calls the bearers blasphemers *too*, at best maybe dreamers or sickly, often misguided.

But reflect for yourselves, where is there any sound thinking, where strict logic, and where justice!

These opinions of strict believers, as they like to call themselves, are one-sided and abnormally restricted. In most cases, however, it is indolence of their spirit and human conceit which always results from such indolence on the part of the spiritually weak, who with effort cling desperately, at least for the sake of appearances, to a point of some former happening that they once learned about, but never really *experienced inwardly*, while being quite incapable of making spiritual progress, and *therefore* rejecting all new revelations.

Who of all the believers has even the slightest idea of the Sublimity of God which is contained in the happening that took place quietly during that Holy Night through the birth of the Son of God. Who can begin to conceive the Grace which was thus granted as a gift to the earth!

There was jubilation in the spheres at that time, today there is sorrow. Only on earth many seek to give pleasure to *themselves* or others.

But all this is not as it should be if the recognition or, for that matter, the true conception of God were astir within the human spirit.

Could they but vaguely sense the reality, all men would experience the same as did the shepherds. Indeed, the very Greatness of the happening would not possibly permit it to be otherwise: they would immediately fall upon their knees... *out of fear*. For with the beginning of an intuitive sensing, fear would first of all have to arise powerfully and force man down, since together with intuitively sensing God, the great guilt with which man has burdened himself on earth also becomes evident, merely through the indifferent manner in which he accepts God's blessings without really doing anything in return in the service of God!

How strange that every man who for once really wishes to truly experience the Christmas Festival will try to recall his childhood!

This clearly is enough evidence *of the fact* that as *an adult* he is not capable of experiencing the Christmas Festival with his *intuitive perception!* This proves that he has *lost* something that he *possessed* as a child! Why doesn't this make people wonder!

Again it is spiritual indolence which prevents them from earnestly considering these matters. "That is for children" they think, and adults have no time for it! They have *more serious matters* to think about.

More serious matters! By this they only mean the pursuit of earthly things, that is for work of the intellect! The intellect quickly subdues memories in order not to lose its primacy once the intuitive perception is given the chance to express itself!

In all these apparently small facts the *greatest* things could be recognized if only the intellect would allow time for it. But it has the upper hand and fights to retain it with every form of cunning and malice. Actually it is not the intellect which fights but that which uses it as a tool and hides behind it: The Darkness!

Darkness does not want the Light to be found in memories. And *how* the spirit longs to find the Light, to draw new strength from it, can be recognized from the fact that with memories of the Holy Night of their childhood an undefined, almost painful longing also awakens, which is able to move many persons into a tender mood temporarily.

Such a tender mood could become the best soil for an *awakening* if it were used at once and with all one's energy! But unfortunately adults only get lost in reveries whereby the rising power is wasted and lost. And in such reveries the opportunity also passes by without being able to bring any benefit or having been utilized.

Even if this causes many a person to shed a few tears, he feels ashamed of them and tries to hide them, pulling himself together with a physical jolt which often betrays unconscious defiance.

How much could people learn from all this. It is not without purpose that a feeling of melancholy weaves itself into the memories of childhood days. It is a subconscious sense of something lost, leaving a void, an inability still to feel intuitively like a child.

Surely you have often noticed how wonderful and refreshing is the mere quiet presence of anyone in whose eyes there shines a *childlike* radiance now and then.

The adult must not forget that childlike is not the same as childish! But you do not know why childlikeness has such an effect, what it really is, and why Jesus said: Become as little children!

In order to find out what it is to be childlike you must first realize that to be childlike is by no means tied to a child per se. No doubt you know children who lack real, beautiful childlikeness! Thus there are children who are not childlike! A malicious child can never have a childlike effect, nor can one who is badly behaved, or rather badly brought up!

This clearly proves that childlikeness and child are two different things, independent of each other.

That which is called childlike on earth is part of the manifestation of *purity*! Purity in its higher sense, not merely in the earthly human sense. The human being who lives in the ray of Divine Purity, who makes room for the ray of purity within himself, has thereby become childlike, be it while still a child or later as an adult.

Childlikeness is the result of inner purity, or the sign that such a human being has surrendered himself to purity which he serves. All these are merely different forms of expression, but in reality they are always the same thing.

Thus only a child that is pure within and an adult who cultivates purity within himself, can be childlike. That is why he has such a *refreshing* and vitalizing effect, and also inspires confidence!

And wherever there is true purity, genuine love can also enter; for Divine Love works in the Ray of Purity. The Ray of

Purity is the path It treads. It could not possibly tread upon any other.

The Ray of Divine Love can never find Its way to him who has not absorbed the Ray of Purity!

Keep this in mind always, and as a Christmas gift for yourselves make the firm resolution to open *yourselves* to Divine Purity, so that at the Festival of the Radiant Star, which is the Festival of the Rose in the Divine Love, the Ray of Love can penetrate to you on the Path of Purity!

*Then* you will *really* have celebrated this Festival of Christmas as it should be celebrated according to the Will of God! Therewith you will offer true gratitude for God's incomprehensible Grace, which He bestows on the earth ever again with the Holy Night!

Many worship services are held today to commemorate the birth of the Son of God. In your mind or in your memory make a quick visit to churches of all kinds. Tune in to your intuitive perception, and you will turn away resolutely from the gatherings called worship services!

In the first moment man is surprised at the way I speak for he does not know what I wish to say thereby. But this is only because in the past he has never made the effort to reflect on the term "worship service", and then to compare it with the events called worship services. You simply accepted it like so many things which have existed as customs for centuries.

And yet the expression "worship service" is so unambiguous that it simply *cannot* be used in the wrong sense, unless man ever again *indifferently* and unhesitatingly accepts and perpetuates the custom of centuries. What *at present* is called worship service is at best a prayer connected with human attempts at interpretation of those words which, taken as having been spoken by the Son of God, were written down only at a later time by human hands.

This fact cannot be altered, and no man can contradict such statements if he wishes to remain honest with himself and honest about the actual happening; above all, if he does not

remain too indolent to reflect on this thoroughly, and does not use empty slogans given him by others as excuses for himself.

And yet it is just the expression “worship service” which in its essence is so vital, and through itself speaks so clearly to men, that with only a little intuitive perception it could hardly be used for the purpose for which it is still used today, although man on earth deems himself very advanced.

Worship service must now become *alive* if the Word is to become reality with all that it contains. It must manifest itself in *life*. When I ask what you men understand by service, i.e. what it means to serve, not a single person will answer otherwise than with the words: *To work!* This lies clearly in the word “service”, and one cannot think of it as meaning anything else.

Worship *service* on earth also naturally is nothing other than to *work* in the sense of the Laws of God here on earth, to swing actively in them terrestrially. To transform the Will of God into deed on earth!

And this is lacking everywhere!

Who truly seeks to serve God in his earthly activity. Everyone only thinks of himself, and to some extent of those who are near to him on earth. But he believes he is *serving* God when he prays to Him!

Just think about where there is any real service to God in this? It is indeed anything but *serving!* Such is one part of today’s so-called worship service, which comprises *prayer*. On the other hand, the other part, the interpretation of the Word written by human hands, can only be looked upon as learning on the part of those who really make the effort of gaining an understanding of it. The indifferent and superficial ones are not taken into consideration anyway.

Not without reason do people speak of “visiting” or “attending” a worship service. These are the *proper* expressions, which speak for themselves!

Worship *service*, however, is to be *performed by man himself* and not by him standing apart from it. “Petitioning” is not serving, for when he petitions man usually wants something

from God, God is to do something for him, which after all is far removed from the conception of "serving". Thus petitioning and prayer have nothing to do with worship *service*.

This should be easily understood by *every* person. After all, there must be meaning in everything a person does on earth; he cannot misuse the language given to him as he pleases without causing harm to himself. That he acquired no knowledge about the power also inherent in the human word will not protect him.

It is *his* fault if he neglects this! He is then subject to the effects of a wrong use of words, which becomes a hindrance rather than a help to him. The independent weaving of all the Primordial Laws of Creation neither halts nor hesitates on account of men's neglect, but everything which has been established in Creation proceeds on its course with the most unswerving precision.

This is what men never think about and therefore, to their detriment, do not heed. Even in the smallest and most inconspicuous of things there is always a corresponding effect.

The inherently wrong designation of the gatherings as: "worship service" has also contributed a great deal to the fact that genuine worship service was not carried out by men, since everyone believed that he had already done enough by attending such a worship service, which has never been true worship *service*. —

Call these meetings an hour of *joint worship of God*, which would at least come closer to its meaning, and to a certain degree also justify the institution of special hours for this purpose, although worship of God can also lie and be expressed in every look, in every thought and action.

Many a person will now probably think that this is not at all possible without appearing too artificial and contrived. But this is not so. The more the true worship of God breaks through the more natural will man become in all that he does, even in his simplest movements. He then swings in honest gratitude to his Creator and enjoys the blessings in the *purest* form.

Today, at the Festival of Holy Night, turn to any one of the earthly worship services.

Jubilant gratitude, supreme bliss, should vibrate in every word for the Grace which God once bestowed upon mankind. In so far as men can even appreciate this Grace at all; for the human spirit is incapable of grasping the real greatness of it in its *entirety*.

But for *this* you will seek everywhere in vain. The joyful swinging upward to the Luminous Heights is lacking! There is no trace of jubilant gratitude. Frequently there is even a noticeable pressure, which has its origin in disappointment and for which man has no explanation.

Only one thing can be found everywhere, something which renders or characterizes the nature of worship services in all confessions as if engraved with the sharpest chisel, or something which forces the audible manifestation of all that swings in the worship service: a woeful tone vibrates monotonously in the voices of all preachers, which in its constant repetition produces a wearying effect and spreads like a grey veil on souls falling asleep.

Yet, sometimes there is also a sound as of hidden lament over something lost! Or over something which has never been found! Go there yourselves and listen. You will find this peculiar and striking characteristic everywhere!

Men are not conscious of it but, to use the customary phrase: it just happens that way!

And there is truth in this. It happens without any intention on the part of the speaker, and plainly shows the nature in which everything swings. There is no sign of a joyful upward swinging, or of blazing fires bursting forth, rather it is like a dull, subdued smoldering unable to muster the strength to break through and swing upwards freely.

Wherever the speaker does not allow himself to be "carried away" by the dull, weak swinging of these worship services, when he remains untouched by it, which would be equivalent to a certain lukewarmness or to a deliberately standing aloof,

there all words will seem *unctuous*, to be regarded in the same way as sounding brass, cold, without warmth, without conviction.

In both cases the ardor of conviction is lacking, as well as the power of victorious knowledge, which wants to tell of it to all his fellow-men in jubilant exultation!

When, as with the expression “worship service”, a misleading term is used for something the contents of which are different from what the term indicates, then this error will have consequences. The potential power is broken from the very outset by the use of a false designation and no real and uniform swinging can arise, since through this designation a different conception arose which is then not fulfilled. The way in which a worship service is held stands in contrast to that which the word “worship service” causes to arise as a picture in the innermost intuitive perception of every human spirit.

Go forth and learn and you will soon recognize where you are offered the true bread of life. Above all, make use of the joint gatherings as *hours of solemn worship of God*. Express *service* to God, however, in the entire activity of your being, in life itself; for it is *thus* that you shall *serve* your Creator, thankful and jubilant for the grace of being allowed *to exist*!

Make everything you think and do into a *service* to God! Then it will bring you that peace which you long for. And even if people harass you severely, be it through envy, malice or base habits, you bear peace *within* yourselves forever, and this will finally help you to overcome all difficulties!

Take *this* as a Christmas gift in recognition of the unfathomable Divine Love which would not let you sink completely before the beginning of the Holy Judgment, which in all its severity brings help to those who open themselves to His Love in humility!

---



Die  
**Stimme**

*The ten following lectures, written by Abdruschin, were published in 10 of the 12 issues of the periodical “Die Stimme” (“The Voice”) - Writings for the strengthening of knowledge and capability.*

## The Mystery of the Blood.

The blood! How much swings forth from this word, how rich and strong are all the impressions it is able to produce, and what a never-ending source of supposition is contained in this one significant word!

And from these suppositions much knowledge, which has proved to be full of blessing for the bodies of earthmen, has evolved. Through troublesome investigation and devoted work gifted ones, with their keen observation and pure volition to render unselfish help to mankind, found many a *path* leading to the *real* purpose of the blood, none of which, however, is this purpose itself.

Here further hints on the matter shall be given, with which those who carry within them the calling will be able to build up through their knowledge of the swinging Laws of God. They will then become *helpers* of mankind here on earth in the truest sense, and as a most precious reward their ways will be brightened by the grateful prayers of all those to whom their knowledge of the secrets of the blood could bring help of a nature not believed possible, and such as there has never been before.

I will immediately name the main purpose of all human blood! *It is meant to form the bridge for the activity of the spirit on earth*, thus, in the world of gross matter!

This sounds so simple, and yet it holds the key to *all* knowledge about human blood.

Hence the blood is meant to act as a bridge for the activity of the spirit, or let us say “soul” in this case so that readers will understand me better, for they are more familiar with the expression “soul”.

In order for the activity of the spirit from out of man to proceed in the right manner *the spirit forms the human blood*.

That the blood is connected to the spirit can easily be substantiated. It only needs to be realized that upon the spirit entering the developing body of a child at incarnation, which takes place at a very definite stage of development in the middle of pregnancy, causing the child's first movements, its *own* blood begins to circulate; while at physical death, when the spirit has left the body, the blood ceases to pulsate and to exist altogether.

Hence the blood itself is only present during the time between the entrance and departure of the spirit, while the spirit dwells in the body. Indeed it can be noted that through the lack of blood the spirit has finally severed its connection with the earthly body, thus, that death has occurred.

In reality it is as follows: The human blood can form itself only when the spirit enters the body, and when the spirit leaves the body the blood can no longer exist in its actual nature.

However, we will not rest content with this knowledge, but I will go further. The spirit or the "soul" contributes to the formation of the blood, but it cannot come into outward earthly activity directly through the blood. The difference between the two species is too great to permit this. The soul, which contains the spirit, is still far too fine in its coarsest layer to be able to accomplish this, and can become outwardly active only through the *radiation of the blood*.

The radiation of the blood thus is the actual bridge for the activity of the soul, and also only then if this blood is of a very particular *composition suitable for the soul concerned*.

Hereby every conscientious doctor can hence in future consciously help and intervene in these matters, as soon as he has absorbed and grasped this knowledge aright. It is just this which will become one of the greatest and most decisive aids doctors can offer to the whole of humanity; for the effects in this respect are so manifold that, with the right application, the peoples are bound to blossom forth most splendidly in their volitions and in their capacities, because they will be able to

unfold all their power, which will not urge them on to destruction, but towards peace and a grateful striving for the Light.

I have often pointed to the significance of the composition of the blood. When the composition changes this naturally also alters the radiation, producing therewith correspondingly alternating effects upon the person concerned as well as upon his earthly environment.

In my lecture about the significance of the generative power I stated that the latter does not set in until the body has attained a very definite maturity and with this a drawbridge is lowered to enable the soul to sally forth into the outer world, from which it has been protected and separated up to that time, which naturally not only permits the soul to exercise an influence on the outside, but it also permits influences from outside to obtain access to the soul by the same route.

It is not until then that the individual person becomes fully responsible before the Divine Laws of Creation, a point which has also approximately been given consideration in the earthly laws.

The lowering of the drawbridge, however, takes place automatically, through nothing other than a transformation in the composition of the blood, which in turn is produced by the maturing of the physical body and the urging of the soul, and which then, through the change in radiation, affords the soul the possibility to become active upon earth.

Here I naturally do not refer to the mechanical actions and work of the physical body, but to that which actually "leads" in these things, to that which is willed, and which the brain and the body as instruments then turn into earthly deeds.

In my lecture on the temperaments I likewise referred to the blood which, through its various radiations, forms the basis for the temperaments, because up to a certain limit the activity of the soul is bound by the various kinds of blood radiations.

Since, however, the maturity, state of health and age of a body contribute to the changing of the blood composition, such

a constraint might prove as an injustice, which is abolished by the fact that the *spirit* can change this composition, which at the same time explains the secret of the saying that “the spirit forms the body”.

However, where a spirit is too weak to accomplish this, or wherever it is hindered in its efforts by some outside influence, such as an accident or a physical ailment, there the doctor can soon help by intervening through his knowledge!

And he will be amazed at the recognition of how much depends in each case upon the right composition of the blood for earthman. No hard and fast scheme must be built in these matters, for the process is entirely different with every person. So far only the coarsest differences have been found. There are still innumerable refinements therein, which have not yet been recognized, and which are of permeating importance and influence.

The establishment of the various blood groups which have now already been discovered, and which can only confirm my statements, does not yet suffice.

It is true that these discoveries are hinting the path to the essence and have already proven to be very beneficial in their application, however, they remain only *one* of many ways and are not *the goal itself* which is not merely restricted to physical recovery and invigoration, but which is able to uplift man in every respect.

In my lecture “Possessed” I point out that only the blood composition of some particular person offers the possibility for the occurrence of spookish manifestations such as knocking, making noises, throwing of objects, etc., who during such incidents must always be in close proximity, as it is from his radiations that the power to manifest is drawn.

Even these things could be quickly remedied by the skillful intervention of a doctor who understands, and who helps by changing the composition of the blood, which also alters the radiation and thereby prevents such disagreeable possibilities.

It is the same with the so-called possessed ones, of whom there are many in spite of all doubts. The process in itself is quite simple, even if dreadfully decisive for the person concerned and for his environment, and painful to the relatives.

For such persons the composition of the blood has formed in such a manner that it offers the soul inhabiting the body only a feeble possibility, or none whatever, to manifest in full vigor towards the outer world; however, the radiation of the blood provides the opportunity to another soul, with less good or even malicious qualities, and which is perhaps already free from its body, to interfere from outside and even to control brain and body either periodically or perpetually.

Here, too, a doctor can then give effective relief by changing the composition of the blood, which in turn alters the radiation, thereby cutting off alien influences and granting the opportunity for the indwelling volition to unfold its own personal powers.

As I have already mentioned, the researchers are on a very good and beneficial path in determining the blood groups, and it is just in the application of this knowledge that their observations must confirm my statements.

If a different blood group was used in the case of a blood transfusion, then the soul living in such a body would find itself prevented from fully developing its volition, would perhaps be entirely cut off from it, because with the blood of different composition the radiation also changes and is then no longer adapted to the soul. It cannot make full use of the different type of radiation or even none whatever.

To the outside world such a person would then appear handicapped in his thinking and acting, because his soul cannot work properly. It can even go so far that the soul, hindered in its capacity to work, slowly severs itself from the body and leaves it altogether, which is equivalent to physical death.

Doctors will recognize with amazement how far-reaching and comprehensive the influence of the proper blood composition is in each human body in relation to the effectiveness of the soul on earth, which diseases and other ailments can be abolished by the right knowledge, and how the hitherto existing “secret of the blood” is solved and thus becomes the key to joyous activity in God’s wonderful Creation!

It is not through injections that *lasting* changes can be brought about, but in the natural way, through appropriate food and drink, which over a short period will vary with every individual person, yet always without one-sided limitations.

From these considerations it also follows that a great number of so-called “mentally backward” children can be fundamentally helped. Just give their souls the right bridge for the development of their powers, and you will see how they begin to blossom forth and work with joy upon this earth; for in reality there are no sick souls!

What hinders the soul, or better said the spirit, will always and only be defective or false radiation of the blood, unless it is forcibly caused by a disease of the brain.

In the weaving of Creation all is indeed so wonderfully arranged that probably none of my readers will be surprised when I further explain that even the type of blood radiation of an expectant mother can become an additional decisive factor as to the kind of spirit to be incarnated, which must follow the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species; for each of the different kinds of blood radiations will prepare only for the approach and entry of a type of soul which completely corresponds with it. It is likewise understandable that the same species of soul must try and bring about similar blood compositions, because they can only become truly effective by a very definite kind of radiation, which again changes during the different periods of life.

He who wishes to grasp this hint with regard to birth correctly should at the same time become acquainted with my explanations in the lecture “The mystery of birth”, because in

following the self-acting working of the Laws of Creation I must elucidate one point at one time and another point at another time, although everything forms an inseparable whole and no part of it can be described as something which exists independently, but only as a part which is closely linked with the whole; which part in its co-operation becomes ever again visible at various places which reappears such as a coloured thread put in accordance with the laws.

Later on I shall elaborate more fully on all the details necessary completely to fill in the picture, which I have today given only in broad outline.

I hope that in times to come it may prove a great blessing for mankind.

One further hint is perhaps still appropriate: It can easily be recognized that the blood cannot be solely dependent upon the body because of the difference between human blood and animal blood, which can be discerned immediately.

The basic composition of these two types of blood is so different that it must be obvious. If the body alone would form the blood then there would need to be a far greater similarity. It therefore depends on something else: in the case of the human blood it is the *spirit!* The soul of the animal on the other hand, which becomes active through the body, consists of a different species, and is not of the spiritual species, which makes man a human being. Consequently also the blood *must* be completely different, too!

## The Language of the Lord.

It is the sacred duty of the human spirit to investigate why it is living on earth, or in general in this Creation, in which it is suspended as if by a thousand threads. No man considers himself so insignificant as to imagine that his existence is without purpose, unless *he* makes it purposeless. In any case he deems himself too important. And yet there are only a few men on earth capable of laboriously detaching themselves from their spiritual indolence, so far as seriously to concern themselves with the investigation of their task on earth.

Again it is solely indolence of the spirit that makes them willing to accept the firmly-established doctrines of others. And it is indolence that lies in the reassurance that comes from thinking that it is great to adhere to the faith of their parents, without submitting its underlying trains of thoughts to keen, careful and independent examination.

In all these matters men are now eagerly supported by calculating and selfish associations, which believe that the best way to extend and safeguard their influence, and thus to increase their power, is by adding to the number of their adherents.

But they walk in error and have not reckoned on God, whom they only pretend to serve, or at best they have even also tried to deceive themselves. The truth is that all of them only serve themselves.

They are far from the recognition of God; for otherwise they would not bind the human spirit with the fetters of a firmly-established doctrine, but would have to educate it for the personal responsibility ordained by God, which fundamentally stipulates *full freedom of spiritual decision!* Only a spirit free

in this respect can come to the true recognition of God that matures within him to the complete conviction which is essential for anyone who wishes to be uplifted to Luminous Heights; for only free, sincere conviction can help him to achieve this. —

But what have you done, you men! How have you suppressed this highest Grace of God and wantonly prevented it from developing, and from helping all earthmen to open up *that* path which safely leads them to peace, to joy, and to the highest bliss!

Consider this: that also in making a choice, in agreement or in obedience, which as a result of spiritual indolence may be done only from habit or general custom, *a personal decision is involved*, laying upon the individual who acts in such manner his personal responsibilities according to the Laws of Creation!

For those who cause a human spirit to do this naturally a personal responsibility goes hand in hand, inevitably and irremovably. No thought nor action, however trivial, can be erased without similar consequences from Creation in whose web the threads both for the individual as well as for the masses are accurately spun, awaiting redemptions, which in turn must eventually be received by the originators or producers, either as suffering or as joy, according to how they once emerged from them; only now they have grown and are thus strengthened.

You are caught in the web of your own volitions, of your actions, and are not released from it until the threads can fall away from you in the redemption.

Among all creatures in Creation the human spirit is the only one to have *free will*, which until today he could not explain and did not understand, because within the narrow bounds of his intellectual pondering he found no clues to prove it.

His free will lies solely in the *decision*, of which he may take many every hour. In the independent weaving of the Laws of Creation, however, he is unswervingly subject to the consequences of every one of his personal decisions! Therein

lies his responsibility, which is inseparably connected with the gift of free will to make decisions, a peculiar gift which is given to the human spirit and which is inseparable from it.

What would otherwise become of Divine Justice, which is firmly anchored in Creation as support, balance and maintenance of all the working therein?

In Its effects, however, It does not always take account of the short span of only one earth-life for a human spirit; but here there are entirely different conditions, as readers of my Message know.

You have often brought harm upon yourselves, and sometimes force it upon your children, through many superficial decisions. Even though you yourselves have proved too indolent still to summon up the strength to decide for yourselves in your deepest intuitive perception whether, regardless of all you have learnt, each word to which you decided to adhere can hold Truth, at least you should not seek to force the consequences of your indolence also upon your children, whom you thus plunge into misfortune.

Thus what in one case is caused by spiritual indolence, in others is brought about by the calculating intellect.

Through both these enemies of spiritual freedom in decision mankind is now bound, except for a few who still try to summon up the courage to burst this bond within them in order to become real human beings themselves, as follows from obedience to the Divine Laws.

The Divine Laws are true friends in everything, they are helpful blessings from the Will of God, Who thus opens the paths to salvation for everyone who strives towards it.

There is not a single other road to this than the one clearly shown by the Laws of God in Creation! The whole of Creation is the Language of God, which you shall earnestly strive to read, and which is by no means as difficult as you think.

You belong to this Creation as a part of it, and therefore you must vibrate with it, work in it, and mature by learning from it; and thus through gaining in understanding you must rise

ever higher, from one step to the next, going along with the radiation in order to ennoble everything that comes in contact with you on your way.

There will then spontaneously develop around you one beautiful miracle after another, which through reciprocal action will raise you ever higher.

Learn to recognize your path in Creation, and thus you will also know the purpose of your existence. Then you will be filled with grateful rejoicing, and the greatest happiness which a human spirit is able to bear, which lies solely in the recognition of God!

The supreme bliss of the true recognition of God, however, can never grow out of an acquired blind faith, much less come to flower; but convinced knowledge, knowing conviction, alone gives to the spirit what it requires for this.

You earthmen are in this Creation to *find* supreme happiness! In the Living Language which God speaks to you! And to understand this Language, to learn it, and to sense inwardly the Will of God in it, *that* is your *goal* during your journey through Creation. In Creation itself, to which you belong, lies the explanation of the *purpose* of your existence, and at the same time also the recognition of your *goal!* In no other way can you find either.

This demands of you that you *live* Creation. But you are only able to live or *experience* it when you really *know* it.

With my Message I now open the Book of Creation for you! The Message clearly shows you the Language of God in Creation, which you must learn to understand so that you can make it completely your own.

Just imagine a child on earth who cannot understand his father or mother because he has never learned the language they speak to him. Indeed, what is to become of such a child?

He does not even know what is expected of him, and will thus fall into one difficulty after the other, draw upon himself one sorrow after another, and probably end up utterly useless for any purpose or enjoyment on earth.

Must not every child *personally* learn the language of his parents for himself, if he is to amount to anything? Nobody can do it for him!

Otherwise he would never orient himself, nor would he ever be able to mature and work on earth, but he would remain a hindrance, a burden to others, and would finally have to be segregated to prevent him from causing harm.

Do you now expect anything else?

You have of course inescapably to fulfil such a duty of the child towards your God, Whose Language *you* must learn to understand as soon as you desire His help. God, however, speaks to you in His Creation. If you want to advance in it, you must thus first recognize this His Language. Should you neglect it, you will be cut off from those who know the Language and adjust themselves to it, because you would otherwise cause harm and obstruction, even without necessarily wishing to do so!

*You* must therefore do it! Do not forget this, and see that it is done now, otherwise you will be helplessly exposed to whatever threatens you.

My Message will be a faithful helper to you!

## Childlikeness.

The word “childlike” is an expression which is in most cases wrongly applied by human beings in their careless and thoughtless manner of speaking.

Hampered by indolence of the spirit, this expression is not perceived intuitively enough to be properly grasped. But he who has not grasped it in its entirety will never be able to use it aright either.

And yet it is just childlikeness that offers mankind a strong bridge for ascent to Luminous Heights, for giving every human spirit the possibility to mature, and for reaching perfection in order to live eternally in this Creation, which is the House of God the Father that He places at the disposal of men, provided ... they remain guests therein who are *agreeable* to Him. Guests who do not cause damage in the rooms so graciously left to them solely for their use, with a table at all times richly spread.

But how far removed is man now from the childlikeness he so needs!

Yet without it he can achieve nothing for his spirit. The spirit *must* possess childlikeness; for it is and remains a child of Creation, even when it has gained full maturity.

*A child of Creation!* In this lies the deep meaning; for the spirit must develop into a child of God. Whether it will ever achieve this depends entirely on the degree of recognition it is willing to acquire on its wanderings through all the spheres of matter.

But with this willingness the *deed* must also manifest. In the Spiritual planes will is at the same time also deed. There will and deed are always *one*. However, this is only so in the *Spiritual* planes, not in the worlds of matter. The more dense

and heavy a plane of the world of matter is, the further removed is the deed from the will.

The fact that density causes obstruction is demonstrated even by sound, which as it travels, has to struggle through material substance, which obstructs it according to the nature of the density. This can be clearly observed even over shorter distances.

When a man chops wood or drives nails into the timbers of a beam, the impact of his tool can be clearly seen, yet the sound of it only arrives a few seconds later. This is so noticeable that everybody must have experienced it at one time or another.

The process is similar, but still more ponderous, between the will and the deed of man on earth. The will flares up in the spirit, and is immediately deed in the spirit. But to make the will visible in the gross material world, the spirit also needs the physical body. Only on impulse does a physical body already act within a few seconds of the flaring up of the will. Thereby the more tedious work of the frontal brain is eliminated, which otherwise has to mediate the way of the will right up to the impression on the activity of the body.

The normal way takes rather longer. Sometimes the result is only a feeble action, or none at all; because on its extended way the volition is weakened, or altogether suppressed, by the pondering intellect.

In this observation, although not strictly relevant here, I would like to make a reference to the effects of Creation's Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species, which are overlooked and yet so clearly visible also in human activity:

Human-earthly laws have been worked out by the earthly intellect, and are also carried into effect by it. *For this reason* plans elaborated by the intellect, thus premeditated actions, are as such more severely punished and judged as more evil than affective actions committed on the impulse of the moment, thus unpremeditated. In most cases these latter are treated more leniently.

In reality, there is a connection which is imperceptible to men, in the homogeneity of intellectual activity under the compulsion of the Law of Creation, for all those who unconditionally submit to the intellect.

To them this is quite understandable.

Without knowing about it, the greater part of the atonement for an affective action is therewith assigned to *the Spiritual plane*. Legislators and judges have no idea of this, because they proceed from quite different, purely intellectual principles. With deeper reflection, however, and knowledge of the active Laws of Creation, all this appears in an entirely different light.

Nevertheless, in other earthly sentences and judgments, the Living Laws of God in Creation work quite independently on their own, uninfluenced by earthly-human laws and conceptions. It will surely not occur to any serious-minded person to think that real guilt, not merely what men first designate as guilt, could also be expiated at the same time before the Laws of God through a paid penalty dictated by the earthly intellect!

Already for thousands of years these have been, as it were, two separate worlds, separated by men's actions and thoughts, although they should only be *one* world in which *God's* Laws alone operate.

Through such earthly punishment, atonement can only ensue if the laws and the punishments are completely in accord with God's Laws in Creation.

Now there are two kinds of unpremeditated affective actions. Firstly, those already described, which should really be called *impulse*; and then affects, which flash up in the frontal brain, thus not in the spirit, and who belong to the intellectual category. The latter are unpremeditated, but should not receive the same mitigation as impulse-actions.

However, to find out exactly the just difference between the two will only become possible to *those* human beings who know all the Laws of God in Creation and are familiar with their effects. This must be reserved for a time to come, when there

will also be no more arbitrary actions among men, because they will have a spiritual maturity that lets them vibrate only in the Laws of God in all their deeds and thoughts.

This digression is merely to induce reflection, it did not belong to the real purpose of the lecture.

Simply remember that in the Spiritual planes will and deed are *one*, but in the material planes they are separated through the nature of the substance. That is why Jesus once said to men: "*The spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak!*" The flesh, which refers here to the gross material substance of the body, does not convert into deed everything that has already been will and deed in the spirit.

However, also on earth the spirit in its gross material garment could compel its volition always to become a gross material deed, if it were not too lazy to do so. It cannot hold the body responsible for this indolence; for the body was given to each spirit only as an instrument, which it must learn to control in order to use it properly.—

Thus the spirit is a child of Creation. And it must be *childlike* therein if it wishes to fulfil the purpose for which it stands in Creation. The presumption of the intellect caused the spirit to distance itself from childlikeness, because the intellect could not "understand" it such as it really is. As a result, however, the spirit lost its foothold in Creation, which in order to remain healthy itself must now expel it as a stranger, as an intruder and as a vermin.

And so it will come to pass that through their wrong thoughts and actions men will dig their own graves.—

How strange it is that every man who wishes to experience the Christmas Festival in the true sense must first try to recall his childhood!

This can actually be regarded as a clear enough sign *of the fact* that as an adult he is quite incapable of experiencing the Christmas Festival with his *intuitive perception*. It is very clear evidence that he has lost something he possessed as a child! Why does this not cause men to reflect!

Again it is spiritual indolence which prevents them from serious reflection on any matters. "That is for children," they think, and grownups have simply no time for it! They have to think about *more serious matters*."

More serious matters! By these more serious matters they mean only the chase after earthly things, thus the work of the intellect! The intellect quickly represses memories, so as not to lose its supremacy if the intuitive perception is for once yielded to!

The *greatest* things could be recognized in all these apparently so trivial facts, if only the intellect would allow time for it. But it has the upper hand, and fights for it with all craftiness and perniciousness. That is to say, it is not the intellect that fights, but actually that which uses it as a tool and hides behind it: the Darkness!

It does not want the Light to be found in memories. And *how* the spirit longs to find the Light, to draw new strength from It, you can recognize by the fact that with the memories of childhood Christmas Festivals there also awakens an undefined, almost painful yearning, able to tune many people for a brief moment to tenderness.

If such tenderness were used at once and with all one's strength, it could become the best soil for the *awakening!* But unfortunately this only sends adults into a reverie, whereby the rising force is wasted and lost. And in the reverie the opportunity also slips by without the possibility of bringing benefit, or of having been used.

Even though many a person sheds a few tears, he feels ashamed and tries to hide them, pulling himself together with a physical jerk that so often betrays unconscious defiance.

How much could people learn from all this. It is no coincidence that a tender sadness also weaves itself into the memories of childhood days. It is the unconscious sensing that something has been lost, leaving an emptiness, the inability still to perceive intuitively like a child.

But you have surely often noticed the wonderful and refreshing influence of the mere quiet presence of any person from whose eyes a *childlike* radiance sometimes glows.

The adult must not forget that childlike is not childish. But you do not know whence the childlike has such an effect, what it really is! And why Jesus said: "Become as children!"

To fathom what childlike is, you must first be clear that the childlike is by no means bound up with the child itself. No doubt you yourselves know children who lack the true beautiful childlikeness! Thus there are children without childlikeness! A malicious child will never have a childlike effect, nor an unruly one who is really ill-bred!

This clearly shows that childlikeness and the child are two things independent in themselves.

That which is called childlike on earth is a branch of the effect from out of *Purity!* Purity in its higher, not merely earthly-human sense. The human being who lives in the ray of Divine Purity, who makes room for the ray of Purity within himself, has thereby also acquired childlikeness, whether it be still in childhood or already as an adult.

Childlikeness is the result of inner purity, or the sign that such a human being has submitted to Purity and serves It. All these are merely different modes of expression, but in reality they always amount to the same thing.

Thus only a child who is pure within itself, and an adult who fosters purity within himself, can have a childlike effect. That is why he has a *refreshing* and vitalizing effect, and also inspires confidence!

And wherever there is true purity, genuine love can also enter; for God's Love works in the ray of Purity. The ray of Purity is the path It treads. It could not possibly walk on any other.

The one who has not absorbed the ray of Purity, to him the ray of Divine Love can never find its way!

Man, however, has deprived himself of childlikeness by turning away from the Light through his one-sided intellectual

thinking, to which he has sacrificed everything that might have uplifted him, and thus he has firmly chained himself with a thousand fetters to this earth, that is, to gross matter, which will hold him in its grip until he liberates himself from it. This, however, cannot come to him through earthly death, but only through *spiritual* awakening.

## Man and the Earth.

What have men contributed to the formation of this earth that might give them the right to freely dispose of it! Constantly they argue about the distribution of property without caring what the *real owner* has to say about it.

Men, you do not *want* to concern yourselves about this because you exactly intuitively perceive that such envious and hateful activity is *against* the will of the owner who graciously grants you the Earth as your dwelling place in the gross-material world.

This activity acutely characterizes the attitude of earthmen toward their God and Creator! Empty words, hypocritical activity, or intrinsically empty deeds can no longer disguise this fact. Like vandals, earthmen wreak havoc on goods that were entrusted to them. These goods are *entrusted* to them merely for proper use in accordance with God's purpose, and nothing else!

Therefore it cannot come as a surprise to you if the malicious, barbarous guests are thrown out of the dwelling, which they continually defile, thus mocking the proprietor.

The proprietor! This is not an empty word, nor a hollow concept and I will explain it briefly and reveal in broad outline that this is indeed the way it is; for in these matters, too, you must pass from faith to conviction. In this connection I will speak only of your dwelling, hence the earth! Of its formation.

You know that everything which can take on form in the worlds is contained within the *radiation* of the All-Holy Light.

The radiation of the Light contains everything that was necessary for the Creation of all the worlds and that is essential for its maintenance. If you wish to follow me properly, you need, from the start, to make a sharp distinction between God, the All-Holy Light Itself, and the *radiation of God*.

You must not make the mistake of thinking that Light and its radiation are *one and the same* because the radiation emanates from the Light. Such reasoning would spring from *human* thinking, which is unable to reach such heights and is therefore unable to conceptualize it.

Be content, therefore, when I say that the direct radiation of God, although divine, is not God Himself. Thus the two are different, not to be considered as one.

The direct radiation of God as such has its boundary in the Grail Castle. Beyond that it is *transformed* and can therefore no longer be characterized as divine.

The further down it descends the more transformations it undergoes through stages of cooling and the associated changes within itself. Nonetheless it must always be called radiation of the Light, which it remains so even in its transformations, yet there is a difference.

I have already explained all of this in my Message to the extent that an exact picture of this is provided. Today I will speak only of the formation of *the earth*. I will therefore pass over the transformations of the Light radiation and their effects, down to the world of matter and will start right off with the earth itself.

It is not easy to single out one thing from the universe to form a starting point, as everything is yet in motion and inseparable. Therefore, first of all seek to clearly understand this one sentence:

*Everything that is fundamental, driving, up-building, supportive and sustaining is radiation!*

In this your desire to know must be firmly anchored. The pressure or the force of the Light itself forces the propelling and circular movement so that nothing can come to a standstill.

And in this continuous movement, in combination with stages of warming and cooling, everything *is formed*, according to a very specific species, which, in correspondence with the Law of Radiations could not be formed in any other way.

This may be taken as the basis for the picture which I will give.

On the way down to the points where materialities can solidify and take on form, there is much that has already detached itself in order to take on form, such as the various levels of the pure-spiritual, the spiritual and the pure substantiality. Planes and worlds could thus be formed which, while circulating within themselves, do not cross certain boundaries.

In the appropriate cooling of the radiations the gross-material rocks of the earth were able to consolidate, during which process elemental helpers, always exactly corresponding to the respective species of rocks, are consciously at work. Through their expanding consciousness these beings receive corresponding human forms

Water, air and soil had also separated at that point.

Let us suppose that when we look at this certain part of the earth all we find is air, water, soil and rock. All this was contained in the radiation of God, but only at a specific point in the cooling process was it able to coalesce through movement thus becoming materially tangible and visible.

Despite gaining visibility in the cooling process each one of these species retains a certain radiation proper to it so that even rock has an intrinsic radiation, which at the same time holds it together.

Now the rock is subjected to the influences of air and humidity as well as to changing temperatures, particularly on its surface. With time, these influences produce changes on the outermost layer known as weathering.

Since the inherent radiation of the rock permeates outward through the weathered layer setting this layer aglow, figuratively speaking, it is being transformed through this glowing before it can be effective outwardly because the weathering caused a change in the outermost layer of rock.

This completely natural alteration of the radiation also provides it with altered properties. As soon as this change of

the rock radiation has reached a very specific degree it offers the possibility of solidification of seeds for lichen and mosses, which are still loosely floating in the invisible general radiation.

These seeds are attracted by the type of radiation of the weathered rock, and corresponding elemental helpers carefully combine them, nurture them to maturation, and tend to the growth of the developing plants, which in turn develop their inherent radiation in the consolidation.

When they wilt and decay their radiation in turn undergoes a change, which in a certain condition offers the way for consolidation of seeds for other plants. Everywhere, elemental helpers such as gnomes, elves, etc., who were able to form under the influence of the altered radiation prior to the coarser consolidation of the seed components, are lovingly and supportively at work. These have frequently been seen by various people

And so it continues onward in the upbuilding or the process of evolution, however man wishes to name it. The transformations of the radiations offer to ever-new species the possibility of consolidation and development.

Thus the most diverse varieties of plants emerge, always following the lawful upbuilding contained within and manifesting through the transformations of the radiations.

Through the consolidation of the radiations of rock, decaying plants, water, and air and soil at certain lawfully determined qualities and quantities, emerge the first animals whose gross-material seeds are also invisibly present in the general radiation.

The respective mixture of radiations suitable for this purpose magnetically attracts the existing components from the main radiation, which of course always encompasses everything. Thus it is first the *seed* which forms as a condensation, and not the animal, which only develops from out of the consolidated seed.

With this the mystery of the familiar riddle is also solved: which came first on earth, the chicken or the egg?

Advancing step by step, evolution then proceeded with the creation of species in accordance with the laws inherent in changes in the radiations until, finally, in a very specific state of maturity, the most highly evolved animal obtained the *kind of blood radiation* that offered the human spirit germ the opportunity to incarnate. Indeed, through the nature of its blood radiation at that time it *attracted*, even *forced* the human spirit germ to incarnate and, while slowly awakening in the animal body, to remodel this body in order to form present-day man, including his *outward* appearance, in the advancing degrees of his self-awareness.

Today, I only wish to point to the genesis in a rough outline, in order to form a picture, which shows you that everything has to be God's property, because everything was formed out of *His radiation* and could not exist without it.

Man, however, has *no share* in the earth, but is merely permitted to *inhabit* it. The earth had already been formed when he was permitted to awaken upon it in order to develop a conscious existence.

Had you listened and adapted yourselves to the Divine Laws in Creation, in humble acceptance of all of the gifts therein, which is equivalent to acting in accordance with these Laws, you would already today be living in paradise on earth. Free from worry and strife, you would not even know envy and hatred, greed and lust for power, in short, you would be *human beings!*

Happy human beings who, vibrating harmoniously in the radiance of the Light, continue in the upbuilding of the Kingdom which belongs to God.

## Pentecost.

Pentecost is the accomplishment of the Light of every earthly year, which gives to Creation new currents of force, so that it still be sustained and can expand itself, in order to penetrate more and more new stretches, and thus to shape them through motion and warming, whereby the human spirit must form a link of the long chain, which renders radiation processes possible onto far reaching distances.

So far this humanity has completely failed in that respect, and has not only prevented the expansion of all Creations, but has also poisoned what exists and has interfused it with all sorts of destructive disorders.

This will soon be different in the workings of the Laws of Creation through the thorough cleansing of all that disturbs the up-building. Then, through the correct radiation of all human spirits, there subsists not only Light-striving beauty of the already existing, but also perpetual upbuilding, expansion of the boundaries of all Creations, which can never come to an end when all that is created is vibrating in harmony with the Will of God. The eternal and joyful work of the blessed human spirits can then begin. It will be eternal, thus without end.

The God-Son Jesus came to Earth in order to also open Paradise to men by his Word. Paradise, which until then had been closed to the spirits of evolution through their lack of cognition of the higher knowledge, which is required for a stay in Paradise.

Only *thus* were they able, even as spirits of evolution, to win for themselves eternity through an activity wanted by the Light. However, resulting from the guilt of the murder of the Grace Bringer, the gate to Paradise, which already wanted to open itself, slammed shut again for humanity of the earth, and

thus also took away every perspective of an entitlement to eternal life.

The yearning for the Light, however, which still remained in some human spirits, kept up threads, which could make a repetition of the salvation through the Word possible again in the time of the Holy Judgment for *those* men who open themselves to the Word through the suffering that has to come to earth as a repercussion of all happenings.

In order that the last time of Grace must not pass unused, it is the sacred duty of womanhood having to strive to return to her proper assignment, with all her capability of intuition, which she received first and foremost *for that purpose* to act as guardians of the Sacred Flame of purest yearning for the Light on earth! The yearning for the Light is the channel for *all* help, all the forces from the Light, which flow to the human beings on earth. Where there is no yearning for the Light, there every way for the reception of Divine Graces is buried and thus also life itself.

Therefore now prepare yourselves, you women and you maidens, become priestesses of the Sacred Flame of the purest yearning for the Light, so that the soil be well prepared to receive the Word from God Himself, which alone can bring salvation to all those entangled in dogma and constrained in spirit.

Yearning for the Light! How often do people speak of *yearning*, without knowing themselves what yearning really is, what it shall tell you, what it shall bring you.

The human spirit should know only *one* yearning, because there is indeed only one yearning. This is the yearning for the *Light*, which rests in the spirit, but upon which the false path of earthmen accumulated a burden of slags in order to stifle the yearning, which threatens to become uncomfortable for them given their inclination for earthly importance, their hunger for power, their greed for earthly pleasures.

Thus this noble word of yearning was completely twisted and distorted, reduced to earthly terms of lowest thoughts, and thus profaned.

The earthman often speaks of yearnings, which are *so* different in their kinds, that one should easily be able to recognize, that *uniformity* is missing thereby, which after all is indispensable for a true notion.

Confusion and arbitrariness are evidently shown, and thus the absence of any understanding. There is yearning for the earthly home, yearning for persons, for the woman or the man, also for wealth, carnal pleasures, sometimes also for rest and recreation, for a change or pleasures of all kinds, in short, the expression “yearning” is applied to earthly desires for so many things.

Even though such yearnings can often lead to illness and even death, that others in turn can lead to crimes, no one can see that something must not be quite right, since everything that resonates in the sense of God can only lead *upwards* and must always become a *blessing*. The yearnings, however, which are called as such by earthman’s mouth, only have as consequences and by-products the evil, leading downwards instead of upwards, oppressing instead of uplifting, weakening, making unhappy, grumpy, dissatisfied.

There is something wrong here, and that is what everyone must say to himself, and it is actually so.

Yearning, according to the current perception, is nothing else than a consequence of unfulfilled wishes, it is an insane intensification of an addiction to thoughts of purely earthly nature, the fulfillment of which usually brings about disappointment as soon as the first intoxication is over.

How often does a man long for his place of birth when he has moved away as a child, or in his youthful age. Once he has succeeded in returning to the place of his longing, in most cases it causes his heart to ache; for nothing can correspond with *that*, which he represented to himself from afar. The image of reality appears quite different from the image of his longing in yearning dreams.

Such is it everywhere. The unmatched image of the longing very quickly becomes, upon fulfillment, a gray reality, which brings about disappointment.

The word, in its distortion directed towards the earthly, has long become a distorted image of its true meaning.

Put yourself in the position of such a person longing. Out of the respective circumstances a wish arises for something which he cannot possess at the present moment, or which he cannot fulfill for himself. In his dissatisfaction with the present, he now clings to such a wish, no matter whether, in his free time, devoting himself to a beautiful dream, whether for reassurance or indulgence, in merely imagined or deceptive enjoyments, which are still unattainable, or for the fueling of his anger, to stifle his dissatisfaction.

Such playing with one's thoughts, which in the beginning are often only time-consuming self-entertainments, then soon find strengthening themselves more and more, connection with similarities, and finally also with centers of accumulated similar thought-forms, thus receiving unimagined conflux.

It is almost always about wishes, which concern fulfillments of personal desires and which are of purely earthly nature. Of course this also includes the well-known homesickness! It is basically nothing but selfishness, only in a form, which makes it possible to feign more noble intuitions. But to describe such weaknesses as greatness, or to sing about it as noble love, is completely false. There is a lack of self-discipline, the weakness of letting oneself go.

The attraction of affinities thus allows similarities to assail such wishful person and awakens in him a burning desire, gaining an ever firmer, denser form, which develops into a yearning addiction to achieve a corresponding gratification.

The burning desire, the yearning addiction consumes the physical strength as well as the spiritual one. Thus it results in illness or unconsidered acts. This is the effect of yearning addiction, which is oriented downwards, towards the earthly.

But the *true* notion of this word, which is so distorted today, is *yearning quest for the Light, for the Truth*, which in its quality is capable of uplifting the spirit, but never leads it downwards, which produces a funnel through which the

blessings of the Light can flow into such a human spirit, in order to strengthen him, to make him joyful for his wandering on Earth!

And for *those* human beings, who bear in themselves a yearning quest for the Light and the Truth, who because of this, shine like a torch in the depths of this earth, Pentecost is given in mercy with the renewal of the Force out of the luminous heights, simply for *those* human beings alone; because others cannot partake in it because they are not open for it.

Whosoever wishes to experience within himself the Pentecost, the renewal of the currents of the Force from out of the Light, must carry the yearning *for the Light* and for the *Truth* within himself, untarnished. Only *thus* can he open himself to the influx of Divine Grace!

Let all other desires fall, which are directed towards the earthly, then you will receive in blessings from the Light *more* than you could simply wish for, even in earthly worthwhile things of all kinds!

As you wish for nothing, it will be given to you! As soon as you offer *yourselves* to the Light with all your volition, all your being, only then you are open to the most Holy Force, which outpours into all Creations!

## The first step.

Let my Word become *alive* within you; for *this* alone can bring you *that* benefit which you need, enabling your spirit to ascend to the Luminous Heights of the eternal Gardens of God.

It is of no avail to *know* of the Word! And if you could recite my entire Message sentence by sentence from memory, in order to teach yourselves and your fellow-men ... it is of no avail unless you *act* accordingly, *think* in the sense of my Word, and adjust your whole earth-life to it as a matter of course, as something which has become an integral part of your being, which cannot be separated from you. Only then will you be able to draw from my Message the eternal values it holds for you.

“By their *works* ye shall know them!” This saying of Christ is *primarily* intended for all the readers of my Message! By their works means by their *activity*, that is, by their thinking and deeds in their daily life on Earth! Your deeds also include your speech, not only your actions; for speaking is action, the effect of which you have hitherto underestimated. Even your *thoughts* are included here.

Men are in the habit of saying that thoughts are “free”. By this they wish to imply that they cannot be held accountable on Earth for their thoughts, because these are on a level which is inaccessible to human hands.

Therefore they often *play* with thoughts in the most careless way or, better expressed, they play *in* thoughts. Unfortunately often a very dangerous game, in the light-hearted illusion that they can emerge from it unharmed.

But here they err; for thoughts too belong to the *world of gross matter*, and must in all circumstances also be redeemed

in it before a spirit becomes capable of swinging itself freely upwards, once it has severed the connection with its earthly body.

Therefore seek at all times to vibrate even with your thoughts in the sense of my Message, in such a way that you desire only what is *noble*, and do not lower yourselves because you imagine that nobody can see or hear it.

Thoughts, words and the visible deed all belong to the Realm of gross matter in this Creation!

Thoughts operate in the world of *fine* gross matter, words in the world of *medium* gross matter, and visible actions take form in the world of *coarsest*, that is, *densest* gross matter. These three kinds of your activity are *gross material!*

But the forms of all three are closely connected with each other, their effects are interwoven. What that implies for you, how incisive and decisive its effect often is in the course of your existence, you cannot estimate all at once.

It means nothing else than that also a thought, automatically working on according to its nature, can strengthen a homogeneous type in the world of *medium* matter, thereby producing more powerful forms; likewise then, deducing from this, it again continues to work on within this intensification, and arises in a visible active form in the *coarsest* world of matter, without you yourselves seeming to be directly concerned with it.

It comes as a shock to know this, when one realizes how superficial and careless these earthmen are in their thinking.

Thus without knowing it you *participate* in many a deed perpetrated by one or other of your fellow-men, simply because he has received the intensification in the way I have just explained to you. It became capable of driving him to the crudest perpetration of something that had hitherto slumbered within him, with which previously he had always merely toyed in his thoughts.

Thus many a person on Earth very often looks with disapproval upon some action of one of his fellow-men, angrily

repudiating and condemning it, and yet he is *jointly responsible* for it before the Eternal Laws of God! In this someone who is a complete stranger to him may be involved, and it may concern a deed which he himself would never have committed in the realm of coarsest matter.

Think yourselves deeply into such happenings for once, and you will then all the more understand that I called to you in my Message: "*Keep the hearth of your thoughts pure, by so doing you will bring peace and be happy!*"

But when you have become sufficiently strong in this respect through your own purification, far fewer crimes than hitherto, in which many have been unknowingly implicated, will be committed on Earth.

The time and place of such deeds as you may become implicated in are of no importance here. Even if they occurred at a place on the opposite end of the Earth to where you live, in places where you have never set foot, of whose existence you have no knowledge whatever. Through your toying with thoughts intensifications will strike *wherever* they discover homogeneous types, independent of distances, nation and country.

Thus in the course of time thoughts of hate and envy may thrust themselves upon individuals, groups or whole nations, wherever they find homogeneity, impelling them to actions expressed in forms entirely different from those that first arose through your toying with thoughts.

As repercussion it may then manifest itself in *such* a way as corresponds to what the *perpetrator* perceives intuitively at the time of the deed. Thus you may have contributed to the perpetration of such horrible deeds as you yourselves have never really contemplated, and yet you are connected with them, and a part of the reaction must burden your spirit, must hang on it like a weight when it severs itself from the body.

But on the other hand you can also contribute even more powerfully to the peace and happiness of humanity, and through pure, joyful thinking can have a share in works that unfold through men totally afar from you.

From this the blessing also naturally flows back to you, and you do not realize why.

If only you could but once *see* how the immutable Justice of God's All-Holy Will is always fulfilled in the self-acting Laws of this Creation for every single thought you harbor, you would strive with all your might to attain purity in your thinking!

Thus you will then only have become *such* human beings as the Creator in His Work will mercifully guide to the knowledge that bestows eternal life upon them, allowing them to become helpers in Creation worthy to receive the high blessings destined for the human spirit; so that these may be joyfully and gratefully transformed and passed on to *those* creatures who are only able to absorb them through such a transformation by man, and who today, through the decline of the human spirit, remain wantonly cut off from them, after it had already been possible for them to come into existence in times of a better and more purely swinging humanity.

With this, however, you then have made only *one* sentence from my Message glow with vitality for yourselves on Earth!

For you it is the *most difficult one*, which will then make all the rest much easier, whose fulfilment must already let miracle upon miracle arise before you in earthly *visible* and tangible form. —

When you have conquered yourselves *in this*, you will be confronted on your path with yet another danger resulting from the distortion of human thinking: You will recognize in it a power which you will wish to press all too readily into quite definite forms, so that it may serve this or that special purpose made up of selfish desires!

Already today I wish to *warn* you against this; for the danger can engulf you, you would perish in it, even after you have set out on the right path.

Beware of a *desperate struggle* to enforce this purity of thoughts; for in so doing you would already press them into definite channels, and your effort would become an illusion, would always be only *artificially* enforced, and could never have the great effect that it should have. Your efforts would

bring harm instead of benefit, because they lack the genuineness of the free intuition. Again it would be a product of your *intellectual volition*, but never the work of your spirit! Against this I warn you.

Remember my Word of the Message which tells you that all true greatness can lie only in *simplicity*, since true greatness *is* simple! You may be better able to understand *that* simplicity which I mean here, if for the time being you use instead the human-earthly concept of *plainness*. This perhaps comes nearer to your comprehension, and you will hit upon the true meaning.

You cannot give the purity that I mean to your thoughts through your thought-volition; but the pure volition, *plain* and boundless, must well up within you from your intuition, not compressed into a word which can only give rise to a limited concept. That must not be, but an all-embracing urge for the good, which is able to envelop your thoughts as they arise and to permeate them even before they take form, is the right thing which you need.

It is not difficult, indeed much easier than the other attempts, once you become plain, whereby intellectual conceit about your own abilities and your own power cannot arise. Empty yourselves of thoughts, and set free within you the urge for what is noble and good. Then you will have *that* foundation for thinking, which comes from the volition of your *spirit*; and whatever arises *from that* you can then safely leave to the work of your intellect to carry out in the realm of densest gross matter. Nothing wrong can ever develop.

Cast off far from you all the torment caused by thoughts, and trust instead in your *spirit*, which will surely find the right way if you yourselves do not wall it up. Become *free in spirit*, which means nothing else than *let the spirit within you have its way!* Then it simply *cannot* do other than journey towards the height; for its very nature draws it upwards with all certainty. Hitherto you have restrained it so that it could no longer unfold, thereby you had restricted its flight or bound its wings.

The foundation for the upbuilding of a new humanity, which you cannot and must not evade, rests in the one sentence: *Keep the hearth of your thoughts pure!*

And it is *with this* that man must begin! That is his first task, which will make him *what* he *must* become. An *example* to all who strive for Light and Truth, who wish to serve the Creator gratefully through the nature of their whole being. He who fulfils *this* needs no further directions. He *is* as he should be, and will thus receive the full measure of help that awaits him in Creation and leads him upwards without interruption.

## Chastity.

Chastity is a concept that has been so unbelievably narrowed down by earthmen that absolutely nothing of its real meaning is left. It has even been dragged on to a wrong course; and as the natural and inevitable consequence this distortion has brought needless oppression, and even very often untold suffering, upon many people.

Ask where you want what chastity is, and everywhere in reply you will find explained in one way or another the concept of physical virginity; in any case, this is the highest that the perception of earthmen can reach.

This proves completely the inferior way of thinking of those who subordinate themselves to the intellect, which has itself set the limits to everything earthly, because it cannot reach any further with its faculties that are born of the earthly.

How easy it would then be for man to be regarded as chaste and so create a reputation, while sunning himself in vain self-glorification. But this does not bring him one step upwards on the road to the Luminous Gardens, which as Paradise are the blissful and final goal of a human spirit.

It is of no avail to earthman if he keeps his physical body chaste and defiles his spirit, which can then never cross the thresholds that lead upwards from one step to the next.

Chastity is different from men's idea of it, far more comprehensive and greater. It does not demand that man should go against nature; for this would be an offence against the Laws vibrating in God's Creation, and could not remain without harmful results.

Chastity is the *earthly* concept of Purity, which is *Divine*. For every human spirit it is the endeavor to manifest gross-materially what is sensed as a reflection of something

implicitly Divine. Purity is Divine, chastity its emulation by the human spirit; thus a spiritual image, which can and shall become evident in earthly conduct.

This should suffice as a fundamental Law for every *matured* human spirit in order to realize chastity. However, on earth, urged on by many a selfish desire, and solely for the purpose of achieving satisfaction of his wishes man is inclined to imagine something, which he actually does not possess within himself.

Selfishness takes the lead, and dulls the truly *pure* volition! Man will never admit this to himself, but simply allows himself to drift along. And when he can no longer persuade himself otherwise, he describes this often very obvious attempt to satisfy his questionable selfish desires as a stroke of fate to which one must submit.

Therefore to guide and support him he needs still other hints which will let him experience and recognize what in truth chastity *is* as it lies in the Will of God, Who does not want any separation from nature on earth.

In the Divine Sphere Purity is closely united with Love! Hence if he is to derive blessing from them, man must not try to separate the two on earth either.

But on earth love is also no more than an evil caricature of what it *really* is. Thus unless it first undergoes a change it cannot unite with the true concept of purity.

To all those who strive to attain chastity, I herewith give a hint which provides the support that man on earth needs in order to live in *such a way* as rests in the Law of Creation, and as is therefore also pleasing to God:

“He who in his actions always remembers not to harm his fellow-man who reposes trust in him, not to do anything that may later oppress this other person, will always act in *such a way* as to remain spiritually unburdened, and may therefore be called truly chaste!”

These simple words, rightly understood, can fully protect and guide man through the entire Creation, and lead him upwards

into the Luminous Gardens, his true home. These words are the key to all rightful activity on earth; for genuine chastity lies in them.

The Son of God Jesus expressed precisely the same in the words:

“Love thy neighbor as thyself!”

But you must beware of falling back into the old human faults, and of once more construing and partly distorting the meaning of the words so as to make them serve your own purpose, soothe you in your wrong-doing, and lull your fellow-men into carelessness or even help to mislead them.

Absorb such words as they are truly meant to be absorbed, not as appears convenient to you and suits your stubborn volition. Then for you they will be like the keenest sword in your hand, with which you can slay all Darkness if you but will. Let them become alive within you in the right way so that, filled with gratitude, you may grasp life on earth as jubilant victors!

## Salvation! Redemption!

**S**alvation! Redemption! How often already have human beings pictured these words wrongly to themselves, when they wanted to see in them unconditional help from the Light, to the exclusion of the All-Holy Justice! This implies a total error, which is already evident today in everything devised by the human mind. They want to make God into their helpful slave, who is only to be considered in connection with the welfare of insignificant earthmen.

Just ask yourselves for once about this, throw light on your thoughts without extenuation, delve into them clearly and objectively, then you will have to confess that your whole thinking has never been attuned other than to the idea that, upon your petitions, God should always serve and help you to fulfil your wishes.

Of course you do not speak of it in terms that would be more according to the nature of your being, but as always give another name to your false volition, putting on little cloaks of deceptive humility, and only speaking of “granting” instead of serving; yet this does not alter the fact that your whole conduct, even when praying, is dominated by evil and cannot be pleasing to God!

At last be honest with yourselves for once, and tremble at the recognition of how you have hitherto always stood before your God, stubborn, arrogant and discontented, hypocritical because of your superficiality, thinking of Him only in misery and distress so that He may help you out of the consequences of your actions; but you have never asked beforehand whether your decisions really were according to *His Will*.

What are you men before the Omnipotence and Sublimity of the Lord, Whom you would have rule over you just as it pleases

you! With what presumption you would like to enforce here on Earth *those* laws that come from your narrow way of thinking, and that are not in harmony with the Divine Laws that He placed in Creation. You so often exercise your wrong volition, with a cunning and evil-mindedness that is inexcusable before God, harming your neighbors thereby to gain advantages for yourselves, either in money or goods, or to acquire a reputation with those for whom you do it.

All this will now fall heavily upon you with the weight of a mountain; for nothing of all your wrong-doing could be cancelled in the Law of Reciprocal Action as having been redeemed, unless you freed yourselves through the change in your volition for what is good.

The barriers that still hold back the collapse of the piled-up mass of reprisals are torn away! Everything rolls down irresistibly on earthly humanity, who would like to continue in spiritual indolence and arrogance in order to enforce their will, which has long since strayed far from the Will of God.

This, however, is the end for the dominion of all Darkness on Earth! It will collapse, and drag down all those human beings who have sided with it.

But in the midst of the thundering roar of the collapse, the Word rings out! Victoriously It resounds through the lands, so that those who honestly *strive* for It may still save themselves.

The condition implied is that each one must himself strive to recognize the Word of the Lord as salvation! If he doubts and allows this last opportunity to pass without making use of it with all his strength, he will never again be in this position, and the moment for him to find redemption is forever lost.

Salvation, redemption, will only come to him in the Word, Which he must absorb, so that by living in accordance with It he may release himself from the bonds that hold him down through misunderstanding and distorting the true concepts.

You have been most seriously poisoned and endangered by the false representation of the Love of God, which you sought to divest of all vigor, all power and clarity, enveloping it

instead in an unhealthy weakness and harmful indulgence, which was bound to plunge you all together into spiritual indolence and thus into ruin.

Beware of the fatal distortion of the concept of the Holy Love of God! You therewith fall into a slumber which at first is pleasant, but which becomes the sleep of death.

*True* love does not lie in indulgence, and in a kindness that is expected to forgive everything. This is wrong, and acts like a drug, that only lulls the spirits into lassitude and weakness, finally bringing on complete paralysis and enforcing eternal death, since an awakening at the right time is then impossible.

Only the severe coolness of Divine Purity can penetrate the lassitude, and pave the way for the true Love that leads to your spirits. Purity *is* severe, It knows neither extenuation nor excuse. Therefore It will probably appear ruthless to many a person who only too willingly tries to deceive himself. But actually It only hurts where something is not in order.

Weakness brings harm to yourselves as well as to those whom you imagine you are pleasing by it. In time you will be judged by a *Higher One* with the kind of justice that has become strange to you for a long time through yourselves, for you have withdrawn from it.

It is the *Divine Justice*, unchangeable from eternity to eternity, and independent of the opinions of men, free of their partiality, of their hate and their malice, their power. It is *Almighty*, for it is of God!

Unless you devote *all* your strength to severing yourselves from the old, you will not learn to comprehend this Justice either. But you will then likewise not be able to become new within! And only the *new* man, who stands in the Word of Life and strives towards the Light, will receive the help that he needs to pass through a Judgment of God.

Man must help himself through the Word, which shows him the ways he must follow! Only thus can he find redemption, otherwise it will not fall to his lot! He must grow strong in the battle that he wages for himself, or he must perish in it!

Awake, and present a fighting front to all Darkness, then you will also be given strength to help you. Weaklings, however, will lose even what strength they still possess, because they do not know how to use it properly. The little they have will thereby be taken away from them because, according to the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species, it flows to those who use this strength with zeal and in the *right manner*. Thus an ancient promise is fulfilled.

## Cult.

Cult should be the endeavor which has taken on form, to make in some way acceptable to the earthly senses something that is beyond earthly comprehension.

It *should* be the endeavor which has taken on form, but unfortunately this is not yet so; for otherwise many things would have to have quite different forms if they had *emerged* from the endeavor itself. The *right* way for this requires the breaking forth of the outward forms from the inmost being. But all we see today is an *intellectual* upbuilding, into which the intuitive perceptions are only *afterwards* to be pressed. Thus the opposite way is taken, which naturally might just as well be called the reverse or wrong way, which can never really be inwardly alive.

As a result many a thing appears clumsy or obtrusive, which in another form would come much nearer to the *real* volition, and only then could have a convincing effect.

Much that is well-intentioned must repel rather than convince, because the right form for it has not yet been found, which the intellect can never give for something that is beyond earthly comprehension!

So is it also in the churches. The intellectual upbuilding here, which is directed towards earthly influence, is only too evident, and much that is good fails to impress because it has an unnatural effect.

On the other hand only that which does not conform to the Laws of Creation can have an unnatural effect. Just such things, however, are very much in evidence in the present-day cults, where simply everything that is opposed to the natural Laws of Creation is shrouded in a mysterious darkness.

However, just by unconsciously never speaking of a mysterious light in such matters, but always only of a mysterious darkness, men strike the right note; for the Light knows no veiling, therefore also no mysticism either, which should have no place in the Creation that arose out of the perfect Will of God, and works automatically in accordance with an unchangeable rhythm. Nothing is clearer in its weaving than just Creation, which is the Work of God!

Therein lies the secret of success and continuity, or of collapse. Where something is built on these living Laws of Creation, there they help, bring success and also continuity. But where these Laws are not observed, either through ignorance or self-will, sooner or later collapse must inevitably follow; for nothing that does not stand on a firm and solid foundation can endure permanently.

That is why so much of man's work is transient when it need not be so. This includes many kinds of cults, which have to undergo continual changes to prevent them from complete collapse.

In the simplest and clearest manner, the Son of God gave to earthmen in His *Word* the *right* path on which they shall lead their lives on Earth in accordance with this weaving of Creation; so that through the Laws of God that operate in the weaving of Creation they might be helped, sustained and uplifted to Luminous Heights, and so also attain to peace and joy on Earth.

Unfortunately, however, the churches have not followed the way to the redemption and upliftment of mankind, quite clearly explained and given to them by the Son of God Himself, but instead they have added to His teaching many of their own ideas as well, thereby naturally creating confusion, which was bound to cause dissensions because it was not in accordance with the Laws of Creation, and therefore, strange as it may sound, is also opposed to the clear teaching of the Son of God, although they call themselves Christians after Him.

So is it, for example, with the mariolatry of the papal Christians. Did Jesus, Who taught men *everything*, how they should think and act, yes even speak and pray, in order to do what is right and what lies in the Will of God, ever say even one single word of the kind? *No, He did not!* And this is one proof that He did not wish it either, that it was not to be!

There are even statements by Him which prove the opposite of what mariolatry implies.

And surely Christians would wish through honest living to follow only Christ, otherwise they would not *be* Christians.

If still more has now been added by men, and the papal churches act otherwise than as Christ taught, it is proof that this church has the effrontery to set itself *above* the Son of God; for it tries to improve on His Words by instituting practices which the Son of God did *not* want, because otherwise He would undoubtedly also have taught them, judging by all He gave to men.

Certainly, there *is* a Queen of Heaven, Who according to earthly conceptions could also be called the Primordial Mother, and Who yet possesses the purest virginity. She however has dwelt from all eternity in the *Highest Heights*, and has never been incarnated in an earthly body!

And it is She, Her *radiated picture*, but not in reality Herself, that can occasionally be “seen” or “intuitively perceived” by persons who have been profoundly moved. Through Her, help often comes at such an accelerated speed that people call it a miracle.

However, it is never possible, even for the most matured human spirit, to have an actual vision of this Primordial Queen *Herself*, because in accordance with the inflexible Laws of Creation each species can only always see the same species. Thus the physical eye can only see earthly things, the ethereal eye only ethereal things, the spiritual eye only spiritual things, and so on.

And since the human *spirit* can only *see* the spiritual, from which it has emerged, it is unable actually to behold the

Primordial Queen, Who is of a much higher species, but should anyone ever be so blessed, it would *only* be possible to see *Her spiritually radiated picture*. This, however, appears so lifelike, and can be so strong even in its radiation, that it works miracles wherever it finds the soil prepared for it, through unshakable faith or the deep emotions arising out of suffering or joy.

This lies in the working of Creation, which issues from and is sustained by the perfect Will of God. In this working also lies all help for men from the beginning and unto all eternity, providing they themselves do not turn away from it in their pretentious wanting-to-know-better.

In Creation acts God; for it is His perfect Work.

And it is just on account of this perfection that the earthly birth of the Son of God had also to be preceded by a physical procreation. Whoever asserts the contrary throws doubt on the perfection of the *Works* of God, and thus also on the perfection of God Himself, out of Whose Will Creation issued.

An *immaculate* conception is a conception in purest love, as opposed to a conception in sinful lust! But no earthly birth without procreation.

If an earthly conception, that is, a physical procreation as such could not be immaculate, then every motherhood would have to be regarded as unclean!

Through Creation God also speaks, and clearly shows His Will.

To recognize this Will is the duty of man. And the Son of God in His Holy Word showed the right way to do so, because men had made no effort towards it, and had thus entangled themselves more and more in the self-acting Laws of Creation.

This inflexible weaving of Creation was bound to destroy men in time through their ignorance and misapplication; whereas it will raise mankind on high if they live aright according to the Will of God.

Reward and punishment for man lie in the weaving of Creation, which is perpetually and unswervingly guided by the

---

Will of God Itself. In it also lies rejection or redemption! It is relentless and just, always impartial, never arbitrary.

In it lies the indescribable Greatness of God, His Love and Justice. That is, in *His Work*, which He made over to man and to many other beings, as a dwelling-place and a home.

The time has now come for men to acquire the *knowledge* of it, so that with complete conviction they will come to the recognition of *God's activity*, which is expressed in *His Work!*

Then every earthman will stand quite unshakable here on Earth, filled with the most joyful eagerness to work, most gratefully looking up to God, because recognition links him for all time through the *knowledge!*

In order to convey to mankind such knowledge, which gives them a clear and intelligible conviction of the working of God in His Justice and Love, I have written the work "In the Light of Truth", which leaves no gap, contains the answer to *every* question, and clearly shows to mankind how wonderful are the ways in Creation that are upheld by many servants of His Will.

*But God alone is Holy!*

## Rigidification.

Everything in Creation is movement. Brought into being strictly according to Law by the pressure of the Light, movement produces heat through which forms are able to unite. Thus without Light there could be no movement, and therefore man can also imagine that in the proximity of the Light the movement must even be far more rapid and strong than at a vast distance from It.

In fact the greater the distance from the Light, the slower and more sluggish becomes the movement. In time it may even lead to the rigidification of all the forms which had already taken shape when at first the movement was still more animated.

The expression "Light" in this connection does not, of course, refer to the light of some planet, but to the *Original Light*, which is Life itself, therefore God!

Following this picture of a great survey of what takes place in Creation, I wish for once today to direct attention to the Earth, which is now revolving at a far greater distance from the Original Light than it did many millions of years ago, because it has been increasingly exposed to the weight of the Darkness through men, who in their ridiculous and stubborn conceit, due to a one-sided over-development of the intellect, drew away from God. The intellect is and will always continue to be directed only *downwards* towards coarse matter, because *that is the purpose* for which it was provided; on the assumption, however, that it should be able to receive absolutely undimmed all radiations and impressions emanating from above, out of the Luminous Heights.

All the work of the intellect for outward activity in coarsest matter, that is, in material substance, falls to the frontal brain.

On the other hand, the back brain has the task of taking in from above impressions, which are lighter and more luminous than coarse matter, and passing them on for further use.

This harmonious co-operation of the two brains, given to men for their benefit, was disturbed by man's one-sided surrender to purely earthly, that is, to gross material activities, and in the course of time it was completely stifled and tied off, as it were, because owing to its excessive activity the frontal brain was bound gradually to over-develop in proportion to the neglected back brain, which consequently became still less capable of receiving and also weakened. Thus over thousands of years the *hereditary evil* came into being through physical reproduction; for even newly-born children brought with them a frontal brain proportionately far more developed than the back brain. This held the danger of the awakening of the *hereditary sin*, through which man is compelled from the outset to direct his thoughts solely towards earthly things, and thus away from God.

All this will be easily comprehensible to every man of sincere goodwill; moreover, I have given many and detailed explanations of it in my Message.

All the evil on Earth came into being because man, owing to his spiritual origin, could exert a pressure with his volition upon everything else existing on Earth; whereas just because of this spiritual origin he could and also should have had an *uplifting* influence; for that was and is his real task in Subsequent Creation, in which all that is spiritual naturally takes the lead. It can lead upwards, which would be the natural thing, but it can also lead downwards if the volition of the spiritual is mainly striving only after earthly things, as is the case with earthmen.

In the knowledge of Creation which I have given in my Message, and in the related explanation of all the Laws automatically working in Creation, which may also be called the Laws of Nature, the whole weaving of Creation is displayed

without a gap; it allows every process to be clearly recognized, and therewith the purpose of man's whole life. With unassailable logic it also unfolds his "whence" and his "whither", thus giving an answer to every question, provided man seriously seeks for it.

Even the most malevolent opponents must halt here, because their cunning is insufficient to be able to invade and destroy the perfect completeness of what has been said, in order thus to also rob man of this help. — —

I have said that the movement in Creation must become progressively slower the further away anything is from the Original Light, the starting-point of the pressure which subsequently brings about movement.

*So is it with the Earth at the present time.* Through the guilt of earthmen its orbits have become increasingly distant. As a result the movements are becoming slower, ever more sluggish, and thereby much has already approached the stage where rigidification sets in.

Rigidification also has very many stages; in its beginnings it is not so easy to recognize. Even while it is progressing, recognition remains impossible unless a flash of light for once stimulates the keenest observation.

This recognition is difficult simply because everything living within the sphere of the steadily slackening movements is also drawn uniformly into the increasing denseness that leads to rigidification. This applies not only to the body of a human being, but to everything, including his thinking. It affects even the minutest things. Imperceptibly every concept also changes and becomes distorted, even those concerning the actual meaning of the language.

Since he himself is drawn along in the same sluggish vibration, man cannot notice this in his neighbor, unless from out of his inner being he seeks once more to fight his way upwards spiritually with the strongest volition and with tenacity, so as again to come a little nearer to the Light, as a result of which his spirit will then gradually become more

mobile, thus lighter and more luminous, and will influence his earthly recognition.

Then, however, he will see, terrified and aghast with horror, or at least intuitively perceive, how far the distortions of all concepts have already progressed in rigidification on this Earth. The far-seeing view of how things really are is lacking, because everything has been pressed into narrow and obscure limits, which can no longer be penetrated, and must in time completely stifle everything they embrace.

I have already often pointed out distorted concepts; but now, through the steady withdrawal from the Light, these are slowly proceeding on the downward path to rigidification.

It is unnecessary to give individual examples, for either no attention whatever would be paid to such explanations, or they would be described as tiresome quibbling, because man is much too rigid or too indolent to want to give them serious reflection.

I have also already spoken sufficiently of the power of the word, of the mystery that even the *human word* can, for a time, work constructively or destructively on the weaving of Creation within the sphere of the Earth. This is because through the sound, tone and composition of a word, creative forces are set in motion, which do not work according to the intention of the speaker, but according to the sense of the *word* in its meaning.

The meaning, however, was originally given through the forces which the word sets in motion, and which are therefore exactly adjusted to the *true* meaning, or vice versa, but not to the volition of the speaker. Meaning and word arose out of the corresponding movement of forces, therefore they are inseparably *one!*

The *thinking* of men in turn sets in motion *other* currents of force, which correspond to the essence of his thinking. Man should therefore endeavor to choose the right words to express his thinking, thus in so doing to perceive intuitively in a more accurate and clear manner.

Suppose a man is asked about something of which he has heard, and part of which he may even have seen. When questioned he would maintain without hesitation that he *knows* it!

In the opinion of many superficial people this answer would be correct, and yet in truth it is *wrong* and objectionable; for “to know” means to be able to give *exact information* about everything, every detail from beginning to end, without any omission and from one’s own experience. Only *then* can a man say that he *knows* it.

Great responsibility attaches to the expression, and to the concept of “knowledge” associated with it!

I have also already pointed out the great difference between “knowledge” and what has been “learned”. Learnedness is by no means real *knowledge*, which can only be absolutely personal; whereas what has been learned remains the acceptance of something outside the personal.

To hear something, and perhaps even to see part of it, is far from being the *knowledge* itself! A man should not assert: I *know* it, but the most he could say is: I have heard of it or seen something of it. If he wishes to act *correctly*, however, truth would oblige him to say: I do not know it!

This would be far more correct in every way than to report about something which he himself has nothing to do with, and which cannot therefore be a real *knowledge* either; whereas through incomplete reports he would only cast suspicion on or incriminate other people, perhaps even plunge them unnecessarily into misfortune, without knowing the actual ins and outs. Therefore carefully weigh with your intuitive perception *every* word you intend to use.

He who thinks more deeply, who will not be satisfied with already rigid concepts as a personal excuse for loquacious pomposity and malevolence, will easily understand these explanations, and in quiet examination will learn to look further in everything he says.

A multitude of such restricted concepts, with their fatal consequences have already become habitual among earthmen. They are greedily snatched up and promoted by slaves of the intellect, who are the most willing adherents of the Luciferian influences of deepest Darkness.

Learn to observe attentively and to use properly the currents in this Creation, which bear the Will of God, and thus God's Justice in pure form. Then you will again find the true humanity, which has been wrested from you.

How much suffering would thereby be avoided, and how many ill-disposed persons among mankind would also be deprived of the opportunity to commit their deeds.

This evil is also responsible that the description of the earth life of the Son of God Jesus is not corresponding at all points with the facts, as a result of which a totally false picture has gradually arisen in the thinking of men up till now. The words given by Him were also distorted, as has happened with *every* teaching that was made into a religion and which was intended to bring upliftment and perfection of spirit to mankind.

And therein also lies the great confusion among all men, who increasingly fail really to understand one another, thus allowing discord, distrust, slander, envy and hatred to grow and flourish.

All these are unmistakable signs of advancing rigidification on Earth!

Arouse your spirit, and begin to think and speak in a *far-seeing* and comprehensive way! This naturally also demands that you not only work with the intellect, which belongs to coarsest matter, but also make it possible once more for your spirit to guide your intellect, which should serve the spirit as ordained by your Creator, Who from the very beginning has permitted you to come undistorted into existence here on Earth.

So much is already in the first stage of rigidification. Soon your entire thinking may already be gripped by it and must flow through rigid, iron channels, bringing you nothing but

uneasiness, suffering upon suffering, and finally forcibly degrading you from a human being to the state of an empty machine serving only the Darkness, far away from all Light. —

## Contents.

1. The Gate is opened!.....	1
2. The Wound.....	7
3. Omniscience.....	14
4. The human word.....	22
5. New Year 1935.....	29
6. Consider what is of benefit to you!.....	34
7. The Spiritual Planes I.....	43
8. Believers merely out of habit.....	52
9. The longing that brings salvation.....	66
10. The Spiritual Planes II.....	79
11. The Great Purification.....	88
12. The Spiritual Planes III.....	96
13. The Spiritual Planes IV.....	104
14. Easter 1935.....	114
15. The Spiritual Planes V.....	120
16. The Spiritual Planes VI.....	130
17. The Spiritual Planes VII.....	138
18. On the occasion of May 30 <sup>th</sup> , 1935 (The Sacrifice). ..	148
19. The Guardian of the Flame.....	155
20. The Power of the Language.....	163
21. The Living Word (Pentecost 1935). ..	173
22. Sense of Family.....	183
23. The intimate home.....	191
24. The flame of the disciple.....	200
25. The weaker sex.....	208
26. The destroyed bridge.....	215
27. Overview of Creation.....	223
28. Spirit-germs.....	231

29. Substantiate-germs.....	241
30. Forerunners.....	251
31. When the need is greatest God's help is nearest you!.....	260
32. Purifying flames.....	269
33. The gulf of selfish desires.....	278
34. Soul.....	288
35. Nature.....	298
36. The Ring of the Substantiality.....	305
37. Do not fall in the temptation.....	314
38. Christmas.....	319

## Die Stimme ( The Voice )

01. The Mystery of the Blood.....	331
02. The Language of the Lord.....	338
03. Childlikeness.....	343
04. Man and the Earth.....	350
05. Pentecost.....	355
06. The first step.....	360
07. Chastity.....	366
08. Salvation! Redemption!.....	369
09. Cult.....	373
10. Rigidification.....	378







